The History of al-Ṭabarānī

VOLUME XXXII

The Reunification of the ʿAbbāsid Caliphate

TRANSLATED BY C. E. BOSWORTH
The Reunification of the ‘Abbāsid Caliphate

Volume XXXII
Translated by C.E. Bosworth

The 20 years' caliphate of al-Ma'mun began as a stormy period in Middle Eastern history, after the comparatively peaceful reign of his father Harun al-Rashid, the caliphate was plunged into violent civil warfare in both Iraq and Arabia, involving the sons of al-Rashid, rivals for the supreme authority, and various other sectarian rebels and aspirants for power. Yet once peace was secured and the caliphate lands united once more, al-Ma'mun's reign settled down into one of the most exciting and innovative of the mediaeval caliphate. The Caliph himself was a highly cultivated man who possessed a keen intellectual curiosity and who interested himself in the practical sciences, astronomy and mathematics. He also encouraged the translating of Greek philosophical, scientific and medical works from Greek and Syriac into Arabic and involved himself in theological controversies in which the dialectical techniques of the Greek thinkers were to figure. Tabari's history of this period constitutes a prime source for political and military history. His racy and vivid style, including many verbatim conversations and documents, brings the Caliphate of al-Ma'mun very much alive.
THE HISTORY OF AL-ṬABARĪ
AN ANNOTATED TRANSLATION

VOLUME XXXII

The Reunification of the ‘Abbāsid Caliphate
The Caliphate of al-Ma’mūn
A.D. 813–833 / A.H. 198–218
The History of al-Ṭabarī
*(Taʾrīkh al-rusul waʾl-mulūk)*

**Volume xxxii**

The Reunification of
The 'Abbāsid Caliphate

translated and annotated by

**C.E. Bosworth**

THE UNIVERSITY OF MANCHESTER

---

State University of New York Press
The preparation of this volume was made possible by a grant from the Translation Program of the National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal agency, and in part by the Persian Heritage Foundation.

Published by
State University of New York Press, Albany
© 1987 State University of New York
All rights reserved
Printed in the United States of America
No part of this book may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews.
For information, address the State University of New York Press, 90 State Street, Suite 700, Albany, NY 12207
Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Ta'barî, 8387–923.
The Reunification of the 'Abbâsid Caliphate.

(SUNY series in Near Eastern studies) (The History of al-Ta'barî ; v. 32)
Bibliography: p.
Includes index.
DS38.6.T328 1985 909'.097671 84-16311
ISBN 0-88706-058-7
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
In 1971 the General Editor proposed to the UNESCO to include a translation of al-Tabari's *History* in its Collection of Representative Works. UNESCO agreed, but the Commission in charge of Arabic works favored other priorities. Deeming the project worthy, the Iranian Institute of Translation and Publication, which collaborated with UNESCO, agreed to undertake the task. After the upheavals of 1979, assistance was sought from the National Endowment for the Humanities. The invaluable encouragement and support of the Endowment is here gratefully acknowledged.

The General Editor wishes to thank sincerely also the participating scholars, who have made the realization of this project possible; the Board of Editors for their selfless assistance; Professor Franz Rosenthal for his many helpful suggestions in the formulation and application of the editorial policy; and Dr. Susan Mango of the National Endowment for the Humanities for her genuine interest in the project and her advocacy of it.
Preface

The History of Prophets and Kings (Ta'rikh al-rusul wa'l-mulūk) by AbūJa'far Muḥammad b. Jarir al-Ṭabari (839-923), here rendered as the History of al-Ṭabari, is by common consent the most important universal history produced in the world of Islam. It has been translated here in its entirety for the first time for the benefit of non-Arabists, with historical and philological notes for those interested in the particulars of the text.

Ṭabari's monumental work explores the history of the ancient nations, with special emphasis on biblical peoples and prophets, the legendary and factual history of ancient Iran, and, in great detail, the rise of Islam, the life of the Prophet Muḥammad, and the history of the Islamic world down to the year 915. The first volume of this translation will contain a biography of al-Ṭabari and a discussion of the method, scope, and value of his work. It will also provide information on some of the technical considerations that have guided the work of the translators.

The History has been divided here into 38 volumes, each of which covers about two hundred pages of the original Arabic text in the Leiden edition. An attempt has been made to draw the dividing lines between the individual volumes in such a way that each is to some degree independent and can be read as such. The page numbers of the original in the Leiden edition appear on the margins of the translated volumes.

Al-Ṭabari very often quotes his sources verbatim and traces the chain of transmission (isnād) to an original source. The chains of transmitters are, for the sake of brevity, rendered by only a dash (—) between the individual links in the chain. Thus, according to Ibn Ḫumayd—Salamah—Ibn Iṣḥāq means that al-Ṭabari received the report from Ibn Ḫumayd who
said that he was told by Salamah, who said that he was told by Ibn Ishāq, and so on. The numerous subtle and important differences in the original Arabic wording have been disregarded.

The table of contents at the beginning of each volume gives a brief survey of the topics dealt with in that particular volume. It also includes the headings and subheadings as they appear in al-Ṭabarī's text, as well as those occasionally introduced by the translator.

Well-known place-names, such as, for instance, Mecca, Baghdad, Jerusalem, Damascus, and the Yemen, are given in their English spellings. Less common place-names, which are the vast majority, are transliterated. Biblical figures appear in the accepted English spelling. Iranian names are usually transcribed according to their Arabic forms, and the presumed Iranian forms are often discussed in the footnotes.

Technical terms have been translated wherever possible, but some, such as qāḍāʾ and imām, have been retained in Arabic forms. Others that cannot be translated with sufficient precision have been retained and italicized as well as footnoted.

The annotation aims chiefly at clarifying difficult passages, identifying individuals and place-names, and discussing textual difficulties. Much leeway has been left to the translators to include in the footnotes whatever they consider necessary and helpful.

The bibliographies list all the sources mentioned in the annotation.

The index in each volume contains all the names of persons and places referred to in the text, as well as those mentioned in the notes as far as they refer to the medieval period. It does not include the names of modern scholars. A general index, it is hoped, will appear after all the volumes have been translated.

Ehsan Yar-Shater
Abbreviations employed / xvii
Translator's Foreword / 1
Genealogical table of the 'Abbāsids (with special reference to those members of the family mentioned in this section of al-Ṭabarī's History) / 4
Maps. 1. Al-'Irāq in the Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn / 5
2. Baghdad and its environs / 6

The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn / 9

[The Remainder of the Events of the Year 198 (813/814)]

The Events of the Year 199 (814/815) / 12

Various events in al-'Irāq / 12
The revolt in al-Kūfah of Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm, called Ibn Ṭabāṭaba, under the military leadership of Abū al-Sarāyā / 13
The spread of the revolt to Mecca under Ḥusayn b. Ḥasan al-Aftās / 19

The Events of the Year 200 (815/816) / 24

Harthamah b. A'yan's recapture of al-Kūfah, and the defeat and execution of Abū al-Sarāyā / 25
The revolt in the Yemen of the 'Alid Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā al-Jazzār / 28
The Caliphate of al-Ma’mūn

The proclamation in Mecca of the ‘Alid Muḥammad b. Ja’far al-Ṣādiq as Caliph / 30
The overthrowing of Muḥammad b. Ja’far’s rule by the ‘Abbāsid forces, and his renunciation of power / 34
The abortive attempt to seize power in Mecca by a member of the ‘Aqīlī branch of the Ṭālibids / 37
Harthamah b. A’yan’s journeying to al-Ma’mūn’s court at Marw and his fate there / 39
The civil strife in Baghdad between the troops of the Harbiyyah quarter and those of al-Ma’mūn’s representative in al-‘Irāq, al-Ḥasan b. Sahl / 42

The Events of the Year 201 (816/817) / 46
The expulsion from Baghdad of al-Ḥasan b. Sahl’s representative in the city, ‘Ali b. Hishām; the fighting between the Sahlid forces and the leader of the Baghdad rebels, Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid; the proclamation in Baghdad of the ‘Abbāsid prince Manṣūr b. al-Mahdī as al-Ma’mūn’s amīr and khalīfah / 46
The breakdown of social order in Baghdad, and the movement there of the volunteers and vigilantes under Khālid al-Daryūsh and Sahl b. Salāma al-Anṣārī / 55
Al-Ma’mūn’s designation of the Eighth Imām of the Shi‘ah, ‘Alī al-Riḍā, as his heir and the adoption of the ‘Alid green colour / 61
The proclamation in Baghdad of Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī as anti-caliph / 621
Various items of information / 641

The Events of the Year 202 (817/818) / 66
Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī’s assumption of power in central al-‘Irāq / 66
The revolt in al-Kūfah of the ‘Alid al-‘Abbās b. Mūsā al-Kāzim, and its suppression by Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī’s forces / 69
Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī’s arrest and jailing of the vigilante leader in Baghdad Sahl b. Salāma / 75
Al-Ma’mūn’s decision to leave Marw and to travel westwards and secure al-‘Irāq; the murder of his minister al-Faḍl b. Sahl; Ibrahim b. al-Mahdi’s preparations to withstand al-Ma’mūn’s forces / 78
Various items of information / 82

The Events of the Year 203 (818/819) / 84
The death of the Imām ‘Alī al-Ridā; al-Ḥasan b. Sahl’s nervous breakdown / 84
Ibrahim b. al-Mahdi’s despairing attempt to retain his caliphal power in Baghdad; his loss of the people of Baghdad’s allegiance; his disappearance underground in the city / 86
Various items of information / 92

The Events of the Year 204 (819/820) / 94
Al-Ma’mūn’s arrival in Baghdad and assumption of authority there; the abandonment of the ‘Alid colour of green and restoration of the traditional ‘Abbāsid colour of black / 94
Various items of information / 97

The Events of the Year 205 (820/821) / 99
Al-Ma’mūn’s appointment of Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn as governor of Khurasan and the East; Tāhir’s suspicions of al-Ma’mūn’s good faith towards him and his scheming with the Caliph’s minister Ahmad b. Abī Khālid / 99
Various appointments to governorships in the outlying part of the empire / 106

The Events of the Year 206 (821/822) / 108
Various items of information / 108
Al-Ma’mūn’s appointment of ‘Abdallāh b. Tāhir as governor of al-Jazīrah and Syria with the task of suppressing the revolt there of Naṣr b. Shabath / 109
Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn’s epistle of advice to his son ‘Abdallāh on the latter’s taking up his post / 110
The epistle’s immediate fame / 128
The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

The Events of the Year 207 (822/823) / 130
The revolt in Yemen of the 'Alid 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ahmad / 130
The mysterious death in Khurasan of Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn / 131
The appointment of his son Ṭalḥah as successor over Khurasan and the East; a variant account of this episode / 133
Various items of information / 135

The Events of the Year 208 (823/824) / 136
Al-Ḥasan b. al-Ḥusayn al-Muṣ'abi's revolt in Khurasan; various appointments to official positions / 136

The Events of the Year 209 (824/825) / 138
ʿAbdallāh b. Tāhir's lengthy campaigns against Naṣr b. Shabath; ʿAbdallāh's letters to Naṣr inviting his submission and guaranteeing his safety; Naṣr's final submission and the demolition of his fortress Kaysūm / 138
Military operations in Azerbaijan against the rebel Bābak al-Khurrami / 144

The Events of the Year 210 (825/826) / 145
Al-Ma'mūn's execution of the conspirator Ibn ʿĀ'ishah / 145
The capture of Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdi, dressed in woman's clothing, in the streets of Baghdad; Ibrāhīm's ode addressed to al-Ma'mūn seeking the Caliph's forgiveness / 146
Al-Ma'mūn's consummation of his marriage to al-Ḥasan b. Sahl's daughter Būrān and the sumptuous celebrations at Fam al-Ṣilh / 153
ʿAbdallāh b. Tāhir's march into Egypt to combat the rebel ʿUbaydallāh b. al-Sarī; his capture of Alexandria and expulsion thence of the Andalusians to Crete / 159
The revolt of the people of Qumm against tax burdens / 166

The Events of the Year 211 (826/827) / 168
ʿUbaydallāh b. al-Sarī's submission to ʿAbdallāh b. Tāhir / 168
Anecdote in which 'Abdallāh is cleared of suspected sympathies for Shi'ism / 169
Ahmad b. Yūsuf's letter of congratulation to 'Abdallāh on his restoration of order in Egypt / 172
Various items of information / 174

The Events of the Year 212 (827/828) / 176
Various items of information / 176

The Events of the Year 213 (828/829) / 178
Various items of information / 178
Ghassān b. 'Abbād's appointment as governor of Sind / 179

The Events of the Year 214 (829/830) / 181
Various items of information / 181

The Events of the Year 215 (830/831) / 184
Al-Ma'mūn's journey to the Byzantine frontier and his campaigning there / 184

The Events of the Year 216 (831/832) / 187
Al-Ma'mūn's further campaigns against the Byzantines / 187
Various items of information / 188

The Events of the Year 217 (832/833) / 191
Al-Ma'mūn's execution at Adana of 'Ali and Ḥusayn, the two sons of Hishām / 192
Al-Ma'mūn's campaigns in the Byzantine lands; his correspondence with the Emperor Theophilus / 194

The Events of the Year 218 (833/834) / 198
Al-Ma'mūn's fortifications at Tyana and his troop levies for the Byzantine wars / 198
Al-Ma'mūn's orders to his governor in Baghdad, Ishāq b. Ibrāhim al-Muṣ'abī, to interrogate the judges and traditionists on the question of the createdness of the Qur'ān: the Caliph's first letter / 199
The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

Al-Ma'mūn's interrogation at al-Raqqah of certain scholars, and his second letter to Ishaq b. Ibrāhīm / 204
Ishaq's interrogation at Baghdad of a further group of scholars / 210
Al-Ma'mūn's third letter to Ishaq after receiving the scholars' replies / 214
Ishaq's despatch of the remaining recalcitrants to the Caliph at Tarsus / 220
Al-Ma'mūn's letters to his governors appointing his brother Abū Ishaq al-Mu'tasim and his successor and commending him to their obedience / 222
Al-Ma'mūn's fatal illness at al-Budandūn; his last testament and commendation to al-Mu'tasim; his death on 18 Rajab 218/9 August 833 and burial at Tarsus / 224

Anecdotes about al-Ma'mūn and his conduct: / 232
Al-Ma'mūn's answer to Ibrahim b. 'Īsā b. Burayyah's request to be admitted into the circle of the Caliph's travelling companions / 232
Al-Ma'mūn's suspicious attitude towards the Syrians / 233
His reverence for a document emanating from the Prophet himself / 234
His generosity with the revenues collected in Syria / 234
Al-Ma'mūn and the poet of Tamīm from al-Baṣrah / 236
Al-Ma'mūn and the exigent boon companion from Syria / 240
Al-Ma'mūn's dismissal of a poet-judge of Damascus for his jesting attitude towards the Islamic faith / 241
The singer 'Allawayh's defence of the Umayyads before his master al-Ma'mūn / 243
Stories illustrating al-Ma'mūn's own poetic talent and aesthetic judgement, his relations with his court poets and the hostile one Di'bil / 244
Al-Ma'mūn and Kulthūm al-'Attābī / 253
More stories about al-Ma'mūn's relations with his court poets / 255
Contents

Bibliography. 1. Primary sources: texts and translations / 258
2. Secondary sources and reference works / 261

Index / 267
Abbreviations Employed

BGA Bibliotheca geographorum arabicorum
EI\(^1\) Encyclopaedia of Islām, first edition
EI\(^2\) Encyclopaedia of Islām, new edition
CAS F. Sezgin, Geschichte des arabischen Schrifttums
GMS Gibb Memorial Series
IC Islamic Culture
IJMES International Journal of Middle East Studies
Isl. Der Islam
JA Journal Asiatique
JAOS Journal of the American Oriental Society
JESHO Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient
JNES Journal of Near Eastern Studies
JRAS Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society
JSAI Jerusalem Studies in Arabic and Islam
JSS Journal of Semitic Studies
MW The Muslim World
REI Revue des Etudes Islamiques
RSO Rivista degli Studi Orientali
SI Studia Islamica
WZKM Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes
ZDMG Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft

In citations from the Qur‘ān, where two different numbers are given from a verse, the first is that of Flügel’s text and the second that of the official Egyptian edition.
The section of Ṭabari's history devoted to the caliphate of al-Ma'mūn concentrates essentially on events in Iraq and, to a lesser extent, on events in Mecca and the Hijaz insofar as the struggles for political and religious control of the Holy Places were reflections of those going on in the heartland of Iraq. Nevertheless, Ṭabari was a chronicler of the history of the caliphate as a whole, hence he could not entirely neglect the regions outside Iraq. A fair amount of attention is paid to Egypt, where al-Ma'mūn's governors had to cope with various rebellions of both the local Muslim Arabs and the Copts, and to events in northern Syria, the Jazīrah and the Byzantine marches in eastern Anatolia, which formed the backdrop to the Caliph's last illness and death. But events in the Maghrib beyond Barqah are totally ignored; and the laconic references to Khurasan, Transoxiana and Sind rarely go beyond the noting of changes of governors there.

The main theme of the annalistic narrative of the earlier years of the reign, from al-Ma'mūn's succession to rule over the united empire on al-Amin's death in 198(813) until al-Ma'mūn's decision to come westwards from Marw and establish firmly for the first time his authority in Iraq in 204(819), is of violent conflict in Iraq. At the outset the conflict focused on three contending groups: Abū al-Sarāyā's pro-Shīʿī revolt; the
representatives of al-Ma'mūn's authority there under al-Ḥasan b. Sahl; and the old Arab and Iranian families of Iraq like the Ḥāshimītes and their allies the Khurasanian Abnāʾ or guards of the first 'Abbāsids, now settled mainly in Baghdad, above all in the Harbiyyah quarter to the north of al-Mansūr's Round City. This last group resented the Persophile policies of al-Ma'mūn exemplified, as they saw it, by his favor to the Sahl brothers; hence they took the lead in raising to power at Baghdad other members of the 'Abbāsid family, notably in 201(817) al-Mansūr b. al-Mahdī as amīr or nominal deputy for the Caliph, and then in 202(817) Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī as an explicit anti-Caliph. The military maneuvers of the respective groups, covering an area between Baghdad and Baṣrah, are treated in great detail, as are domestic events within the capital itself, including the fascinating episode of the attempt of the local representatives of Sunni orthodox piety, Khālid al-Daryūsh and Sahl b. ʿAlī, to take advantage of the deep yearning for public order after the social chaos and strife of the Civil War years and to establish in Baghdad a theocratic society with the secular power made more conformable to the moral imperatives of the Qur'ān and sunnah.

This period of storm and stress comes to an end with al-Ma'mūn's migration from Khurasan to assume the throne of his forefathers in their traditional capital; the collapse of Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī's anti-caliphate; and the latter's subsequent ignominious capture in the streets of Baghdad wearing female guise. The death—most probably accidental—of the Eighth Imām of the Shiʿa, ʿAlī al-Riḍā, conveniently brought about the abandonment of al-Ma'mūn's policy of endeavoring to reconcile the two wings of Islam, Sunni and Shi'i, by making the Imām his heir, though a similar policy was sustained on the intellectual plane with the enforcement by al-Ma'mūn and his two successors of Muʿtazīlī theological doctrines. The most serious grievances of the anti-Iranizing forces in Iraq were removed by the murder of al-Faḍl b. Sahl in 202(818) and the illness and retirement shortly afterwards of al-Ḥasan b. Sahl.

Hence Ṭabārī's narrative for the last decade-and-a-half of al-Ma'mūn's reign is taken up with such episodes as the final quelling of Naṣr b. Shabath's prolonged uprising amongst the
Arabs of the Jazīrah; the story of Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn’s appointment as governor of Khurasan and his apparent repudiation of caliphal authority just before his sudden death in 207/822; the munificent ceremonies attending al-Ma’mūn’s consumption of his marriage to Būrān, daughter of al-Ḥasan b. Sahl, at Fam al-Ṣilḥ; the abortive rebellion in Baghdad of the ‘Abbāsid Ibn ‘Ā’ishah; the restoration of caliphal authority in Egypt; and the last campaigns of al-Ma’mūn against the Byzantine emperor Theophilus, in the course of which he was to die near Tarsus in 213/833. Above all, we find inserted here, under the events of the year 213/833, the story of the beginnings of the miḥnah or inquisition by means of which al-Ma’mūn endeavored to impose on the leading religious dignitaries of the empire acquiescence in the Mu’tazili doctrine of the createdness of the Qur’ān. The annals proper of al-Ma’mūn’s caliphate close with a selection of anecdotes about the Caliph and his conduct, relating to his stay in Syria or to his presence at the court in (normally) Baghdad.

A feature of the post-204/819 part of Tabari’s account of al-Ma’mūn’s caliphate is his insertion of the apparently complete texts of various chancery or inshā’ documents, such as Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn’s admonition to his son ‘Abdallāh, itself an early example of the “Mirrors for Princes” genre in Arabic; letters from al-Ma’mūn and ‘Abdallāh b. Tāhir summoning the rebel Naṣr b. Shabath to obedience; the letter from Aḥmad b. Yūsūf to ‘Abdallāh b. Tāhir congratulating him on receiving the surrender of the Egyptian rebel ‘Ubaydallāh b. al-Sari; the public proclamation made on the occasion of al-Ma’mūn’s execution of ‘Alī b. Hishām; the correspondence between al-Ma’mūn and the Emperor Theophilus; al-Ma’mūn’s waṣiyyah or dying testament to his brother Abū Ishāq al-Mu’taṣim; and above all, the series of three lengthy letters sent by al-Ma’mūn, en route for the Byzantine front, to his lieutenant in Baghdad, the Tāhirīd Ishaq b. Ibrāhim al-Muṣ‘abī, requiring subscription by the theologians and canon lawyers to the doctrine of the createdness of the Qur’ān.

For some three-fifths of Tabari’s section on al-Ma’mūn’s caliphate we have a parallel text, that of the surviving part of Aḥmad b. Abī Tāhir Tayfūr’s Kitāb Baghdād; the parallelism
Genealogical Table of the 'Abbāsids

Genealogical Table of the 'Abbāsids (with special reference to those members of the family mentioned in this section of al-Ṭabarî's History).

al-'Abbās (uncle of the Prophet)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'Ābd Allāh</th>
<th>Ma'bad</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Āli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sulaymān

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'Ābd Allāh</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>al-'Abbās</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ibrāhim al-Imām + 745</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Ābd al-Wahhāb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muḥammad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibrāhim, Ibn 'Ā'isha + 825</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abu 'Abd Allâh Muh. + 742

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abū Ja'far al-Mansûr + 775</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Īsâ + 783</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abū Ja'far al-Mansûr

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dāwūd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mūsâ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ishāq</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mūh. al-Mahdî + 785

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mūsâ al-Hādi + 786</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ja'far</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hārûn al-Rashîd + 809

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ibrāhim, Ibn Shakla</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Zubayda

al-Mansûr

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'Ābd Allâh al-Ma'mûn + 833</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>al-Qâsim al-Mu'tamin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû Ishāq al-Mu'tasim + 842</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Muḥammad al-Amin + 813</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>later caliphs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mūsâ + 823-4
Al-'Irāq in the Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn
Baghdad and Its Environs
begins in Ṭabarī at III, 1036, with the events of the year 204[819/20], but excludes a part of the extensive section [III, 1118–33] on the miḥnah, where several folios of the corresponding text of Ibn Abī Ṭahir seem to have been lost. There is no doubt that Ṭabarī followed the older historian (who died in 280[893], according to al-Masʿūdī and Ibn al-Nadīm), even though he only mentions Ibn Abī Ṭahir once by name [in III, 1516, quoting him, citing Ibn al-Ṣūfī al-Ṭālibī on the rebellion of the Ḥusaynī ʿAlīd Yaḥyā b. ʿUmar b. Yaḥyā in Kūfah in 250[864]]. Yet Ṭabarī copied intelligently; thus Keller, the editor and translator of Ibn Abī Ṭahir, has pointed out that he omitted two verses of the ode to al-Maʿmūn by which Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdi made his submission to the Caliph because Ibn Abī Ṭahir’s text rendered them faultily. He was also, as an annalist, less interested in literary and cultural history, hence he omitted some of the anecdotes which Ibn Abī Ṭahir gives at the end of his narrative about al-Maʿmūn’s stay in Damascus and about the poets and singers at his court; but it seems certain that the passage on the miḥnah mentioned above as unique to Tabari stemmed also from Ibn Abī Ṭahir. However, Ibn Abī Ṭahir’s concentration on affairs in Iraq and Syria meant that Ṭabarī could not, as a conscientious annalist, entirely pass by events in other parts of the caliphate comprising the Islamic heartlands, and so had to find other sources for, e.g., the events in Egypt. Here, two sources are specifically mentioned: Aḥmad b. Muḥammad b. Makhład, who was personally in Egypt at the time of ʿAbdallāh b. Ṭāhir’s quelling of the revolt of Ibn al-Sārī (III, 1087); and, more vaguely, several of the indigenous people of Egypt (III, 1091). Other items of information, e.g., the sparse ones relating to events in Khurasan and on the far eastern fringes of the caliphate, must have come from (to us) unknown chronicles, kutub al-taʾrīkh. The whole question of the relationship between Ibn Abī Ṭahir and Ṭabarī has been discussed in a highly detailed and masterly fashion, so as to require no further discussion here, by Keller in the Introduction to his German translation of the Kitāb Baghdād, II, pages XIII-XXVI.

Although Ibn Abī Ṭahir’s history is a parallel text and source and, therefore, provides a control for much of Tabari’s text, Stanislas Guyard, who edited pages 459–1163 of the Tertia se-
ries of Ṭabarī's history, faced peculiar difficulties in his task. Like Ibn Abi Ṭahir's history (which Guyard utilised in the then still unedited British Museum manuscript), much of this section, from page 755 l. 14 onwards, rests on a unicum in the Istanbul manuscript Köprülü 1041 (C) copied in 651(1253). From page 1068 l. 11 onwards, it is true, he had a second manuscript, located in the Oxford Bodleian, Pococke 354 (O), but this has a lacuna from page 1101 l. 16 to page 1112 l. 14 (see the general editor de Goeje's Introductio, page LXV). That the text which Guyard finally produced for the period of al-Ma'mūn's caliphate reads as intelligibly as it mostly does is a tribute to his sagacity and insight; the obscure passages which remain would not appear to be capable of complete elucidation unless fresh good manuscripts turn up.

There remains only the pleasant task of thanking those who have given valuable advice on problems connected with the text or have lent me necessary books: my colleague Dr. Norman Calder; my former student Dr. Yusuf Abū al-'Addūs; and my friends Dr. Martin Hinds, Dr. Patricia Crone and Dr. Carole Hillenbrand. I am particularly indebted to Dr. Hinds, who has read through the whole of my translation and accompanying notes, and has indicated many useful references, corrections and improvements, but for any remaining shortcomings, the responsibility is mine alone.

C.E. Bosworth
Manchester, April 1984
The Caliphate of ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥārūn al-Ma‘mūn

[The Remainder of the Events of the Year 198 (September 1, 813—August 21, 814)]

In the year 198 (September 1, 813—August 21, 814), the war between the two sons of Ḥārūn al-Rashīd, Muḥammad (al-Amin) and ‘Abdallāh (al-Ma‘mūn), came to an end, and the people in the eastern lands, in Iraq and the Hijaz, came together and gave their obedience to ‘Abdallāh al-Ma‘mūn.

In this year, al-Ḥasan b. Sahl,3 brother of central Iraq to the south-southeast of Baghdad, near a transverse canal, the Greater Šarāt, which connected the Euphrates with the Tigris; see G. Le Strange, The lands of the Eastern Caliphate, 72–3.

1. Town of central Iraq to the south-southeast of Baghdad, near a transverse canal, the Greater Šarāt, which connected the Euphrates with the Tigris; see G. Le Strange, The lands of the Eastern Caliphate, 72–3.

2. Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, VI, 301.

3. Secretary and financial official for al-Ma‘mūn, detested, like his brother, by the Abnā‘, the Khurāsānī military class of Baghdad, for his Zoroastrian background (see below, 52) and Iranian sympathies; see D. Sourdel, Le vizirat ‘abbāside, I, 215–18; id., El s.v.
of al-Fadl b. Sahl,† the governorship of all the districts of Jibal, Fars, Ahwaz, Basrah, Kufah, the Hijaz and the Yemen which Tahir b. al-Hasayn§ had conquered, this being after the killing of the deposed one Muḥammad (al-Amin) and the people's general submission to al-Ma'mun.¶

In this year, al-Ma'mun wrote to Tahir b. al-Hasayn, who was at that moment established at Baghdad,†† ordering him to hand over the whole of the tax revenues in his possession, collected from all the provinces, to the representatives of al-Hasan b. Sahl, and that he should leave and make his way to Raqqah.¶¶ He handed over to him responsibility for the war against Naṣr b. Shabath§§ and appointed him governor of Mosul, the Jazirah, Syria and the western provinces [al-Maghrib].¶¶¶

In this year, 'Ali b. Abi Sa'id††† came to Iraq as al-Hasan b. Sahl's representative for collection of the land tax there. However, Tahir refused to hand over the land tax to 'Ali until he had paid in full the army's pay allowances. When he had fulfilled this obligation to them, he handed over the tax revenues to him.

---

† Adviser and vizier to al-Ma'mün till his assassination in 202 [818] (see below, 80); see Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 196–213; id., EI² s.v.

‡ Al-Ma'mün's general in the civil war with his brother al-Amin, and member of an Iranian family long in the service of the 'Abbasids; see C.E. Bosworth, in Cambridge history of Iran, IV, 90–5; EI¹ s.v. (W. Barthold).

§ Ya'qūbi, Ta'rikh, II, 539; anon., Kitāb 'Uyūn al-ḥadā'iq, 344; Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, VI, 297–8.

¶ Al-Ma'mün himself was at this time in his eastern Khurasanian capital of Marw.

†† The main town of Diyār Muḍar, on the upper Euphrates, in what is now northern Syria; see Yaqūt, Mu'jam al-buldān, III, 58–60; Le Strange, Lands, 101–3; M. Canard, Histoire de la dynastie des H'amdānides, I, 90–1; EI¹ s.v. al-Rakka (E. Honigmann).

§§ Arab leader from the 'Uqayl tribe who took advantage of the confused situation in the Jazirah during the civil war period to head bands of Zawāqil or Qaysi Arabs against the central government till his submission in 209 [824/5] (see below, 138–44); see H. Kennedy, The early Abbasid caliphate, 168–9.

¶¶ 'Uyūn, 344; Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, VI, 298.

In this year, al-Ma'mün wrote to Harthamah (b. A'yan) ordering him to proceed to Khurasan.\textsuperscript{12} 
In this year, al-'Abbās b. Mūsā b. İsä b. Mūsā b. Muḥammad b. 'Alī led the pilgrimage.\textsuperscript{13}

\textsuperscript{12} 'Uyūn, loc. cit.; Ibn al-Athir, \textit{al-Kāmil}, loc. cit. Harthamah was a Khurāsānian commander long in the service of the 'Abbāsids until he was killed on al-Faḍl b. Sahl's orders in 200 (816) (see below, 39--41); see Patricia Crone, \textit{Slaves on horses}, 177, El² s.v. (Ch. Pellat).

The notable events taking place during this year included the arrival in Baghdad of al-Hasan b. Sahl, as al-Ma'mūn's appointee with responsibility for both military and financial matters. When he reached the city, he divided up his tax collectors ('ummal) amongst the various districts and provinces.14

In this year, in Jumāda I (December 814–January 815), Ṭāhir, together with Ḥisā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid,15 set out for Raqqah.

In this year, Harthamah also set out for Khurasan.

In this year, Azhar b. Zuhayr b. al-Musayyab marched out against al-Hirsh and then killed him in Muḥarram (August–September 814).

In this year, on Thursday, the tenth of Jumāda II (January 26, 815), Muḥammad b. Ibrāhim b. Ismā'īl b. Ibrāhim b. al-Hasan b. al-Hasan b. 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib rebelled at Kufah, proclaiming the cause of "the one well-pleasing [to God] from the house of Muḥammad" and of acting in conformity with the Book (the Qu-

15. Son of the Abnā' leader in Baghdad Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid (on whom see below, 42, n.117) and brother of 'Abdūs (see below, 15–16).
The Events of the Year 199

r'ān) and sunnah. This is the person known as Ibn Ţabāṭabā.¹⁶ The one who took charge of affairs for him in the conduct of war and who acted as commander of his forces was Abū al-Sarāyā, whose given name was al-Sarī b. Manṣūr; he used to mention that he was from the progeny of Hānī b. Qabiṣāh b. Hānī b. Masʿūd b. 'Āmir b. 'Amr b. Abī Rabī'ah b. Dhuhl b. Shaybān.¹⁷

The Reasons behind the Revolt of Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm, called Ibn Ţabāṭabā

There are differing accounts about that. Some people say that the reason for his rebellion was al-Maʿmūn's dismissal of Ṭāhir b. al-Husayn from the responsibility of collecting the taxes from the provinces which he had conquered and the Caliph's dispatch of al-Ḥasan b. Sahl for this duty. When he did this, people in Iraq talked (about it) among themselves, saying that al-Fadl b. Sahl had secured an ascendancy over al-Maʿmūn; (they said) that he had installed al-Maʿmūn in a palace, where he had forbidden the members of his own family (the 'Abbāsids) and his chief military commanders, whether from his intimate circle or from the population at large, access to the Caliph. It was alleged, moreover, that al-Fadl was managing affairs of state according to his own desires and was assuming sole judgment over public affairs without reference to the Caliph. Hence those members of the Hāshimite family and the leading men of the community who were in Iraq grew angry at this. They reacted strongly against al-Fadl b. Sahl's ascendancy.

¹⁶. Yaʿqūbī, Taʾrikh, II, 539–40; Masʿūdī, Murūj al-dhahab, VII, 55 = ed. Pellat, § 274; a detailed account of Ibn Ţabāṭabā's revolt in ʿĪṣāhānī, Maqāṭīl al-Ṭalībiyyīn, 518–36, with the story of Abū al-Sarāyā's revolt continued at 542–59; Azdī, loc. cit.; A. Arioli, "La rivolta di Abū Sarāyā: appunti per una tipologia del leader islamico," Annali di Ca' Foscari, V (1974), 189–97; Ken- nedy, 207–11. It seems that there is nothing to indicate that Abū al-Sarāyā had any ideological commitment to Shi'ism, but that he saw the 'Alids as conve- nient tools to further his own military ambitions.

¹⁷. See on Abū al-Sarāyā, EI² s.v. [H.A.R. Gibb]. His alleged ancestor Hānī b. Qabiṣāh had been one of the Arab chiefs of central Iraq connected with the last Lakhmid rulers of Ḥirah; see Th. Nöldeke, Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden, 332 ff.
over al-Ma'mūn and assumed a provocative attitude towards al-Ḥasan b. Sahl because of it. Civil strife broke out in the garrison cities, and the first to come out in rebellion at Kūfah was Ibn Ṭabāṭabā, whom I have mentioned.

An alternative account about why he rebelled says that Abū al-Sarāyā was one of Harthamah's commanders, but that Harthamah held back his pay allowances and kept putting off payment to him. Abū al-Sarāyā accordingly grew angry at this procrastination, and went off to Kūfah and proclaimed his allegiance to Muḥammad b. Ibrāhim. He seized control of Kūfah, and the people there came together and gave him their obedience. He set up Muḥammad b. Ibrāhim in the city, and the people of the surrounding rural districts, the tribesmen and others flocked to his standard.18

In this year, al-Ḥasan b. Sahl sent Zuhayr b. al-Musayyab (al-Dabbi)19 with his personal forces to Kūfah. The official in charge of the taxes of Kūfah when Ibn Ṭabāṭabā entered the city was Sulaymān b. Abī Ja'far al-Mansūr,20 an appointee of al-Ḥasan b. Sahl’s; Sulaymān’s deputy there was Khālid b. Muḥajjal al-Dabbi. When the news (of Ibn Ṭabāṭabā’s arrival in Kūfah) reached al-Ḥasan b. Sahl, he upbraided Sulaymān harshly and denounced him for his weakness. He dispatched Zuhayr b. al-Musayyab with an army of ten thousand calvary and infantry, and Zuhayr advanced towards them. When they heard reports of Zuhayr’s approach, the rebels in Kūfah prepared to march out against him, but they did not have sufficient strength for such a counteradvance. So they stood fast until Zuhayr reached Qaryat Shāhī;21 then they made a sortie, and stood fast (at the bridge) until Zuhayr encountered them there. He pitched camp on the Tuesday evening at Ṣa‘naba,22 and then fell upon them the next morning. But the Kūfāns put him

---

18. Iṣfahānī, Maqātil, 521, 523–4, with the date of Ibn Ṭabāṭabā’s receiving the homage of the people of Kūfah given as the tenth of Jumādā I, 199 (Decem-ber 27, 814); C.L. Geddes, “Al-Ma’mūn’s Ṣī’ite policy in Yemen.” WZKM, LIX–LX (1963–4), 99.
22. Presumably the village of the Sawād mentioned in ibid., III, 408.
The Events of the Year 199

to flight, treated his army camp as legitimate plunder (istabāhū 'askarahū), and seized all the money, weapons, beasts, etc., which he had with him. This was on Wednesday.23

On the day after this battle between the people of Kūfah and Zuhayr b. al-Musayyab, i.e., Thursday, the first of Rajab, 199 [February 15, 815], Muḥammad b. Ibrāḥīm, [called] Ibn Ṭabāṭabā, suddenly died.24 People said that Abū al-Sarāyā had poisoned him because, it was alleged, when Ibn Ṭabāṭabā had placed a secure guard on all the money, weapons, beasts, etc., captured from Zuhayr's army encampment, he had refused to give Abū al-Sarāyā any of it and had prevented his access to it; moreover, he had the obedience of all the people. Abū al-Sarāyā realized that he had no control over Ibn Ṭabāṭabā, so he poisoned him. On the latter's death, Abū al-Sarāyā set up in his place a young, beardless lad called Muḥammad b. Muḥammad b. Zayd b. 'Ali b. al-Ḥusayn b. 'Ali b. Abī Ṭalib,25 but Abū al-Sarāyā was really the one who executed all affairs, appointing whomsoever he saw fit to official positions and dismissing whomsoever he pleased, and all affairs were in his hands.26

Abū al-Sarāyā kills 'Abdūs

Zuhayr withdrew on the same day of his defeat to Qaṣr Ibn Hubayra27 and took up his position there. Now al-Ḥasan b. Sahl had dispatched 'Abdūs b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid al-Marwarrūdhi28 to Nil at the same time as Zuhayr was sent to Kūfah. After Zuhayr's defeat, 'Abdūs set out for Kūfah, according to al-Ḥasan b. Sahl's instructions, and he and his forces

24. Ibid., II, 540; Isfahānī, Maqātīl, 525–32; Azdī, 335.
25. I.e., of the Zaydi branch of the Husaynids, as Kennedy, 208–9, points out, he was doubtless acceptable in Kūfah because his grandfather, Zayd b. 'Ali Zayn al-ʾAbidin, had led an 'Alid rising there against the Umayyad Caliph Hishām in 122 (740); see EI 1 s.v. Zaid b. 'Ali (R. Strothmann).
27. A town to the north of Hillah and named after its founder, the Umayyad governor Yazid b. 'Umar b. Hubayrah; see Yaqūt Mu'jam, IV, 365; Le Strange, Lands, 70–1; EI 2 s.v. Kaṣr Ibn Hubayra (J. Lassner).
28. Brother of 'Īsā and son of the Abna' leader in Baghdad [see below, 42, n.117].
reached Jāmi'; Zuhayr in the meantime had taken up his position at Qaṣr [Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah]. Abū al-Sarāyā marched out against 'Abdūs and fell upon him at Jāmi' on Sunday, the seventeenth of Rajab30 [March 3, 851]. In this confrontation Abū al-Sarāyā killed 'Abdūs, captured Hārūn b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid and proclaimed 'Abdūs’s army camp to be lawful plunder.31 It is reported that 'Abdūs had four thousand cavalrymen, of whom every one was either killed or taken prisoner. The Ṭalibids were able to spread themselves through the land, and Abū al-Sarāyā now coined dirhams at Kūfah with the inscription, “God loves those who fight in His way in ranks, as though they were a building well-compacted.”32

When the news reached Zuhayr that Abū al-Sarāyā had killed 'Abdūs—at that time [Zuhayr was] still at Qaṣr—he and his forces retired to Nahr al-Malik.33 Abū al-Sarāyā now advanced and encamped with his troops at Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah, with his advance scouts penetrating as far as Kūthā34 and Nahr al-Malik. He then sent out armies to Başrah and Wāsiṭ, which occupied those two cities. 'Abdallāh b. Sa’īd al-Ḥarashi35 was the governor of Wāsiṭ and its environs on al-Ḥasan b. Sahl’s behalf. Abū al-Sarāyā’s army engaged ‘Abdallāh’s army near Wāsiṭ and put ‘Abdallāh to flight; accordingly, he had to fall back on Baghdad, having lost a considerable number of his forces either killed or taken captive. When al-Ḥasan b. Sahl realized that any army which he might send against Abū al-Sarāyā and

29. More usually in the dual form Jāmi’ān, the settlement on the Sūrā branch of the Euphrates which later developed into the town of Ḥillah; see Yaqūt, Mu’jam, II, 96; Le Strange, Lands, 71–2; G. Makdisi, “Notes on Ḥilla and the Mazyadids in mediaeval Islam,” JAOS, LXXIV (1954), 249–62.
30. Actually a Saturday.
31. Ya’qūbī, Ta’rikh, II, 543, with the same date for the battle.
32. Qur’ān, LXI, 4. At least one dirham of this type is extant; see C.J. Thomson, “Über muhammedanische Revolutions-Münzen,” ZDMG, XXII (1868), 706–7.
33. Town on the canal of the same name, to the south of Baghdad and connecting the Euphrates and Tigris; see Yaqūt, Mu’jam, V, 324; Le Strange, Lands, 70–1.
34. Town on the canal of the same name, to the south of Nahr al-Malik; see Yaqūt, Mu’jam, IV, 487–8; Le Strange, Lands, 68–9.
35. Commander of al-Rashid who fought for al-Amin but who obviously recovered favor under the new régime; see Crone, 145.
his partisans would inevitably be put to flight; that whatever province they marched against, they occupied; and that, moreover, he had no commander in his own entourage who could successfully undertake a counter-campaign against Abū al-Sarāyā, he was compelled to have recourse to Harthamah. Now when Al-Ḥasan b. Sahl had come to Harthamah in Iraq as the governor appointed over it by al-Maʾmūn, Harthamah had handed over to him what tax revenues he then had in his possession and had set off for Khurasan, bitterly angry at al-Ḥasan. He journeyed onwards as far as Hulwān.36 At that point, al-Ḥasan sent al-Sindi37 and the šāhib al-muṣallā Ṣāliḥ,38 begging Harthamah to return to Baghdad and take charge of the warfare against Abū al-Sarāyā. However, he rejected the approach and refused. The envoy returned to al-Ḥasan bearing his refusal, so he sent al-Sindi back to him once more with conciliatory and flattering letters. Harthamah then agreed and turned back towards Baghdad; he entered Baghdad in Shaʿbān (March–April 815). As he got ready to march on Kūfah, al-Ḥasan b. Sahl ordered 'Alī b. Abī Saʿīd to move out to the neighborhood of Madāʾin, Wāṣiṭ and Basraḥ; this he and his forces prepared to do.

**Harthamah Marches Against Abū al-Sarāyā**

News of all this reached Abū al-Sarāyā, all this time still at Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah. He sent a force against Madāʾin, and his troops entered it in Ramaḍān (April–May 815). In this same month of Ramaḍān, he himself and his forces moved forwards
and encamped at the Nahr Šaršar,\(^{39}\) in the district which lies along the road to Kūfah. While Harthamah was still holding back from returning to al-Ḥasan at Baghdad, he had ordered al-Manṣūr b. al-Mahdi\(^{40}\) to move forward and encamp at Yāsiriyah\(^{41}\) until Harthamah himself should join up with him. This al-Manṣūr did. When Harthamah arrived, he went forward and encamped at al-Safinīyyīn\(^{42}\) in front of [al-] Manṣūr. Then he pushed on until he made camp at the Nahr Šaršar, facing Abū al-Saraya and with the canal between them. Meanwhile, ‘Alish b. Abī Sa‘īd was encamped at Kalwādha.\(^{43}\) He set off on Tuesday, one day after the ‘Īd al-Fiṭr, and sent his vanguard on to Madā‘in. There he engaged Abū al-Saraya’s force in fierce fighting from the morning of Thursday till nightfall on that day. The next morning, he and his troops renewed the battle. Abū al-Saraya’s soldiers were defeated, and Ibn Abī Sa‘īd occupied Madā‘in. The news [of the defeat] and Ibn Abī Sa‘īd’s capture of Madā‘in reached Abū al-Saraya, and during the night of [Friday] Saturday the [twenty-four twenty-] fifth of Shawwāl (June 7–8, 814) he fell back from the Nahr Šaršar to Qasr Ibn Hubayrah and encamped there. Harthamah moved forward the next morning and hurried in pursuit of him. He came upon a substantial detachment of Abū al-Saraya’s troops and slaughtered them, sending their heads to al-Ḥasan b. Sahl. Harthamah then proceeded to Qasr Ibn Hubayrah, and there took place a battle between him and Abū al-Saraya in which a large number of the latter’s soldiers were killed; therefore Abū al-

---

\(^{39}\) The transverse canal connecting the Euphrates and Tigris immediately to the south of Baghdad, on which lay the town of Šaršar; see Yaqūt, Mu’jam, III, 401; Le Strange, Lands, 67–8.

\(^{40}\) Leading member of the ‘Abbāsid family in Iraq during al-Ma’mūn’s absence, whom the opponents of al-Ḥasan b. Sahl later tried to set up as Caliph there; see below, fol. 23, and Kennedy, index s.v.

\(^{41}\) Township on the Nahr ʿIsā Canal, to the west of Baghdad, where there was a bridge over the canal; see Yaqūt, Mu’jam, V, 425; Le Strange, Baghdad under the Abbasid Caliphate, 151–2; Lassner, The topography of Baghdad, 100, 259.

\(^{42}\) Reading uncertain; this is the one adopted by the editor here and at III, 865, of the text, but in M. J. de Goeje’s Addenda et emendanda, p. DCCLXVIII, and in ‘Uyun, 422, we have al-Safinatayn.

\(^{43}\) District and town on the left bank of the Tigris just below Baghdad; see Yaqūt, Mu’jam, IV, 477–8; Le Strange, Lands, 32; EP s.v. (ed.).
The Events of the Year 199

Sarāyā had to retreat towards Kūfah. Muhammad b. Muham-
mad and the group of Ṭalibids accompanying him now swept
down on the houses of the ‘Abbāsīd family in Kūfah and on
the houses of their clients and retainers (mawālīhim wa-
atbā’ihim), ransacking and destroying these houses, expelling
the ‘Abbāsīds and their followers from the city, and searching
out their goods and possessions which had been deposited with
other people and appropriating them. They behaved in an
abominable fashion.

Meanwhile, Harthamah was telling the people, so it is said,
that his intention was to lead the pilgrimage. During this pe-
riod, he had held back pilgrims from Khurasan, Jibāl and the
Jazirah, and the pilgrims of Baghdad and others, and had not al-
lowed anyone to set off on the pilgrimage, hoping that he him-
self would take Kūfah. Abū al-Sarāyā sent representatives to
Mecca and Madinah who would take control there and take
charge of the pilgrimage. The governor of Mecca and Madinah
at that time was Dāwūd b. ʿĪsā b. Mūsā b. Muḥammad b. ‘Ali b.
ʿAbdallāh b. al-ʿAbbās. The person whom Abū al-Sarāyā sent
to Mecca was Husayn b. Ḥasan al-Aftās b. ‘Ali b. al-Ḥusayn b.
‘Ali b. Abī Ṭālib44 and the one whom he sent to Madinah was
‘Ali b. Abī Ṭālib.” The latter entered Madinah without encoun-
tering any resistance at all. Ḥusayn b. Ḥasan travelled towards
Mecca, and when he drew near to it he halted for a brief while
because of the garrison within the city.

**Events at Mecca**

When Dāwūd b. ʿĪsā heard the news that Abū al-Sarāyā had
sent Ḥusayn b. Ḥasan to Mecca in order to take charge of the
rites of the pilgrimage, he gathered together the clients of the
‘Abbāsīd family and the slaves who worked on their agricul-

---

44. Khalīfah b. Khayyāt, *Taʾrikh*, II, 760–1, ʿĪṣahānī, *Maqāṭīl*, 542–4; Azdi,
46. I.e., grandson of the fourth ʿImām ‘Alī Zayn al-ʿĀbidīn.
2740, 2743; ʿĪṣahānī, *Maqāṭīl*, 540.
The eunuch Masrur al-Kabir had made the pilgrimage that year with a force of two hundred cavalrymen from amongst his own troops. He now got ready to oppose the Talibid forces attempting to enter and take over Mecca. He said to Dāwūd b. ʿĪsā, "Set yourself up, or one of your sons, as my chief, and I will take upon myself the responsibility for fighting them." Dāwūd replied, "I cannot declare lawful the idea of fighting in the sacred enclosure [al-ḥaram]. By God, if they enter by this way down through the mountains, I myself shall leave by another defile." Masrur said to him, "You would hand over your ruling power and authority to your enemy! Who is there who will not criticize you for this, reproaching you for an act against your religion, the honor of your family and your own material interests?" Dāwūd responded to him, "What ruling power do I really have? By God, I have dwelled in their midst till I have grown aged, and they never appointed me to any administrative office till I had become an old man and my life had almost run. Then they made me governor of a part of the Hijaz which does not provide me with any sustenance. You and your likes can have this ruling power, so put up a fight or abandon the struggle, just as you wish!" Thereupon, Dāwūd left Mecca and retired to the vicinity of Mushash. He had already loaded his bulkier possessions on camels, and he now sent them off on the road to Iraq and on his own initiative forged a diploma from al-Maʿmūn appointing his own son Muhammad b. Dāwūd as leader of the worship during the pilgrimage period. He told him, "Go forth and lead the people in the midday and afternoon worship at Minā and then the sunset and evening worship. Stay overnight at Minā

48. The ḥawāʾit (sing. ḥāʾit) of Mecca are listed by Azraqi, Akhbār Makkah, II, 227–30, cf. 301, and described as embanked pieces of agricultural land irrigated by water brought in through conduits leading ultimately to the Ḥaram.

49. Abū Ḥāshim Masrur, official in the service of al-Rashid, and then apparently of al-Amin and al-Maʿmūn; see Crone, 192–3.

50. I.e., the ʿAbbasid Dāwūd would be nominal leader of the forces, while the slave or freedman Masrur would be the real commander.

51. A well-irrigated district between the hill of Ṭāʿif, according to Yāqūt, Muʾjam, V, 131; or a place half-a-stage from Mecca between there and the territory of the Banū Sulaym, according to Bakri, Muʾjam maʿ staʿjam, IV, 1230.
and lead the dawn worship, then mount your steeds and go
down via the 'Arafah Road and take the route on your left to
the ravine of 'Amr until you get on to the Mushāsh Road, and
then join up with me at Ibn 'Amir's garden." Muḥammad b.
Dāwūd did that, and the body of men who had been with Dā-
wūd b. 'Īsā in Mecca, comprising the clients of the 'Abbāsid
family and the slaves who worked on their agricultural prop-
ties, split up. This weakened the eunuch Masrūr's military
strength, and he grew apprehensive that if he resisted the Ṭalī-
bid forces, the majority of the people (i.e., the pilgrims) would
join their side. Hence he set off on Dāwūd's tracks, returning to
Iraq, and the pilgrims remained at 'Arafah.

When the sun began to decline and it was time for the wor-
ship, a group (of religious leaders) from the people of Mecca
successively refused to undertake the task of leading it. When
they found that none of the rulers were present, Aḥmad b. Mu-
ḥammad b. al-Walid al-Radmī,52 who was the muezzin, judge of
the community of pilgrims (qāḍī al-jamā'ah) and imām for the
congregation of the Sacred Mosque of Mecca, then said to the
judge of Mecca, Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Makhzūmi,
"Step forward, deliver the sermon [khutbah] for the people and
lead them in the two worships [midday and afternoon], for you
are indeed the judge of the city." He replied, "In whose name
shall I deliver the sermon, when the governor has fled, and
these fellows [the Talibids and their followers] are on the point
of entering [the city]?" Aḥmad replied, "Don't make the
prayers for anyone specifically." Muḥammad retorted, "No,
you do it. Step forward, deliver the sermon and lead the people
in the worship." Nevertheless he refused. Then they pushed
forward a man from the lower classes of Mecca, and he led the

52. According to Yāqūt, Mu'jam, I, 414, this was the vulgar name for Bustān
Ibn Ma'mar, described as two wadis filled with date palms, and identified
by Bakri, Mu'jam mā 'sta'jam, IV, 1304, with the date grove called Nakhlāt
al-Yamāniyyah.

53. Vocalization of this nisbah or gentilic uncertain, unless from radm, "bar-
rrier." Several rudām in Mecca are mentioned by Azraqi, e.g., Akhbār Makkah,
II, 33, 167, as being barriers or embankments constructed to keep water in the
wadis in check and to prevent flooding of the courtyard of the Ka'bah; cf. also
the Radm Bani Jumāh of Yāqūt, Mu'jam III, 40.
people in the midday and afternoon worship without delivering any sermon. They proceeded and halted, in a body, at the standing-place of ‘Arafah until the sun went down. Then the people began to go down from ‘Arafah by themselves without any imām until they came to Muzdalifah. Another man from the lower classes of Mecca led them in the sunset and evening worships.

Meanwhile, Husayn b. Hasan was pausing at Sarif, reluctant to enter Mecca for fear of being repulsed from it and of being forcibly opposed by its defenders, until a deputation of the citizens of Mecca who were favorably disposed towards the Ṭalibids and fearful of the ‘Abbāsids went out to meet him. They told him that Mecca, Minā and ‘Arafah had now become empty of any representatives of the (‘Abbāsid) ruling power, and that these leaders had departed in the direction of Iraq. Hence Husayn b. Hasan was able to enter Mecca before the time of the sunset worship on the Day of ‘Arafah, together with all his retinue, numbering less than ten persons. They made the circumambulation (tawāf) round the Holy House, the running (sa‘y) between Ṣafā and Marwah, and proceeded to ‘Arafah during the night. They then remained there during a period of time of that night for the standing (wuqūf), and then returned to Muzdalifah. Husayn led the people in the dawn worship and performed the standing at the place of Quzah, and kept the press of people away from himself. He halted at Minā for the remaining days of the pilgrimage, staying there until the year 199 came to its end (August 10, 815). The Talibid Muhammad b. Sulaymān b. Dāwūd remained at Madinah for the rest of the year also. Then the pilgrims, and all of those who had been in Mecca and had taken part in the ceremonies of the pilgrimage, returned homewards—the pilgrims having had to make the running down (ifādah) from ‘Arafah without any leader, however.  

54. A hollow or wadi, according to Azraqi, Akhbār Makkah, II, 208, 213.
55. Khalifah, Ta‘rikh, II, 761; Mas‘ūdī, Murūj, IX, 69 = ed. Pellat, § 3648; Azdi, 335, 338; Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, VI, 306–7; Geddes, 99–100. For the various features of the pilgrimage ceremonies mentioned here, see El² Ḥadjid [A.J. Wensinck—J. Jomier].
Meanwhile, when Harthamah had grown afraid that he would not be able to make the pilgrimage (i.e., that he would lose too much time over the military operations in Iraq to be able to lead the pilgrims on their way across Arabia) and had encamped at Qaryat Shāhi, he attacked Abū al-Sarāyā and his partisans at the very same spot that Zuhayr had attacked him (previously). In the first part of the daylight hours, Harthamah was pushed back, but in the latter part, Abū al-Sarāyā's forces were defeated. When Harthamah realized that he had not managed to attain his aim (of taking charge personally of the pilgrims of Persia and Iraq), he remained at Qaryat Shāhi, made the pilgrims and others retrace their steps, and sent for al-Manṣūr b. al-Mahdī, who joined up with him at Qaryat Shāhi. Harthamah kept sending letters to the leading men in Kūfah. After ʿAli b. Abī Saʿīd had occupied Mādāʾīn, he had gone on to Wāṣīt and seized that city; then he had marched to Bāṣrah, but did not manage to capture it till the end of this year.56

One of the events taking place during this year was the flight of Abū al-Sarāyā from Kūfah and Harthamah’s entering the city. It is mentioned that Abū al-Sarāyā and his supporters from amongst the Ṭālībids fled from Kūfah during the night of (Saturday-) Sunday, the (fifteenth-) sixteenth of Muḥarram, 200 (August 26–7, 815) until they reached Qādisiyyah. Mansūr b. al-Mahdī and Harthamah entered Kūfah the morning after that night and gave the people a guarantee of safety; they did not, indeed, lay a hand on a single one of the townspeople. Mansūr and Harthamah and their forces remained there during that day until the time of the afternoon worship, and then they went back to their encampment, leaving behind as their representative in Kūfah one of their men called Abū Ibrāhīm Ghassān b. Abī al-Faraj b. Ghassān, who held the office of commander of

57. I.e., that of Kūfah, lying to the west of the latter on the road to Mecca, and the site of the great battle between the Arabs and Persians in the conquest period, see Yāqūt, Mu’jam, IV, 291–3; Le Strange, Lands, 76.

58. The person mentioned below, 53, as Abū Ibrāhīm b. Ghassān; the text seems disturbed in both places, and confusion seems to have occurred in the latter place with the governor of Khurasan Ghassān b. ‘Abbād.
The Events of the Year 200

the guard for the governor of Khurasan. He set up his residence in the house which had been formerly occupied by Muḥammad b. Muḥammad and Abū al-Sarāyā.\(^{59}\)

**Abū al-Sarāyā Is Captured and Executed**

Abū al-Sarāyā, together with his retainers, left Qādisiyya and went to the neighborhood of Wāsiṭ, 'Ali b. Abī Saīd being at Wāsiṭ itself. At this point Basrah was still in the hands of the 'Alids, so Abū al-Sarāyā travelled onwards till he crossed the Tigris below Wāsiṭ and came to 'Abdasi.\(^{60}\) There he found a sum of money which had been brought thither from Ahwāz, so he appropriated it. Then he proceeded further until he reached Sūs.\(^{61}\) He encamped there with his forces, remaining there for four days, and he started to allot one thousand (dirhams) each to the cavalrymen and five hundred (dirhams) each to the foot-soldiers. On the fourth day of their stay, al-Ḥasan b. 'Alī al-Bāḏghīsī, known also as al-Ma‘mūn,\(^{62}\) advanced towards them and sent a message, "Depart to wherever you like, for I see no point in engaging in fighting with you; and if you leave my province, I shall make no attempt to pursue you." But Abū al-Sarāyā was determined to provoke an engagement, and he attacked al-Ḥasan b. 'Alī's troops. The latter, however, defeated Abū al-Sarāyā's forces and plundered their encampment; Abū al-Sarāyā himself was severely wounded.\(^{63}\) He now took to flight. He and Muḥammad b. Muḥammad and Abū al-Shawk joined together, after their troops had split up and dispersed. They made for the region of the road to the Jazirah, intending to go to Abū al-Sarāyā's residence at Ra's al-ʿAyn.\(^{64}\) But when

---

60. Settlement of the district of Kaskar, on the course of the modern Tigris channel just north of Qurnah; see Yāqūt, *Muʿjam*, III, 77; Le Strange, *Lands*, 42–3.
61. Town in Ahwāz, the ancient Susa; see Yāqūt, *Muʿjam*, III, 280–1; Le Strange, *Lands*, 340; Schwarz, 358–64.
64. Town of the Jazirah, on the headwaters of the Great Khābur River and famed for its springs; see Yāqūt, *Muʿjam*, III, 13–14; Le Strange, *Lands*, 95; Canard, 97–8; EI\(^1\) s.v. [Honigmann].
they reached Jalūlā, they were intercepted. Hammād al-Kundugush came upon them and seized them, and then brought them to al-Hasan b. Sahl, who stationed himself at Nahrawān when the Harbiyyah troops drove him out (of Baghdad). Abū al-Sarāyā was brought forward and decapitated on Thursday, the tenth of Rabi` I (October 18, 815). It is mentioned that the man who took charge of his execution was Hārūn b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid, who had been a captive in Abū al-Sarāyā's hands. They mention that they never saw anyone, at the time of his execution, more terror-stricken than Abū al-Sarāyā; his arms and legs were violently agitated, and he was shrieking at the top of his voice. Finally, they put a halter round his neck; he was in a state of violent agitation, writhing and shrieking, until his head was actually cut off. Then his head was sent to al-Hasan b. Sahl’s army camp and publicly paraded round it, while his corpse was sent to Baghdad, where it was gibbeted in two halves on the bridge (over the Tigris), one half at each end of it. Ten months had elapsed between his rebellion at Kūfah and his execution.66

At the time of Abū al-Sarāyā’s crossing of the river, ‘Ali b. Abī Saʿīd had moved towards him, but when he had missed him, he had pressed on to Baṣrah and recovered it. The member of the Tālibids who was at Baṣrah, together with a group of other members of the Ahl al-Bayt,67 was Zayd b. Mūsā b. Jaʿfar b. Muḥammad b. ‘Ali b. Ḥusayn b. ‘Ali b. Abī Tālib.68 It was he who acquired the nickname of Zayd al-Nār (“Zayd of the Fire”), simply because of the large number of houses belonging to the ‘Abbāsid family and their retainers at Baṣrah which he

65. Town of Iraq on the road from Baghdad to Ḥulwān and Khurasan; see Yaqūt, Muʿjam, II, 156–7; Le Strange, Lands, 62–3. According to Yaʿqūbi, loc. cit., the interception took place at Rustaqābādhi [conjectural reading of the text], but since this was in Ahwāz [the later ‘Askar Mukram, Le Strange, Lands, 237], this can hardly be correct.


67. Here used apparently in the strict sense of the ‘Alids, but the term had varying degrees of wideness; see El² s.v. [I. Goldziher—Wensinck—A.S. Tritton].

68. I.e., the son of the sixth Imām Mūsā al-Kāẓim.
burnt down. Whenever a member of the Musawwidah was brought before him, he used to decree that his punishment was to be burnt alive. Zayd's supporters also plundered wealth and possessions at Basrah. 'Ali b. Abi Sa'īd now took Zayd prisoner; it is said that the latter sought a guarantee of safety, and 'Ali granted this to him. From amongst the commanders who were with him, 'Ali b. Sa'īd then sent 'Isā b. Yazīd al-Julūdī, Warqā' b. Jamīl, Ḥamdawayh b. 'Ali b. 'Īsā b. Māhān and Ḥārūn b. al-Musayyab to Mecca, Madīnah and the Yemen, ordering them to make war on any of the Ṭālibids in those places. Al-Taymi composed the following verses about al-Ḥasan b. Sahl's killing of Abū al-Sarāyā:

Have you not considered al-Ḥasan b. Sahl's blow,
dealt with your sword, O Commander of the Faithful?

It sent Abū al-Sarāyā's head spinning as far as Marw,
but preserved a warning [the corpse] to those crossing over [the bridge].

When Abū al-Sarāyā was killed, al-Ḥasan b. Sahl sent Muḥammad b. Muḥammad to al-Ma'mūn in Khurasan.

Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā Rebels in the Yemen

According to what has been mentioned, Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā and a group of members of his family were at Mecca when Abū al-Sarāyā rebelled and the fate of the latter and that of the Ṭālibids in Iraq were as described. News of them reached Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā. He therefore set out from Mecca, together with those of his family who were with him, making for the Yemen; the governor of the Yemen at that time was ʿIṣḥāq b. Mūsā b. ʿĪsā b. Mūsā b. Muḥammad b. ʿAlī b. ʿAbdal-lah b. ʿAbdās, who resided there and held power on al-Maʾmūn’s behalf.” When ʿIṣḥāq heard about the ʿAlīd Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā’s approach and how near he was to Ṣanʿāʾ, he set off from the Yemen along the Najd Road with all his troops, comprising cavalry and footsoldiers, and abandoned the Yemen to Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā b. Jaʿfar, recoiling from the prospect of fighting him. He had heard news of how his paternal uncle Dāwūd b. ʿĪsā had acted at Mecca and Madīnah, so he did the same thing, (abandoning his charge without striking a blow). He journeyed onwards in the direction of Mecca until he descended to Mushāsh and then encamped there. He planned to enter Mecca, but the body of ʿAlīds within the city prevented him. ʿIṣḥāq b. Mūsā b. ʿĪsā’s mother was at this time in Mecca, in concealment from the ʿAlīds; they were searching for her, but she remained in hiding from them. Meanwhile, ʿIṣḥāq b. Mūsā remained encamped at Mushāsh. Those persons who had gone underground in Mecca now began to slip away along the mountaintops, and they brought ʿĪsā’s mother to him at his camp. Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā used to be called al-Jazzār (“The Butcher”) because of the large num-

---

76. Khalīfah, Taʾrīkh, II, 760; Yaʿqūbi, Taʾrīkh, II, 540; Masʿūdi, Murūj, VII, 56 = ed. Pellat, § 2740; ʿIsfahānī, Maqātil, 533–4; Geddes, 500–1. Ibrāhīm was the brother of Zayd al-Nār (see above, 26–7), hence also a son of the Imām Mūsā al-Kāzīm.

77. Great-grandson of al-Saffāh’s brother Mūsā and third cousin of al-Maʾmūn.
ber of people whom he killed in the Yemen; he also took people as slaves and confiscated people’s wealth.\textsuperscript{78}

In this year, on the first day of Muḥarram (August 11, 815), after the pilgrims had dispersed on their various ways from Mecca, Ḥusayn b. Hasan al-Aṭṭas took up his position behind the \textit{maqām (Ibrāhīm)},\textsuperscript{79} on a doubled-over saddle cushion, and then gave orders regarding the covering of the Kaʿbah.\textsuperscript{80} As a result, the covering was stripped off until he left nothing at all of it, and the Kaʿbah was left as a bare piece of stonework.\textsuperscript{81} Then he had it covered with two pieces of fine silk which Abū al-Sarāyā had sent with him and which had written on them the following: “Al-Asfar b. al-Asfar\textsuperscript{82} Abū al-Sarāyā, the propagandist for the house of Muḥammad, ordered this to be made as the covering of God’s Holy House, and [he also ordered] that the covering of the tyrants from the progeny of al-ʿAbbās should be flung away so that the Holy House might be purified from [the profanation of] their covering. He wrote [this] in the year 199 [814/15].”\textsuperscript{83}

Then Ḥusayn b. Ḥasan issued a command about the original covering of the Kaʿbah, and as a result, it was divided up amongst his ‘Alid supporters and their followers according to what he considered to be their respective statuses.\textsuperscript{84} He directed his attention to the wealth in the treasury of the Kaʿbah.

\textsuperscript{79} “The standing-place of Abraham,” the stone, now kept in a small building in front of the façade of the Kaʿbah, on which Abraham, re-founder of the Kaʿbah after the Flood, is said to have stood; see \textit{El}\textsuperscript{2} s.v. Kaʿba [Wensink—Jomier].
\textsuperscript{80} I.e., the kiswa, the ornate, embroidered brocade covering, see ibid.
\textsuperscript{81} Masʿūdī, \textit{Murūj}, VII, 58 = ed. Pellat, § 2743.
\textsuperscript{82} Asfar, literally, “the light-coloured one;” the term Banū al-Asfar was often applied to the Byzantines and other Europeans [see \textit{El}\textsuperscript{2} s.v. “Asfar [Goldziher]], but is perhaps here used as a contrast to the use of black as the color par excellence of the ‘Abbāsids [cf. the Musawwidah, above, 27]. Abū al-Sarāyā’s name al-Asfar was apparently used on the coins minted by him at Kūfah in the year 199 [814/5], see above, 16.
\textsuperscript{83} Cf. Azraqī, \textit{Akhbār Makkah}, I, 264.
\textsuperscript{84} Or: “according to how he viewed their importance to his cause,” ‘alā qaddī manāzilihim ‘indahu.
and seized it. He swept down on the house of every person who, so he heard, had deposited with him valuables entrusted to him by a member of the 'Abbāsid family or their followers. If he found there anything of these valuables, he seized them and inflicted punishment on the house owner; and if he found nothing there, he jailed and tortured the owner so that he should have to procure his release by handing over the whole of his personal fortune and should have to make an attestation before the legal witnesses that the money in question belonged to the Musawwidah from the progeny of al-'Abbās and their followers. This procedure came to affect a large number of people. The man charged with torturing the victims was a man from Kūfah called Muḥammad b. Maslamah, who was living in a special house86 near the (quarter of) the wheat dealers, which became known as the “House of Torture.” The 'Alids so terrified the populace that a considerable number of the better-off citizens fled; the 'Alids thereupon punished these fugitives by pulling down their houses. They went so far as to interfere with people's womenfolk and to seize people's children, causing great scandal. They started scraping off the thin gilded covering on the capitals of the columns of the (Sacred) Mosque, and obtained from a single column, after much tedious labor, one mithqāl (4.25 gr.) or so of gold; this process was consequently applied to the majority of the columns of the Sacred Mosque. They wrenched out the iron which formed the gratings around Zamzam87 and also beams of teak, and these were sold off for a negligible price.

Anti-Caliph in Mecca

When Ḥusayn b. Hasan and the members of his family accompanying him saw how the people's attitude towards them had

---

85. According to Azraqi, Akhbār Makkah, I, 348, five thousand dirhams were appropriated as a forced loan; the custodians of the Ka'bah pursued their claim before al-Ma'mūn after Muhammad b. Ja'far (see below) lost power in Mecca and managed to recover the money.

86. Dar khāliṣah, which might be alternatively rendered as “a white house,” the expression echoes Qur'ān, XXXVIII, 46.

87. The well in the courtyard of the Ka'bah; see EI1 s.v. (Carra de Vaux).
The Events of the Year 200

changed on account of their behavior, and when they received news of Abū al-Sarāyā's execution, of the expulsion of the Ṭālibīds resident there in Kūfah, Baṣṣārah and the regions of Iraq, and of the re-imposition of control there by the ʿAbbāsids, they went together in a body to Muḥammad b. Jaʿfar b. Muḥammad b. ʿAlī b. ʿUsayn b. ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭalib. The latter was a venerable figure, of a very pacific nature, well-loved by the people at large and in no way associated with the evil activities of which many of the members of his house were guilty. He used to relate traditions concerning the religious sciences (ʿilm) from his father Jaʿfar (al-Ṣādiq) b. Muḥammad; people used to write down this knowledge from his transmission, and he used to show forth seemly behavior and asceticism. They now said to him, "You are probably aware of your high status in the eyes of the people; so show yourself publicly, and we will give allegiance to you as Caliph, for if you do that, no two persons would dispute your status." Nevertheless he refused to accede to their request. But his son, ʿAlī b. Muḥammad b. Jaʿfar, and ʿUsayn b. Ḥasān al-Aftās kept on at him until they persuaded the old man, against his better judgement, and he agreed to their plan. Thus they set him up on Friday, after the worship, the sixth of Rabiʿ II (November 13, 815). Then they did homage to him as Caliph, and all the people, including the permanent residents of Mecca and the temporary foreign immigrants (muḥāwirūn), gathered round him in a body and pledged their allegiance, whether willingly or unwillingly, and addressed him by the title of "Commander of the Faithful."

He remained in this position and dignity for a few months, but held only the title and not the substance of power, while his son ʿAlī, Ḥusayn b. Ḥasan and a group of their partisans behaved in the most outrageous possible way and committed the most reprehensible deeds. Thus Ḥusayn b. Ḥasan assaulted a woman of Quraysh from the Banū Fihr, whose husband belonged to the Banū Makhzūm and who was outstandingly

88. Yaʿqūbi, Taʾrīkh, II, 540; Ṣafahānī, Maqātil, 537–41.
89. Maṣʿūdī, Murrūj, VII, 56–7 = ed. Pellat, §§ 2741–2. His honorific title was al-Dibajah, "embellishment, handsome [face]," from his handsomeness and accomplishments.
beautiful. He sent a message to her\textsuperscript{90} that she should come to him, but she refused his demand. He frightened her husband (with threats) and gave orders for him to be sought out, with the result that the husband went into hiding from him. Then, during the night, Ḥusayn sent a gang of his associates who broke down the house door, seized the woman’s person and carried her off to Ḥusayn. She remained in his clutches almost till his departure from Mecca, but managed at that point to escape from him and return to her own family, who were at that moment involved in the fighting at Mecca. ‘Ali b. Muḥammad b. Jaʿfar assaulted a youth of Quraysh, the son of a judge in Mecca, called Išāq b. Muḥammad, who was extremely handsome. He rushed in and seized him, openly and by the full light of day, in his house on al-Ṣafā’, overlooking the route of the pilgrims’ saʾy; he hoisted him up on the saddle of his horse and himself rode behind him on the beast’s hindquarters. ‘Ali b. Muḥammad rode off with him and went right through the market until he came to Biʿr Maymūn\textsuperscript{91} [he used to reside in the house belonging to Dāwūd b. ʾĪsā on the road to Minā]. When the indigenous people of Mecca and the temporary foreign immigrants saw that, they all sallied forth and gathered together in the Sacred Mosque. The shops were closed and locked up, and the pilgrims who were circumambulating the Kaʾbah (on the ’Umrah) joined up with them. They then went along to Muhammad b. Jaʿfar b. Muḥammad, who was residing in Dāwūd’s house and said, “By God, we shall certainly renounce our allegiance to you and kill you, unless you restore to us this youth whom your son has seized openly!” Muḥammad barred the door of the house and spoke to them from behind the grill of the window which opened on to the mosque and replied, “By God, I knew nothing [of this]!” He sent a message to Ḥusayn b. Ḥasan asking him to ride off to his son ʿAlī and rescue the youth from him. But Ḥusayn refused to undertake this, protesting, “By God, you know perfectly well that I have no power over your son. If I were to go to him, he would attack me

\textsuperscript{90} Reading, with the editor, n. b, ilayhā for the text’s ilayhi.
\textsuperscript{91} See concerning this, Azraqī, 
Akhbār Makkah, II, 222; Yāqūt, Muʾjam, I, 302.
and set upon me with his band of partisans." When Muḥammad realized the position, he said to the people of Mecca, "Give me a guarantee of safety, so that I may ride along to 'Alī and take the youth away from him." They provided him with the required guarantee and allowed him to ride off. He rode along unescorted till he reached his son. Then he took back the youth from him and restored him to his family.

The narrator continues: Only a short while elapsed before the 'Abbāsid, Isḥāq b. Mūsā b. 'Īsā, approached from the Yemen and halted at Mushāsh. The 'Alīds gathered round Muḥammad b. Ja'far b. Muḥammad and said to him, "O Commander of the Faithful, this is Isḥāq b. Mūsā approaching us with a force of both cavalry and infantry. We have come to the opinion that we should excavate a protective ditch and rampart around the higher parts of Mecca, and that you should show yourself publicly [in Mecca] so that the populace will see you and will take up arms at your side." They also sent messages to secure the support of the tribesmen of the surrounding districts and allotted subsidies to them, and they constructed the ditch and rampart around Mecca so that they might combat Isḥāq b. Mūsā from behind it. Isḥāq engaged them in battle over a period of several days, but then became disinclined to continue the fighting and the battle, and withdrew in the direction of Iraq. En route, Warqā' b. Jamīl and his personal force, and also those who were with him of al-Julūdī's force, met Isḥāq and said to him, "Go back to Mecca with us, and we will bring this fighting to a satisfactory conclusion for you." So he turned back in company with them till they drew near to Mecca and halted at Mushāsh. Those members of the Meccan mob who supported Muḥammad b. Ja'far, the blacks employed as water-carriers (ṣūdān ahl al-miydāh) and the tribesmen who had received subsidies, rallied round Muḥammad b. Ja'far, and he then got them ready for battle at Bīr Maymūn. Isḥāq b. Mūsā and Warqā' b. Jamīl, together with the latter's commanders and

92. Presumably slaves or ex-slaves. This interpretation of the phrase is that of Kennedy, 211, and fits well in the context; he notes the 'Alīd attempts, here as in Kūfah, to enlist support amongst the lowest strata of society, the slaves and laborers.
troops, approached and engaged them in combat at Bi’r Maymūn, and a considerable number on both sides were killed or wounded. Ishāq and Warqā’ then returned to their encampment, but returned to the fray a day later and resumed fighting the enemy.

Muḥammad b. Ja‘far and his forces were now put to flight. When Muḥammad perceived this, he sent a group of envoys from Quraysh, including the judge of Mecca, asking them (Ishāq and Warqā’) for a guarantee of protection so that they might evacuate Mecca and go off to wherever they liked. Ishāq and Warqā’ b. Jamil agreed to this request and guaranteed them a period of safety lasting for three days. When Tuesday arrived, Ishāq and Warqā’ entered Mecca, this being in the month of Jumādā’ II (January–February 816), with Warqā’ acting as governor over Mecca on behalf of al-Julūdī. The Ṭālibids dispersed from the city, with groups of them making for various destinations. As for Muḥammad b. Ja‘far, he started out in the direction of Juddah93 and then went off towards Juḥfah.94 However, he was intercepted by one of the clients of the ‘Abbāsids called Muḥammad b. Hakim b. Marwān. The Ṭālibids had despoiled Muḥammad b. Hakim’s house in Mecca and had violently ill-treated him; he used to act as the agent and steward (yatawakkalu) for one of the ‘Abbāsids in Mecca from the family of Ja‘far b. Sulaymān. He had now gathered together a force of the ‘Abbāsids’ slaves, those who worked in the gardens and orchards, and he eventually overtook Muḥammad b. Ja‘far between Juddah and ‘Usfān.95 He then plundered and stripped him of everything which Muḥammad had brought with him from Mecca, to the point that he left him with nothing but his drawers, and fully intended to kill him; but in the end he threw him

93. The modern port of Jeddah; see EI2 s.v. Djudda [R. Hartmann—P.A. Marr].
94. A settlement in the Tihāmah or Red Sea coastland of Arabia, on the pilgrimage route from Syria, between Madinah and Mecca; see Yaqūt, Mu‘jam, II, 111; Abdullah al-Wohaibi, The Northern Hijaz in the writings of the Arab geographers 800—1150, 102–12.
95. A settlement on the Madinah-Meccah pilgrimage route some forty miles northwest of the latter, see Yaqūt, Mu‘jam, IV, 121–2; Al-Wohaibi, 284–9.
The Events of the Year 200

a shirt, a turban, a cloak and a few dirhams (or: a very few dirhams, durayhimāt) on which he could eke out an existence.

Muḥammad b. Ja'far set out and came to the territory of the Juhaynah on the (Red Sea) coast.⁹⁶ He remained there until the pilgrimage season came to an end, gathering together followers during this period, and on several occasions he clashed at Shajarah.⁹⁷ and elsewhere with Hārūn b. al-Musayyab, governor of Madinah. The explanation of these clashes was that Hārūn sent men to seize Muḥammad b. Ja'far, and when the latter realized this intention, he marched out against Hārūn with the force which he had collected round himself until he reached Shajarah. Hārūn moved forward to confront him and gave battle. Muḥammad b. Ja'far's forces were defeated; he himself lost an eye through an arrow-shot, and a large part of his force was killed. Hence he withdrew and established himself at his original encampment, awaiting the outcome of the pilgrimage (in the hope that some of the pilgrims would join his cause). But none of those who had given promises to him ever showed up. So when he realized this, and when the pilgrimage season was over, he sought a guarantee of personal security from al-Julūdī and from Rajā' (b. Abī al-Ḍaḥḥāk)⁹⁸ al-Fadl b. Sahl's cousin on his father's side.⁹⁹ Rajā' gave him guarantees in regard to al-Ma'mūn and al-Fadl b. Sahl, that he should not be personally harassed and that the promise of security should be fully honored. He willingly accepted these conditions, and Rajā' brought him to Mecca eight days after the final dispersion of the pilgrims back to Mecca from Minā, on Sunday, the nineteenth of Dhu al-Ḥijjah (July 19, 816). 'Īsā b. Yazīd al-Juḥaynī and Rajā' b. Abī al-Ḍaḥḥāk, al-Fadl b. Sahl's cousin on his father's side, ordered the pulpit (minbar) to be brought forward and set up be-

---

96. The Banū Juhaynah, part of the Qudā'ah group, occupied a large tract of the northern Hijaz, lying to the north of Madinah; see El² s.v. s.v. Ḫudā'ā (M.J. Kister).
97. A place just to the west of Madinah; see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, III, 325; Al-Waḥābī, 337.
98. Official under al-Ma'mūn and al-Mu'tasim, and subsequently head of the Diwān al-kharāj or financial department for the former; see Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 240 n. 1.
tween the corner of the Ka'bah\(^{100}\) and the \textit{maqām} (\textit{Ibrāhīm}), in
the very same spot where homage had been given to Muḥammad b. Jaʿfar. The populace, Quraysh and the rest, had been assembled, and al-Julūdī then went up to the top of the pulpit, with Muḥammad b. Jaʿfar standing one step below him, wearing a short black coat and a pointed black cap, but without a sword, so that he might formally divest himself of power.

Then Muḥammad arose and delivered a speech, thus:

\begin{quote}
O people, those of you who recognize me now knew me formerly, and those of you who do not recognize me, well, I am Muḥammad b. Jaʿfar b. Muḥammad b. 'Ali b. Husayn b. 'Ali b. Abī Ṭalīb. Originally I pledged my allegiance to the servant of God, the Commander of the Faithful, 'Abdallāh, an allegiance by hearing and obedience, one freely entered into and not extracted by compulsion, and I was one of the legal witnesses who attested in the Ka'bah the two succession documents of Hārūn al-Rashid regarding his two sons, the deposed one Muḥammad [al-Amin] and the Commander of the Faithful, 'Abdallāh al-Ma'mūn.\(^{101}\)

Then, indeed, there arose civil strife which enveloped\(^{102}\) the whole earth, involving ourselves and others, and a report reached me that the servant of God, 'Abdallāh al-Ma'mūn, had died. This information led me to the position where they did homage to me as Commander of the Faithful, and I deemed the acceptance of that honor as lawful because of my earlier promises and convenants regarding my allegiance to the servant of God, 'Abdallāh; the Imām, al-Ma'mūn.\(^{103}\) So you gave homage to me, [O people], or at least, those of you who did give homage [gave it]. But verily, the news has now reached me, and I attach full cre-
\end{quote}

\(^{100}\) I.e., the northern 'Irāqi one, or, more probably, the eastern, Black Stone one.

\(^{101}\) The famous "Meccan documents" of 186 (802) in which al-Rashid endeavored to arrange the succession and reconcile the conflicting claims of his sons; see Gabrieli, "La successione di Hārūn al-Rašid et la guerra tra al-ʾAmin e al-Maʾmūn," \textit{RSO}, XI (1926–8), 341–97; Kennedy, 124–5.

\(^{102}\) Reading ghashiyat for the text's ghushiyat.

\(^{103}\) I.e., he regarded himself as released from his earlier pledge of allegiance because of his belief that al-Maʾmūn was dead.
The Events of the Year 200

dence to it, that he is alive and sound in body. Indeed, I now ask pardon of God for having drawn you into giving allegiance to me, and I have cast off the allegiance which you pledged to me in exactly the same way as I have taken off this ring of mine from my finger. I have reverted to the status of being an ordinary Muslim, so that the Muslims have no obligation of allegiance to me, and I have extricated myself from all that affair. God has restored the rightful authority to the trusty Caliph, the servant of God, ‘Abdallāh al-Ma’mūn, Commander of the Faithful. Praise to be God, the lord of the worlds, and blessings be upon Muḥammad, the seal of the prophets. Farewell, O Muslims!

Then he descended from the pulpit, and ʿĪsā b. Yazid al-Ju-lūdī set off with him towards Iraq. He left behind as governor over Mecca his son, Muḥammad b. ʿĪsā, in the year 201 (816/17). ʿĪsā and Muḥammad b. Jaʿfar travelled onwards until ʿĪsā handed the latter over to al-Ḥasan b. Sahīl, who then sent him onwards, in the custodianship of Rajāʾ b. Abī al-Daḥḥāk, to al-Maʿmūn at Marw.104

In this year, the Ṭalibid Ibrahim b. Musa b. Jaʿfar b. Muḥammad sent one of the progeny of ‘Aqil b. Abī Ṭalib105 from the Yemen to Mecca with a numerous military force in order that he might lead the pilgrimage. But the ‘Aqilī was met by armed resistance and put to flight, and was unable to enter Mecca.

The affair of Ibrāhīm and the ‘Aqilī

It is mentioned that Abū Ishaq b. Hārūn al-Rashid106 led the pilgrimage in the year 200 (816). He travelled onwards until he en-

105. I.e., a descendant of the Caliph ‘Alī’s half-brother, although ‘Aqil had supported Muʿāwiyyah, his descendants adopted pro-ʿAlid views and are often reckoned among the Ahl al-Bayt [see above, 26]. It now seems possible that the later Fatimid caliphs of Egypt and Syria arose from the ‘Aqilī branch of the Ṭalibids; Professor Heinz Haim of Tübingen University hopes to document this in a future publication.
106. I.e., the later Caliph al-Muʿtaṣim.
tered Mecca, being accompanied by a large number of his commanders, including Ḥamdawayh b. ‘Ali b. Ḥūrān Māḥān, whom al-Ḥasan b. Sahl had appointed governor over the Yemen. They went into Mecca, where al-Julūdi and his troops and commanders were in control. The ‘Alid Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā b. Ja‘far b. Muḥammad dispatched from the Yemen one of the progeny of ‘Aqil b. Abī Ṭālib, ordering him to lead the pilgrimage. When the ‘Aqili got as far as the garden of Ibn ‘Āmir, he heard the news that Abū Ishaq b. Ḥārūn al-Rashīd had taken charge of the pilgrimage and that he had with him commanders and troops (so numerous) that no one had power to withstand him. The ‘Aqili halted at the garden of Ibn ‘Āmir, and then there passed by him a caravan of pilgrims and merchants which also had with it the covering (kiswah) for the Ka‘bah and fragrant perfumes for it. He seized the merchants’ goods and the covering and perfumes for the Ka‘bah, and the pilgrims and traders reached Mecca naked and stripped of their possessions.

News of this reached Abū Ishaq b. al-Rashīd, who was at that moment residing in the house (or: factory, storehouse) of the glass vessels (dār al-qawārīn) in Mecca. He gathered together his commanders and sought their advice. Al-Julūdi told him—this being two or three days before the Day of Refreshment ([Yawm] al-Tarwiyyah)—“May God keep the Amir in the upright way! I will deal with these rebels for you. I will sally forth against them with fifty of the elite of my companions and another fifty whom I shall select from the rest of the commanders.” They all agreed with him about this plan. Hence al-Julūdi marched out with his hundred men, until he fell upon the ‘Aqlī and his companions in the morning at the garden of Ibn ‘Āmir. He surrounded them and took the greater part of them prisoner. Some of them took to flight, running away on foot. He got back the covering of the Ka‘bah, except for part of it which the deserters from the ‘Aqlī’s force had fled with a day previously, and also the perfumes and the goods of

---

107. Mentioned several times in Azraqi, Akhbār Makkah, e.g., II, 75, 87, 250, as marking an open space and also a gate adjoining the Sacred Mosque.

108. The eighth day of Dhū al-Hijjah, when the pilgrims shift from the rites performed within Mecca to those performed on the hills outside.
the merchants and pilgrims. He sent the 'Aqilī captive to Mecca, and he had all the 'Aqilī's captured companions brought before him. He ordered each of them to be beaten round the head with ten strokes, and then said to them, "O dogs destined for hell fire, get you hence, for by God, there would be no difficulty in slaughtering you and no advantage in keeping you captive." Accordingly, he released them, and they went back to the Yemen, begging for food along the road until the majority of them perished from hunger and from exposure. 109

Ibn Abī Sa'īd adopted an attitude of opposition towards al-Hasan b. Sahl. Al-Ma'mūn sent the eunuch Sirāj and gave him instructions, "If 'Ali places his hands in al-Hasan's hand [in submission], or makes his way towards me at Marw, [then well and good], but if not, cut off his head!" So Ibn Abī Sa'īd went to al-Ma'mūn in the company of Harthamah b. A'yān.

In this year, in the month of Rabī' I (October–November 815), Harthamah travelled from his army camp to al-Ma'mūn at Marw.

**Harthamah's Journey to al-Ma'mūn and what befell him**

It is mentioned that Harthamah, having dealt with the revolt of Abū al-Sarāyā and the 'Alīd, Muhammad b. Muḥammad, and having entered Kūfah, remained in his encampment till Rabī' I. Then, as soon as the new month began, he set off towards the Nahr Ṣarṣar. People thought that he was going to al-Hasan b. Sahl at Madā'in, but when he reached the Nahr Ṣarṣar he continued in the direction of 'Aqarqūf, 110 then to Baradān, 111 then to

---


110. Settlement on the West Side of Baghdad, famed as the site of a large tell; see Yāqūt, *Mu'jam*, III, 137–8; Le Strange, *Lands*, 67; EI² s.v. [S.M. Stern].

111. Village on the left bank of the Tigris above Baghdad; see Yāqūt, I, 375–6; Le Strange, *Lands*, 50.
Nahrawān, and he proceeded until he reached Khurasan. Before this, letters had come to him from al-Ma'mūn, reaching him at various stages of his journey, to the effect that he should turn back and take up the governorship of Syria or the Hijaz. Harthamah refused, however, saying that he would not retrace his steps until he had had a personal meeting with the Commander of the Faithful in order to give proof on his part against al-Faḍl because of his acknowledged wise counsels in the past to al-Ma'mūn and his forefathers. He wished to inform the Caliph about how al-Faḍl b. Sahl was conducting affairs to the detriment of al-Ma'mūn's interests and how al-Faḍl was concealing items of information from him, and that he, Harthamah, would not leave him until he had brought him, al-Ma'mūn, back to Baghdad, the seat of the caliphate of his ancestors and their royal power, in order that he might assume direct control of his own sphere of authority and watch over its outlying parts. Al-Faḍl realized what Harthamah was aiming at, and he said to al-Ma'mūn, "Harthamah has stirred up unrest in your territories and amongst your subjects; he has given support against you to your enemies and has shown hostility to your supporters. He secretly used Abū al-Sarāyā for his own nefarious designs, Abū al-Sarāyā being one of the soldiers in his army, until Abū al-Sarāyā came to act as he did; if Harthamah had really wanted Abū al-Sarāyā not to behave in that way, Abū al-Sarāyā would not have done so. The Commander of the Faithful has written numerous letters to him instructing him to go back and take up the governorship of Syria or the Hijaz, but he has refused; he has come back to the Commander of the Faithful's door in a state of rebelliousness and dissension, openly using harsh words and uttering threats with the intention of making a great issue of it. If, despite all these crimes, he is allowed to go free, this will be a cause of corruption for others." In this way, he filled the Commander of the Faithful's heart (with anger) against him.

112. Town to the northeast of Baghdad where there was a bridge, carrying the road to Khurasan, over the Nahrawān Canal; see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, V, 334–7; Le Strange, Lands, 59–61; R. McC. Adams, Land behind Baghdad, 91–2.
Harthamah’s journey was a protracted one, and he did not reach Khurasan till Dhū al-Qa’dah (June 816). When he arrived in Marw he was afraid lest his coming be kept from al-Ma’mūn, hence he had drums beaten so that al-Ma’mūn should hear the noise. The latter did in fact hear them, and exclaimed, “What is this?” They told him, “Harthamah has begun to thunder and lighten!” Harthamah himself imagined that he was in full favor. Al-Ma’mūn then ordered him to be brought in. When he was brought in—the Caliph’s heart having been changed against him, as described above—al-Ma’mūn upbraided him, “You have conspired with the people of Kūfah and the ‘Alids, and you have intrigued and plotted with Abū al-Sarāyā until he came out in revolt and perpetrated his various misdeeds. He was one of your retainers, and if you had really wanted to arrest the whole lot of them, you could have done so; but you let the rope around their throats be slack and you let the halter on their necks hang loosely.” Harthamah was impelled to speak out, to make excuses and to defend himself against the charges levelled at him, but al-Ma’mūn would not listen to any of this. He gave orders; Harthamah’s nose was violently struck, his belly was trampled on and he was dragged out of the Caliph’s presence. Al-Faḍl b. Sahl had previously instructed his minions to treat Harthamah with harshness and violence, and he was then jailed. He remained in prison for a few days, and then they secretly conspired to kill him, reporting to the Caliph that he had died.113

In this year, an émeute was stirred up in Baghdad between the troops of the Ḥarbiyyah quarter114 and al-Ḥasan b. Sahl.115

115. ʿUyūn, 351.
Trouble in Baghdad between the Troops of Ḥarbiyyah and al-Ḥasan b. Sahl

It is mentioned that al-Ḥasan b. Sahl was at Madā’in when Harthamah set off for Khurasan, and he remained there until the news of what had been done to Harthamah reached the people of Baghdad and Ḥarbiyyah. Al-Ḥasan b. Sahl now sent a message to ‘Alī b. Hishām, the governor of Baghdad appointed by himself, as follows: “Delay payment of their stipends to the army, both the Ḥarbiyyah and Baghdad troops; inspire them with promises of payment, but do not actually give it to them.” Previously, al-Ḥasan had given promises to them that he would pay their stipends. Also, the Ḥarbiyyah troops had erupted when Harthamah had departed for Khurasan, and had proclaimed, “We shall not be content until we have driven al-Ḥasan b. Sahl out of Baghdad.” Al-Ḥasan’s financial officials in Baghdad included Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid (al-Marwarrūdhi) and Asad b. Abī al-Asad. The Ḥarbiyyah troops now rose up against them, expelled them and appointed Ishaq b. Mūsā b. al-Mahdi as al-Ma’mūn’s representative in Baghdad. The citizens of Baghdad from both sides of the river concurred in this and approved of Ishaq as governor. But al-Ḥasan used trickery towards them and was in correspondence with their commanders, until they rose up on the side of the ‘Askar al-Mahdi. He also began to pay out their stipends due for the previous six months, but only actually paid out exiguous amounts. The Ḥarbiyyah troops then transferred Ishaq to their

---


117. Son of an Abnā’ leader with a power base in the Ḥarbiyyah quarter, and ally of Tahir b. al-Ḥusayn during the civil war between al-Amin and al-Ma’mūn; see Kennedy, 105, 144–5, 151, 154–6.

118. I.e., the son of the former Caliph al-Hādi.

119. The territories in the Rusāfah district of eastern Baghdad allotted by the Caliph al-Mahdī after his father al-Mansūr had laid out Rusāfah, hence named after the former; see Le Strange, Baghdad, 42, 189; Lassner, Topography, 64, 251.

A little before that, the Ḥarbiyyah troops, hearing reports that the people of Karkh were intending to admit Zuhayr and ‘Alī b. Hishâm, had attacked the Bāb al-Karkh\textsuperscript{123} and had gone on to burn it down and to plunder everywhere from the limits of the Qaṣr al-Waddāḥ\textsuperscript{124} to the area within the Bāb al-Karkh and to (the quarter of) the booksellers and paper vendors\textsuperscript{125} during the night of (Monday-) Tuesday. On the Tuesday morning, ‘Alī b. Hishâm entered and engaged in battle with the Ḥarbiyyah troops over a period of three days at the old bridge and the new bridge of Sarit\textsuperscript{126} Then he promised the Ḥarbiyyah troops that he would pay their six months’ stipend as soon as the tax revenues were gathered in. They, in turn, asked him for an immediate advance of fifty

\textsuperscript{120} The district of the Old Dujayl Canal which ran northwestwards from Baghdad to the Euphrates at Rabb; see Le Strange, \textit{Baghdad}, 53; \textit{Id.}, \textit{Lands}, 51.

\textsuperscript{121} Former governor of Khuṣar under al-Rashid; see Crone, 185.

\textsuperscript{122} The gate leading out of the suburb to the southwest of the Round City, through which the nearby town of Muḥawwal (“the place of transfer,” i.e., landing-stage) on the Nahr Iṣâ was reached; see Le Strange, \textit{Baghdad}, 136–52; \textit{Id.}, \textit{Lands}, 67.

\textsuperscript{123} The gate of the suburb of Karkh to the south of the Round City, reached through the Bāb al-Kufah of the Round City; see Le Strange, \textit{Baghdad}, 63; \textit{El²} s.v. al-Karkh (M. Streck—Lassner).

\textsuperscript{124} Palace said to be formerly that of al-Mahdi, which marked the northern limits of Karkh; see Le Strange, \textit{Baghdad}, 58, 92; Lassner, \textit{Topography}, 61, 73, 248.

\textsuperscript{125} The Qaṣr al-Waddāḥ quarter was famed for its booksellers and paper vendors.

\textsuperscript{126} The Sarāt Canal passed to the south of the Round City to join the Tigris; see Lassner, \textit{Topography}, 101, 277.

\textsuperscript{127} The so-called “Mills of the Patricius” at the junction of the Greater and Lesser channels of the Sarāt Canal; see Le Strange, \textit{Baghdad}, 148; Lassner, \textit{Topography}, 75–6, 260.
The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

dirhams to each soldier for their living expenses during the month of Ramaḍān. He agreed to this, and began to pay out the promised money, but had not paid over to them the whole of their stipends by the time that Zayd b. Mūsā b. Ja'far b. Muḥammad b. 'Alī b. Ḥusayn b. 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib, the person known as Zayd al-Nār, had rebelled at Baṣrāh. He had escaped from his imprisonment at the hands of 'Alī b. Abī Sa'id, and then had rebelled in the district of Anbār, together with the brother of Abū al-Sarāyā, in Dhū al-Qa' ādah 200 [June 816]. They sent forces against him, and he was captured and brought before 'Alī b. Hīshām.

However, only Friday elapsed before 'Alī b. Hīshām fled from the Ḥarbīyyah troops and set up his camp by the Nahr Ṣarsar. The reason for this was that he had tricked the Ḥarbīyyah troops and had not fulfilled his promise to them to pay fifty (dirhams) by the time the 'Īd al-ʿAḏhā (the tenth of Dhū al-Ḥijjah [July 10, 816]) came round. Furthermore they heard the news about Harthamah and his fate, so they fell upon 'Alī and drove him out, the guiding spirit behind this action and their leader in war being Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid. This arose from the fact that when 'Alī b. Hīshām had entered Baghdad, he had treated Muḥammad with contempt. Furthermore, relations between Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid and Zuhayr b. al-Musayyab had deteriorated to such a point that Zuhayr caused Muḥammad to be flogged. Accordingly, the latter reacted angrily to this treatment, and in Dhū al-Qa' ādah [June 816] went over to the side of the Ḥarbīyyah troops. He took the lead in proclaiming war against 'Alī b. Hīshām and his forces, and people flocked to his standard. 'Alī b. Hīshām lacked the strength to stand up to him, so they were able to expel him from Baghdad. Then they went after him in pursuit, until they defeated and dislodged him from the Nahr Ṣarsar.

In this year, al-Ma'mūn sent Rajā' b. Abī al-Ḍaḥḥāk and the

---

128. See above, 26–7.
129. Town on the Euphrates to the west of Baghdad; see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, I, 257–8; Le Strange, Lands, 65–6; Elf. a.v. (Streck—A.A. Dixon).
130. Ya'qūbi, Ta'rikh, Il, 547; Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, VI, 315–16.
The Events of the Year 201

eunuch Firnās to bring back 'Alī (al-Ridā) b. Mūsā b. Ja'far b. Muḥammad and Muḥammad (al-Dibājah) b. Ja'far.131 In this year, the progeny of al-'Abbās were counted, and their number amounted to thirty-three thousand, including males and females.133

In this year, the Byzantines murdered their king Leo, who had ruled over them for seven years and six months, and they set up as ruler for his second reign Michael, son of George.134

In this year, al-Ma’mūn executed Yahyā b. ’Āmir b. Ismā’īl (al-Hāriθī), because Yahyā had upbraided him in an unseemly fashion and had stigmatized him as “Commander of the Unbelievers” (Amīr al-Kāfirīn). Hence he was killed in his presence.135

In this year, Abū Ishāq (al-Mu’tasim) b. al-Rashīd led the pilgrimage.136

131. I.e., the eighth Imām of the Shi’a, whom al-Ma’mūn was planning to nominate as his heir; see below, 61–2.
133. Masʿūdi, Murūj, loc. cit.; Azdī, 339; ’Uyūn, 351; Ibn al-Athīr, loc. cit.
134. Ibid. Leo V the Armenian (813–30) was murdered in 820 by the partisans of Michael II the Stammerer (820–9), founder of the Amorian dynasty; see M.V. Anastos, in Cambridge medieval history. IV. The Byzantine empire. 1. Byzantium and its neighbours, 99–100; A.A. Vasiliev, Byzance et les Arabes. I. La dynastie d’Amorium (820–867), 280, noting that Arab authors confused Michael I Rangabē and Michael II; id., History of the Byzantine empire, I, 272. Ṭabarī’s date for the Emperor’s death is therefore four years too early.
135. According to Ya’qūbī, Ta’rikh, II, 546, Yahyā was a confrère of Harthamah; see also Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 320; Crone, 257 n. 604, citing this incident as an instance of the opposition of the old Abnā’ to al-Ma’mūn’s Persianizing policies and reliance on Persian advisers.
The events taking place during this year included the populace of Baghdad's attempt to persuade Manṣūr b. al-Mahdī to accept the caliphate; but he refused to accept it. On his affirming this refusal, they then dangled before him the prospect of assuming the military command (imrah) over them, with the proviso that they would recognise al-Maʾmūn in the Friday worship as Caliph, and he agreed to this.131

**Manṣūr b. al-Mahdī Accepts the Military Command over Baghdad**

We have already mentioned previously the reason why the people of Baghdad expelled thence 'Alī b. Hishām. It is recorded concerning al-Ḥasan b. Sahl that, when the news of the Baghdādis' expulsion of 'Alī b. Hishām from the city reached him at Madāʾīn, he took to flight and retreated to Wāṣīṭ. This took place at the opening of the year 201 (end of July 816). It has already been stated how the cause of 'Alī b. Hishām's ejection

---

137. 'Uyūn, 352.
from the city by the Baghdādis was al-Ḥasan b. Sahl's sending Muhammad b. Abū Khallid al-Marwarrūdhi after Abū al-Sarāyā's execution and his rebellion138 and his appointing 'Alī b. Hishām as governor of the West Side of Baghdad, whilst Zuḥayr b. al-Musayyab was to become governor over the East Side. Al-Ḥasan himself had remained at Khayzurāniyyah.139 He had had 'Abdallāh b. 'Alī b. Ḥisā b. Māḥān140 flogged for an infringement of the sharī'ah, so that the anger of the Abnā' was aroused; the populace rose up, and al-Ḥasan was forced to flee to Jarjarāyā141 and then to Başalāmā.142 He had ordered the troops of 'Askar al-Mahdī to be paid their stipends but had refused to pay the troops of the West Side, and fighting had broken out between the soldiers of the two sides of the city. Muḥammad b. Abū Khallid had distributed money to the Ḥarbiyyah troops and had put to flight 'Alī b. Hishām. Al-Ḥasan b. Sahl had then been forced to flee because of 'Alī's flight.

Al-Ḥasan fell back to Wāsīt, and Muḥammad b. Abū Khallid b. al-Hinduwān pursued him, in open revolt against him, Muḥammad had himself assumed leadership over the people in Baghdad; he appointed Sa'id b. al-Ḥasan b. Qaḥṭabah (al-Ta'ijī143 as governor of the West Side and Naṣr b. Ḥamzah b. Mālik (al-Khuza'ī144 as governor of the East Side. Manṣūr b. al-Mahdī, Khuzaymah

---

138. Reading here wa-fasādīhi. One might also read ba'd qatīl Abū al-Sarāyā wa-fasādīhi; the editor's n. c queries the manuscript's reading.
139. The quarter of Baghdad where Khayzurān, wife of al-Mahdī and grandmother of al-Ma'mūn, had had much property; see Nabīa Abbott, Two queens of Baghdad, 120–1.
140. Brother of Ḥamdawayh, on whom see above, n. 72, and Crone, 179.
141. Clearly the emendation required of the text's Barbakhā, in the light of 50 below. Jarjarāyā was a town on the Tigris below Baghdad in the direction of Wāsīt; see Yaqūt, Mu'jam, II, 123; Le Strange, Lands, 37.
142. According to Yaqūt, Mu'jam, I, 322 (spelling Başalāmāh), a village of the Baghdad district.
143. Member of an old Abnā' family, whose father and grandfather had been prominent in the 'Abbāsid revolution, the family had fought strongly for al-Amin in the civil war; see Crone, 188–9; Kennedy, 79–81.
144. From a similar background to Sa'id's; his father had been governor of Khurasan for al-Rashīd; Naṣr's cousin Muṭṭalib b. 'Abdallāh was a supporter of Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī's anti-caliphate in Baghdad, see below, 66; and another cousin, Abūmad b. Naṣr, suffered death under the mihnah of al-Wāthiq. See Crone, 180–1; Kennedy, 80–1.
b. Khāzim [al-Tamīmī]¹⁴⁵ and al-Faḍl b. al-Rabi¹⁴⁶ gave him their support in Baghdad. It has been stated that 'Isā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid arrived during the course of this year from Raqqah, where he had been in the entourage of Tāḥir b. al-Ḥusayn, and he and his father agreed to attack al-Ḥasan. The two of them, together with those of the Ḥarbiyyah troops and the members of the Baghdad forces who were with them, proceeded until they reached the village of Abū Quraysh¹⁴⁷ near Wāṣīṭ. Whenever they came upon a detachment of al-Ḥasan’s forces in some place and a clash occurred there, al-Ḥasan’s troops were on every occasion put to flight. When Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid came to Dayr al-‘Āqūl,¹⁴⁸ he remained there for three nights. At that moment, Zuhayr b. al-Musayyab was at Iskāf Bani al-Junayd,¹⁴⁹ acting as al-Ḥasan’s financial agent (ʿāmil) over Jūkhā,¹⁵⁰ hence resident within his administrative charge. He kept sending messages to the commanders of the troops in Baghdad, and then sent his son al-Azhar. He himself proceeded as far as the Nahr al-Nahrawān, but came up against Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid. The latter rode forward against him and encountered him at Iskāf (Bani al-Junayd). He surrounded Zuhayr’s force, but gave him a guarantee of personal security and took him captive. He brought Zuhayr into his camp at Dayr al-‘Āqūl and stripped him of all the wealth and possessions, every single item, small or great, which he had with him. Then Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid advanced, and when he

¹⁴⁵. From a similar background to that of Saʿīd and Naṣr, and now a leader in the anti-Sahlid movement in Baghdad; see Crone, 180–1; Kennedy, 81–2.
¹⁴⁷. A village between Wāṣīṭ and Qaryah, the latter on the canal of the same name flowing into the Tigris below Wāṣīṭ; see Yāqūṭ, Muʾjam, IV, 337; Le Strange, Lands, 35.
¹⁴⁸. Town on the Tigris below Mādāʾin; see Yāqūṭ, Muʾjam, II, 520–1; Le Strange, Lands, 35–6; Adams, Land behind Baghdad, 91; EI² s.v. [S.A. El-Ali].
¹⁴⁹. Town on the Nahrawān Canal to the east of Baghdad; see Yāqūṭ, Muʾjam, I, 181; Le Strange, Lands, 59–60; Adams, 95–6.
¹⁵⁰. District to the east of the present course of the Tigris, to the north of Maysān; see Yāqūṭ, Muʾjam, II, 179; Le Strange, Lands, 42.
reached Wāsīt, he sent Zuhayr back to Baghdad for imprison-
ment at the hands of a blind son of his named Ja'far.

Meanwhile al-Ḥasan remained at Jarjarāyā, but when he
heard the news that Zuhayr had fallen into the hands of Mu-
ḥammad b. Abī Khālid, he travelled onwards till he entered
Wāsīt and then encamped at Fam al-Ṣīlā. From Dayr al-ʿĀqūl,
Muḥammad sent his son Hārūn to Nīl, which was being held
by Saʿīd b. al-Sājūr al-Kūfī. Hārūn defeated him and then pur-
sued him until he [Hārūn] entered Kūfah, which he occupied,
appointing a governor over it. ʿĪsā b. Yazīd al-Julūdī arrived
from Mecca, accompanied by Muḥammad b. Jaʿfar. They set off
together until they came to Wāsīt, via the land route. Then
Hārūn retraced his steps towards his father, and they all met
up together at the village of Abū Quraysh in order to enter
Wāsīt, where al-Ḥasan b. Sahl was. Al-Ḥasan b. Sahl then
moved forward and encamped behind Wāsīt on its outer
fringes. Al- Faḍl b. al-Rabīʿ had been in concealment since the
killing of the deposed one [al-Amīn], but when he saw that
Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid had reached Wāsīt, he sent a mes-
 sage to him seeking a guarantee of personal safety; Muḥammad
granted him this, and he emerged into the open.

Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid now prepared for battle. He and
his son ʿĪsā and their forces advanced to a position two miles
from Wāsīt. Al-Ḥasan sent against them his troops and his
commanders, and a fierce struggle took place by the residential
area (abyāt) of Wāsīt. At a point after the time of the afternoon
worship, a violent wind and dust storm blew up, until the com-
battants were completely mixed up with each other and con-
fused together. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid's forces were de-
feated; he himself stood firm against the enemy, but received

151. Town on the Tigris at its confluence with the Ṣīlā Canal, to the south of
modern Kut el-Amara, shortly to be famed as the venue for the opulent celebra-
tions of the consummation of al-Maʾmūn's marriage to al-Ḥasan b. Sahl's
daughter Būrān (see below, 153ff.); see Yaḵūt, Muʿjam, IV, 276; Le Strange,
Lands, 38.

152. Former supporter of al-Amīn, who soon after this deserted al-Ḥasan's
side for that of the Baghdad insurrectionists (see below, 69–75); see Kennedy,
156, 159–60.
several severe wounds on his body. 153 He and his soldiers fled in
total disarray, and al-Hasan’s forces routed them. 154 This battle
took place on Sunday the twenty-third of Rabi‘ I, 201 [October
19, 816].

When Muḥammad (and his forces) reached Fam al-Ṣilḥ, al-
Hasan’s forces marched out against them and drew up their
ranks ready to give battle to Muḥammad’s army. But when
nightfall came, Muḥammad and his forces travelled onwards
until they halted at Mubārak 155 and then encamped there. The
next morning, al-Hasan’s forces moved up towards them. They
drew up their ranks against them for battle and the two sides
clashed. When night enveloped them, they marched off till they
reached Jabbul 156 and encamped there. Muḥammad sent his son
Ḥārin to Nil, where he then took up his position, while Mu-
hammad remained at Jarjarāyā. His wounds became worse; he
left his commanders behind with the rest of his army, and his
son Abū Zanbil had him carried till he brought him to Baghdad
on the night of Saturday [Friday–Saturday], 157 the sixth of Rabi‘
II [October 31,–November 1, 816]. Abū Zanbil entered the city
on the night of Monday [Sunday–Monday], 158 and Muḥammad
b. Abī Khālid died of his wounds that very night. He was buried
secretly in his house during that same night. Meanwhile, Zu-
hayr b. al-Musayyab was kept in prison at the hands of Ja’far b.
Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid. When Abū Zanbil arrived, he went
to Khuzaymah b. Khāzim on Monday, the eighth of Rabi‘ II
[November 3, 816] and told him the news about his father.
Khuzaymah sent to the Ḥashimites and the commanders and

---

153. According to Ya’qūbī, Ta’rikh, II, 547, from an arrow.
154. As the editor notes, this phrase seems superfluous and adds nothing to
the sense; if it is retained, one would have to emend hazama to hazamahum.
155. Village and canal on the Tigris to the north of Wāsīt; see Yāqūt,
Mu‘jam, V, 50–4; Le Strange, Lands, 38.
156. Small town on the eastern bank of the Tigris below Jarjarāyā; see Yāqūt,
Mu‘jam, II, 103–4; Le Strange, Lands, 36.
157. Reading, after the editor’s suggestion in n. e, laylat al-sabt for laylat
al-ithnayn, which gives the correct correspondence of date and day of the week
and is congruent with the date of Monday, the eighth of Rabi‘ II below.
158. As the editor despairingly points out, this does not seem to accord with
the reading laylat al-sabt possibly to be adopted, following also Ibn al-Athir,
for the preceding line [see n. 157 above]; perhaps we should accordingly emend
this also to laylat al-sabt.
gave them this information. He read out to them ʻĪsā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid’s message, to the effect that he would assume the burden of the leadership in the war on their behalf, and they assented to this. ʻĪsā accordingly assumed the military leadership in succession to his father. Abū Zanbil left Khuzaymah and went to Zuhayr b. al-Musayyab, dragged him out of his cell and cut off his head; it is said that he slaughtered him like a sacrificial victim. He took Zuhayr’s head and sent it to ʻĪsā in his camp, and ʻĪsā stuck it up on a spearpoint. As for the body, they took it, tied a rope round the feet and then paraded it through Baghdad, carrying it past his own houses and those of his family in the quarter near the Bāb al-Kūfah. Then they bore it publicly round Karkh, and brought it back to the Bāb al-Shām in the evening; finally, when night came down, they threw it into the Tigris. This was on Monday, the eighth of Rabī’ II (November 3, 816). Abū Zanbil now made his way back to ʻĪsā, who dispatched him to Fam al-Šarāt.

News of Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid’s death reached al-Ḥasan b. Saḥl, so he set off from Wasit and travelled as far as Muḥārak. He halted there, and when it was Jumādā II (December 816–January 817), he sent Ḫumayd b. ʻAbd al-Ḥamīd al-Ṭūsī, in company with ʻr. kū al-ʻA’rābī, Sa‘īd b. al-Šājūr, Abū al-Ḫatt, Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm al-ʻIfrīqī and a number of other commanders. They encountered Abū Zanbil at Fam al-Šarāt and defeated him. He fled to his brother Ḥarūn at Nil, and the forces of the two of them engaged in battle with al-Ḥasan’s army by the residential area (buat) of Nil. They fought together for a while, and then Ḥarūn’s and Abū Zanbil’s forces were defeated, and they fled as far as Mada’in. This was on Monday, the twenty-fourth of Jumādā II (January 17, 817). Ḫumayd and

---

159. The southwestern gate of the Round City; see Le Strange, *Baghdad*, 17.
160. The northwestern gate of the Round City; see ibid.
161. The mouth of the Sarāt Canal which ran along the southwestern fringes of Baghdad.
162. Kinsman of Qaḥṭabah b. Shabīb, and newly-arrived at this time from Khurasan to take command of al-Ḥasan’s army; see Kennedy, 156, 159–60, *El* s.v. (ed.j.
163. A conceivable reading for this same might be ‘Urwah.
164. Actually a Saturday.
his forces entered Nil and sacked it for three days; they plundered the wealth and goods of the local people and further plundered the surrounding villages. Meanwhile, when Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid died, the Ħāshmites and the commanders discussed the new situation together and said, “We will appoint one of ourselves as Caliph and throw off allegiance to al-Maʾmūn.” They were urging each other on to these alluring courses when they received the news of the defeat of Hārūn and Abū Zanbil. This only made them hurry even more in their plans, and they importuned Manṣūr b. al-Mahdī to accept the caliphate. He refused to accept the office, but they kept on at him until they made him amir and representative (khalīfah) of al-Maʾmūn in Baghdad and Iraq, saying, “We won’t accept the Zoroastrian, son of the Zoroastrian (al-maiṣī ibn al-maiṣī) al-Ḥasan b. Sahl, and we’ll drive him out until he returns to Khurasan.”

It has been stated that, when the people of Baghdad rallied round Ḳāṭib b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid and gave him support in the struggle against al-Ḥasan b. Sahl, al-Ḥasan realized that he had insufficient military power to overcome Ḳāṭib. So he sent, as an envoy to him, Wahb b. Saʿīd al-Kāṭib, promising Ḳāṭib a marriage alliance with one of his daughters; a sum of a hundred thousand dinārs; a guarantee of personal security for himself, his family and the people of Baghdad in general; and the governorship of any region he might choose for himself. Ḳāṭib sought from al-Maʾmūn a document in the Caliph’s own hand setting forth these conditions. Al-Ḥasan b. Sahl sent Wahb back with a favorable answer, but Wahb was drowned between Mubārak and Jabbul. Ḳāṭib now wrote to the Baghdad troops

165. ʿUyun, 352. In a letter couched in violent and denunciatory language these rebellious partisans of the ʿAbbāsid family in Baghdad were later to castigate al-Maʾmūn for setting over them Magian governors; see below, 85, and W. Madelung, “New documents concerning al-Maʾmūn, al-Ḥaḍīl b. Sahl and ʿAlī al-ʾRidā,” in Studia arabica et islamica, Festschrift für Ḳ̣hsān ʿAbbās, 344.

166. Presumably the son of the Nestorian Christian secretary of the Barma-kids, Saʿīd b. Wahb, from whom there later descended a line of viziers to the caliphs; see Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 143, 312.

167. See for these two places, above, 50 nn. 155–6.
that he was too preoccupied with the conduct of the warfare to concern himself with the collection of the land tax, and that they should appoint for this function one of the Ḥāshimites. So they nominated Maḥṣūr b. al-Mahdī. The latter encamped with his forces at Kalwāḍhā. They urged him to accept the caliphate, but he refused and said, "I am only the representative (khalīfah) of the Commander of the Faithful until he comes personally or until he appoints his own nominee as governor." The Ḥāshimites, the commanders and the army at large accepted this arrangement. The moving spirit behind this was Khuzaymah b. Khāzīm. He now sent out commanders into every district.

Ḥumayd al-Ṭūsī came immediately in pursuit of the sons of Muḥammad (b. Abī Khalīd) until he reached Madā‘īn. He stayed there for just one day and then left for Nil. When the news about these movements of Ḥumayd reached Maḥṣūr, he marched out and encamped at Kalwāḍhā. Yahyā b. ‘Alī b. ‘Īsā b. Māḥānī came to Madā‘īn and then Maḥṣūr dispatched Iṣḥāq b. al-‘Abbās b. Muḥammad al-Ḥāshimi from the other side, and he himself encamped at the Nahr Sarṣar. Ghassān b. ‘Abbād b. Abī al-Farajī sent Abū Ibrāhīm b. Ghassān, the governor of Khurasan’s commander of the guard, to the region of Kūfah. Ghassān proceeded until he reached Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah and then halted there. When the news of this reached Ḥumayd—Ghassān being unaware of the fact that Ḥumayd had surrounded Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah—he took Ghassān captive, depoiled his retainers and killed some of them. This happened on Monday, the fourth of Rajab (January 26, 817). All the forces involved then remained in their respective encampments, ex-

168. Brother of the Ḥāmdawayh and ‘Abdallāh mentioned above, 27, 47, and deputy of his father ‘Alī b. ‘Īsā in the decisive battle of 195 (811) between al-Amin’s forces in Persia and Ṭāḥir b. al-Ḥusayn, see Kennedy, 140.
170. Cousin of the Sahl brothers, and subsequently governor of Khurasan before Ṭāḥir’s nomination and then governor in Sind; see below, 104, 179–80, 189.
171. On the apparent confusion between these two personages, see above, 24–5 and n. 58.
cept that Muḥammad b. Yaqtīn b. Mūsā, who was with al-Ḥasan b. Sahl, now fled from al-Ḥasan to ‘Īṣā’s side. ‘Īṣā sent him to Maṃṣūr, who in turn sent him to the vicinity of Ḥumayd (and his forces). Ḥumayd was encamped at Nīl, except for a cavalry detachment at Qaṣr (Ibn Hubayrah). Ibn Yaqtīn set off from Baghdad on Saturday, the second of Shaʿbān [February 23, 817], until he arrived at Kūthā. Ḥumayd received news of this movement, but Ibn Yaqtīn knew nothing of this last fact until Ḥumayd and his troops confronted him at Kūthā. They attacked Ibn Yaqtīn and defeated him, killing some of his force and capturing others; a large number were drowned, too. Ḥumayd and his troops plundered the villages in the environs of Kūthā and seized cattle, sheep and goats, asses, and every piece of jewelry and finery, possessions, etc., which they could lay their hands on. Then Ḥumayd went back as far as Nīl, while Ibn Yaqtīn withdrew and encamped at the Nahr Ṣaṣrār.

Abū al-Shaddākh has recited concerning Muḥammad b. Abī Khaḍīl,

The lofty pride of the Abnā‘ has crashed to the ground after Muḥammad,
and the great man of them who enjoyed power and respect has been brought low.

Yet do not rejoice at his death, O house of Sahl,
for at some day in the future, the field of slaughter will be your lot too.

‘Īṣā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khaḍīl counted the number of men in his army, and they came to one hundred twenty-five thousand, comprising both cavalymen and foot soldiers; he then

---

173. Actually a Monday.
174. The town of Kūthā Rabba, where there was a bridge of boats across the Kūthā Canal, running to the south of Baghdad, see Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, IV, 487–8; Le Strange, Lands, 68–9; El² s.v. (M. Plessner).
175. I have not been able to identify this poet.
The Events of the Year 201

55

gave each cavalryman a pay allowance of forty dirhams and each foot soldier an allowance of twenty dirhams. 176

In this year, the volunteer fighters (al-mutta'awwai'ah) enthusiastically set about suppressing evildoers in Baghdad, under the leadership of Khālid al-Dāryūsh and the Khurasanian Abū Ḥātim Sahl b. Salāmah al-Anṣāri. 177

The Volunteer Fighters Suppress Crime in Baghdad

The reason for this was that the evildoers (fussāq) from amongst the Ḥarbīyyah troops and the mobsters (shuṭṭār) who were in Baghdad and Karkh inflicted great harm on the populace and indulged in evil behavior, brigandage and the seizing of youths and women openly from the streets. 178 They used to band together, go up to a man, seize his son and carry him off, and nothing could be done to stop them. They used to demand that people lend them money or give it to them as a gift, and nothing could be done to stop them. They used to band together, and then go out to the villages and overpower the local people, seizing all the goods, money, etc., which they could lay

177. Mas′ūdī, Murūj, VII, 62 = ed. Pellat, § 2748, stigmatizing the volunteers as ruwaybidah “dregs of the population.” Tabāri’s qualification here min ahl Khurāsān most naturally refers to Sahl only, but in view of Khālid’s Iranian other name, it was probably applicable to them both. For this most interesting episode, in which Khālid and Sahl, with slightly differing aims and attitudes, endeavored to halt the social and moral disintegration within Baghdad caused by the lack of discipline of the anti-Sahlid forces there and, doubtless, by the previous anarchy in the latter days of al-Amin, see R. Levy, A Baghdad chronicle, 82-5; I.M. Lapidus, “The separation of state and religion in the development of early Islamic society,” IJMES, VI (1975), 372-8; M.A. Shaban, Islamic history, a new interpretation. 2. A.D. 750-1055 [A.H. 132-448], 46; Kennedy, 156-7.
178. Tabari does not use here the term ‘ayyārīn [although it is used in the corresponding context in ‘Uyun, 353], but it is clearly these anti-social, semi-criminal elements who are meant. On them and the shuṭṭār, elements of society much discussed recently by historians, see C. Cahen, Mouvements populaires et autonomisme urbain dans l’Asie musulmane du Moyen Âge, 40 ff., Shaban, 45; R.P. Mottahedeh, Loyalty and leadership in an early Islamic society, 157 ff.; S. Sabari, Mouvements populaires à Baghdad à l’époque abbaside, 77 ff.; Els s.v. Ayyār [F. Taeschner].
The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

their hands on. There was no government authority (ṣultān) which could restrain them, and none of its representatives had any control over them because the government authority itself depended on them for its power and they were, indeed, the government's own trusted guards. Hence it was impossible for the government to hold them back from any evil deed which they were perpetrating. They used to exact money from passersby on the roads, from passengers in the boats and from those riding on mounts. They used to demand protection money for watching over gardens, and they openly used to commit robberies on the roads. No one was able to stand up against them, and the people were in extreme misery because of them.

The culmination of their activities was that they sallied forth to Qatrabbul and openly plundered the town, seizing goods, gold, silver, sheep and goats, cattle, asses, etc. They brought all these back to Baghdad and started publicly to offer them for sale. The rightful owners came along and appealed for the government authority's protection against them, but it was totally unable to punish them, nor was it able to get back for them, the rightful owners, anything at all of what had been seized. This was at the end of Sha'bān (ca. March 22, 817).

When the people perceived all that—what had been seized from them, the sale of their own possessions in their very own markets, and all the evil in the land, the oppression, iniquity and brigandage which the evildoers and mobsters had unleashed—and when they saw that the government authority was not reproving them in any way, the God-fearing men from each suburban district and street (of the city) (ṣulahā' kull rabad wa-kull darb) rose up and went to each other, saying, "In each street there is just one evildoer, or a couple, or up to

179. Small town and district to the northwest of Baghdad, on the 'Isā Canal; see Yaqūt, Mu'jam, IV, 371–2; Le Strange, Lands, 65–6; EI² s.v. [Lassner].
180. Reading here, and in two places below, with the Addenda et emendanda, p. DCCLXVIII, the verb 'ayyara instead of the text's use of ghayyara.
181. The movement accordingly took advantage of local religious leadership. As appears from below, Khalīd's center of power was in the western, Anbār Road area of the city, and Sahl's in the northern Harbiyyah one; see Lapidus, 376. It is hard to see here, as does Shaban, 46, a movement deliberately manipulated by reactionary, wealthy, proto-Ḥanbali merchants.
ten of them, yet they have managed to get the upper hand over you, despite your superior numbers. If only you would join together and agree on a concerted policy, you would put down these evildoers and they would not be able to commit all this iniquity in your midst." A certain man from the Anbār Road district, called Khalid al-Daryush, then came forward and summoned his neighbors, the members of his family and the inhabitants of his quarter to assist him in the enjoining of praiseworthy measures and the forbidding of reprehensible actions (al-amr bi-al-ma'rūf wa-al-nahy 'an al-munkar). They responded to his call, and he launched an attack on the local evildoers and mobsters and prevented them from carrying out their former depredations. They in turn put up resistance to him and intended to oppose him forcibly; so he fought them and defeated them, seizing some of them, beating them, imprisoning them and hauling them up before the government authority—not that he intended to criticize or blame that authority in any way.

Then after him, there arose a man from the Harbiyyah populace called Sahl b. Salāmah al-Anṣāri, one of the Khurasanians, who had the patronymic of Abū Hatim. He summoned the people to enjoin praiseworthy measures and to forbid reprehensible actions and to behave in conformity with the Book of God and the sunnah of His Prophet. He tied leaves of the Qurʾān round his neck and then began with his neighbors and the inhabitants of his quarter, giving them both positive injunctions and prohibitions; and they accepted these instructions from him. Then he summoned the populace en masse along these same lines, from the noble to the humble, from the Hāshmites to those socially inferior to them. He set up a register (diwān) for this purpose in which were written the names of all who came and pledged loyalty to him (bāya'ahu) in pursuance of these aims and in combatting all who opposed him and the

---

182. Qurʾān, III, 100, the classic expression of the ruler's (or his deputy's, such as the muhtasib or market inspector) duty to point the subjects in the direction of conformity with the shari'ah; see e.g., Māwardi, al-Āhkām al-sultāniyyah, tr. E. Fagnan, Les statuts gouvernementaux, ch. xx, 513–53; Lapidus, 376.
measures which he advocated, whoever they might be. A great number of people came to him and pledged loyalty to him. Next, he went all round Baghdad, its markets, its suburban districts and its thoroughfares, and he prevented all those who were levying protection money and exacting payments from (making their demands on) passing travellers and on those visiting [the capital], announcing that “There is no protection-money \( \text{khifārah} \) in Islam.” \( \text{Al-} \text{khifārah} \) meant that a man used to go along to the owner of a garden or an orchard and tell him, “Your garden is under my protection; I will ward off anyone intending damage to it, and you will have to pay me such-and-such amount of dirhams each month.”\(^{183}\) He had to hand over this money willy-nilly. The extortioner would have grown powerful through this if al-Daryūsh had not opposed him and said, “I do not mean to brand the government authority as being corrupt, nor to blame it, nor to combat it, nor to issue orders and prohibitions to it about anything.” And Sahl b. Salāmah added, “But I shall attack anyone who opposes the Book and the \text{sunnah} \text{ whoever it may be, the government authority itself or anyone else; what is just and right } \text{[al-} \text{haqq]} \text{ is now established in the community as a whole, and whoever has pledged loyalty to me in this I shall accept, and whoever opposes me, I shall attack.”\(^{184}\) Sahl’s proclamation of this took place on Thursday, the fourth of Ramadan, 201 (March 26, 817) in the mosque of Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn which the latter had built in the Ḥarbiyyah quarter; Khalid al-Daryūsh had made his call two or three days previously.

At this time Mansūr b. al-Mahdī remained in his encampment at Jabbul. When these events involving the rise of Sahl b. Salāmah and his companions took place, and the news reached Mansūr and ʿĪsā, it shattered them, for the greater part of their

---

183. \text{Khifārah, khafārah, “protection money”} is in fact a term of ancient tribal life, the sum paid over to a \text{khafir} or leader of tribal escorts for a caravan journeying through tribal territories; see H. Lammens, \text{La Mecque à la veille de l’Hégire}, 178–84. For a modern form of this due, \text{khāwah} \text{(< khuwwah, “fraternity”)}, see H.R.P. Dickson, \text{The Arab of the desert}, 442–3.

184. I.e., Sahl is emphasizing the responsibility of the godly community as a whole, and not just the Caliph and his representatives, for bringing about the just society, one conformable to the \text{shari’ah}; see Lapidus, 376.
forces was composed of mobsters and evildoers. Manṣūr now entered Baghdad. Meanwhile, ‘īsā had been corresponding with al-Ḥasan b. Sahl, so when ‘īsā heard the news about events in Baghdad, he asked al-Ḥasan b. Sahl to grant himself, his family and his retainers a guarantee of safety, with the further proviso that al-Ḥasan would issue six months’ pay allotment to his retainers, his troops and the remainder of the Baghdad troops when he had received the revenues from the tax collection. Al-Ḥasan agreed to this, and ‘īsā left his encampment and entered Baghdad on Monday, the thirteenth of Shawwāl (May 4, 817). The whole of their forces was thrown into disarray, and then they entered Baghdad. ‘īsā informed them of the peace agreement which he had made with al-Ḥasan b. Sahl on their behalf, and they assented to this.¹⁸⁵

‘īsā then retraced his steps to Madāʾin. Yahyā b. ‘Abdallāh, al-Ḥasan b. Sahl’s cousin on his father’s side, came to him, until he halted at Dayr al-‘Aqīl. They appointed Yahyā governor of the Sawād, associating him and ‘Īsā together in the exercising of the power of governorship. Each one was given a number of the sub-districts (tasāṣi) and tax divisions (aʾmāl) of Baghdad. When ‘Īsā took up the appointments which had been granted to him, this being at a time when the troops of ʿAskar al-Mahdi were hostile to him, there suddenly rose up al-Muttalib b. ‘Abdallāh b. Mālik al-Khuzaʿī proclaiming al-Maʾmūn’s name and those of the two sons of Sahl, al-FAḍl and al-Ḥasan. Sahl b. Salāmah, however, displayed an attitude of aversion from him, saying, “You did not pledge your loyalty to me for this!”

Manṣūr b. al-Mahdi, Khuzaymah b. Khāzim and al-FAḍl b. Rabiʿ now removed themselves, having on the very day of their departure pledged their loyalty to Sahl b. Salāmah on the basis of behavior in conformity with the Book and the sunnah, to which Sahl had been summoning people. They encamped in the Ḥarbiyyah quarter, in flight from al-Muṭṭalib. Sahl b. Sa-
lāma came to the bridge\textsuperscript{187} and sent a message to al-Muṭṭalib asking him to come to him; he also reiterated, "You did not pledge loyalty to me for this!" Al-Muṭṭalib, however, refused to come to him, so Sahl engaged in violent fighting with him extending over two or three days until ʿĪsā and al-Muṭṭalib made peace together. ʿĪsā now contrived secretly to send someone to assassinate Sahl. The assassin struck Sahl with his sword, but the blow did not have any serious effect on him. After this attempt on his life, Sahl retired to his house. ʿĪsā thus became the people's leader, and they then all ceased from fighting.

Ḥumayd b. ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd had remained at Nil, but when he heard the news of this, he entered Kūfah and remained there for some days, before departing for Qaṣr Ibn Ḥubayrah, where he took up his position, obtaining a house and fortifying it with a wall and a trench; this was at the end of Dhū al-Qaʿdah (mid-June 817). ʿĪsā remained in Baghdad, inspecting and reviewing the troops and approving their fitness for service (yaʿrido al-junda wa-yusahḥihum)\textsuperscript{188} until the tax revenues were gathered in. He sent a message to Sahl b. Salāmah and apologized to him for what he had done (that is, for attempting his assassination), pledging his loyalty to Sahl and adjuring him to go back to his previous mission in direction people to praiseworthy measures and restraining them from reprehensible actions, and promising that he would be Sahl's helper in all that. Sahl accordingly resumed his original rôle of summoning people to behavior in conformity with the Book and the sunnah.\textsuperscript{189}

In this year, al-Maʿmūn designated ʿAlī b. Mūsā b. Jaʿfar b. Muḥammad b. ʿAlī b. Abi Ṭālib as heir to the throne for the Muslims and as Caliph after himself, and gave him the name of The One Well-pleasing [to God] from the House of Muḥammad (al-Riḍā min āl Muḥammad); he further ordered his troops to

\textsuperscript{187} Reading, with n. d of the editor, al-jisr for al-Ḥasan.

\textsuperscript{188} On the institution of army reviews and musters, see EF\textsuperscript{2} "Istirād" \textsuperscript{2} {Bosworth}, and id., "Recruitment, muster and review in medieval Islamic armies," in War, technology and society in the Middle East, 59–77.

\textsuperscript{189} ʿUyūn, 352–3; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 326.
discard their black robes and start wearing green ones, and he wrote letters announcing that to the farthest corners of the realm.\textsuperscript{190}

\textit{Al-Ma'mūn Designates 'Alī b. Mūsā as Heir to the Throne}

It is mentioned that, while 'Īsā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid was busy reviewing and inspecting his troops after his return from his encampment to Baghdad, he received unexpectedly a message from al-Ḥasan b. Sahl informing him that the Commander of the Faithful al-Ma'mūn had made 'Alī b. Mūsā b. Ja'far b. Muḥammad heir to the throne after himself. The reason for this, it said, was that al-Ma'mūn had given consideration to the members of the two houses of al-'Abbās and 'Alī but had not found anyone more excellent,\textsuperscript{191} more pious or more learned than 'Alī. The message went on to say that al-Ma'mūn had given him the title of The One Well-pleasing [to God] from the House of Muhammad, and it ordered him to throw off his black robes and put on green ones. This was on Tuesday, the second of Ramadan, 201 (March 24, 817). In the text of the message, al-Ḥasan b. Sahl further ordered 'Īsā to convey the command to all his subordinates and appointees—personal retainers, soldiers and commanders—and to the Hashimites, that they should take an oath of allegiance to 'Alī (as heir to the throne); to require them to wear green-sleeved coats (\textit{aq-})


\textsuperscript{191} \textit{Afḍal}. This adjective had emotive connotations for the Shi'ah when applied to 'Alī and his line, for the Shi'ah regarded each of these last as \textit{al-imām al-afḍal}, "the most excellent leader of the community," on this topic of \textit{fadl} as a characteristic of the imamate, see Watt, 226–8.
tall pointed caps (qalānis) and other distinguishing features (a'lām), and to compel the people of Bahgdad in general to adopt these measures. When 'Isā received these instructions, he proclaimed to the Baghdad troops that they should put them into practice, stipulating however to al-Hasan that he should expedite payment to them of a month's pay allotment and then the remainder when the tax revenues came in. Some of them replied, "We agree to take the oath of allegiance and to wear green;" but others answered, "We will not take the oath of allegiance, we will not wear green and we will not let this question of the succession pass out of the line of al-'Abbās; all this is nothing but machinations on the part of al-Fadl b. Sahl." They persisted in this attitude for several days. The members of the 'Abbāsid family were angered by this; they banded together and discussed the question, and finally announced, "We will appoint as ruler one of ourselves and throw off our allegiance to al-Ma'mūn." The spokesmen here, the ones who were ceaselessly occupied in the negotiations involved in this matter and the ones who assumed the responsibility for it, were Ibrāhīm and Manṣūr, the two sons of al-Maḥdī.

In this year, the people of Baghdad gave their allegiance to Ibrāhīm b. al-Maḥdī as Caliph and declared al-Ma'mūn deposed.

---

192. The qābā, a short coat of Persian origin, was becoming the general garment for ceremonial and court wear during this period; see Sourdel, "Questions de cérémoniale 'abbaside," 135.

193. This seems here a better translation than "flags" after the verbal noun libs on which these three nouns depend.


195. Khalīfah, Ta'rikh, II, 764; Ya'qūbī, Ta'rikh, II, 547–8; Mas'uḍī, Murūj, loc. cit.; 'Uyūn, 350, 353. On this episode in general, see C. Barbier de Meynard, "Ibrahim, fils de Mehdi, fragments historiques . . .," JA, ser. 6. vol. XIII (1869), 225 ff.; Levy, A Baghdad chronicle, 80–5; Shaban, 45 ff.; Kennedy, 158–62; EI² s.v. Ibrāhīm b. al-Maḥdī [Sourdel].

---

The People of Baghdad give allegiance to Ibrāhīm b. al-Maḥdī

We have already mentioned the reason for the members of the 'Abbāsid family in Baghdad rejecting al-Ma'mūn's provisions as
they did, and the banding together of members of their group with the aim of combatting al-al-Hasan b. al-Sahl militarily, until he departed from Baghdad. When al-Ma'mūn proclaimed 'Ali b. Mūsā b. Ja'far as his heir and commanded the people to wear green, and when al-Hasan's letter reached 'Isā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid ordering him to put the measures into practice, and when he required the people in Baghdad to set about adopting them—this being on Tuesday, the twenty-fifth of Dhū al-Ḥijjah (July 14, 817)—the members of the 'Abbāsid family in Baghdad proclaimed that they had given their allegiance to Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī as Caliph and, after him, to his nephew Ḳasim b. Mūsā b. al-Mahdī. They declared al-Ma'mūn deposed and that they would issue a pay allotment of ten dinārs to each man on the first day of Muḥarram, that is, on the first day of the coming year. Some people (among the Baghdad troops) agreed to this, but some would not agree to it until they actually got the payment. When Friday came round and they wished to perform the worship, they wished to set up Ibrāhīm as al-Ma'mūn's representative (in Baghdad) in place of Maṣūr. Therefore they gave instructions to a certain man who was to say, when the muezzin gave the call to worship, "We desire to pray for al-Ma'mūn and then, after him, for Ibrāhīm, who is to act as a representative." They had also secretly suborned a group of people and had told them, "When he gets up, saying, 'We will pray for al-Ma'mūn,' then you yourselves are to get up and say, 'We will only be satisfied by your giving allegiance to Ibrāhīm and to Iṣāq after him and by your declaring al-Ma'mūn irrevocably deposed; we do not wish you to seize our wealth and possessions, as Maṣūr did.' Then remain in your houses." Thus when the man got up to speak, this group of people answered him. Hence he did not lead them in the Friday worship on that particular Friday nor did anyone deliver the sermon. The people merely performed four cycles of inclinations (rak'ahs) and then went home. That took place on Friday, the twenty-eighth of Dhū al-Ḥijjah, 201 (July 17, 817). 196

In this year, 'Abdallah b. Khurradadhbih, governor of Tabaristan, conquered Lāriz̄ and Shirriz̄ in Daylam and added them to the lands of Islam; he conquered the mountainous parts of Tabaristan; and he dislodged Shahriyar b. Sharwin from them. Salm al-Khāsir has said [concerning these events]:

Indeed, we expect the conquest of Byzantium and of China at the hands of one who has made us to prevail over the royal power of Sharwin!

So strengthen your hands by means of 'Abdallah!

Indeed, he possesses an untiring faculty of judgment as well as faithfulness.

In this year, he sent Mazyār b. Qārin to al-Ma'mūn and took prisoner Abū Laylā, king of Daylam, without making any peace agreement with him.

In this year, Abū al-Sarāyā’s protégé Muḥammad h. Muḥammad died.
The Events of the Year 201

In this year, Babak al-Khurrami became active with the Jáwidhâniyyah, the partisans of Jáwidhân b. Sahl, ruler of Badhdh, he claimed that Jáwidhân's spirit had entered into him, and embarked on mischief-making and evildoing.

In this year, the people of Khurasan, Rayy and Isfahân were afflicted by famine; the price of food rose high and deaths resulted.

In this year, Ishâq b. Mûsâ b. 'Îsâ b. Mûsâ b. Mûsî b. Muḥammad b. 'Ali led the pilgrimage.

205. Jáwidhân was a leader of the Khunamîyyah before the rise of Babak; see B. Scarcia Amoretti, in Cambridge history of Iran, IV, 505–6, 517. For al-Badhdh, the capital and bastion of these sectarians, see El² Suppl. s.v. [Bosworth].


208. Ibid.; but in Khalifah, Ta'rikh, II, 764, Dâwûd b. Mûsâ b. 'Îsâ is named, and in Azdî, 342, Dâwûd b. 'Îsâ b. Mûsâ.
The events taking place during this year included the people of Baghdad's giving their allegiance to Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī as Caliph and their addressing him by the (regnal) name of al-Mubārak—it is said that they hailed him as Caliph on the first day of Muḥarram (July 20, 817) and declared al-Ma'mūn deposed.\footnote{Ya'qūbī, Ta'rikh, II, 547, gives Ibrāhīm the regnal name of al-Mardī and gives the date of the bay'ah to him as the fifth of Muḥarram, the same as in Mas'ūdī, al-Tanbih wa-al-īshrāf, 349–50, tr. Carra de Vaux, Le livre de l'avertissement, 449.}

When Friday came round, Ibrāhīm ascended the pulpit, and the first person to do homage to him was the Hāshimite ʿUbaydallah b. al-'Abbas b. Muḥammad,\footnote{Grandson of Abū 'Abdallāh Muḥammad and nephew of al-Saffāḥ and al-Manṣūr.} then Mansūr b. al-Mahdī, then the rest of the Hāshimites and then the commanders. The person who organized the ceremony of taking the oath of allegiance was al-Muṭṭalib b. 'Abdallāh b. Mālik, and the ones who busied themselves and took charge of the whole affair were al-Sindī, the šāhib al-muṣallā Šāliḥ, Minjab, Nuṣayr the slave retainer (al-waṣīf) and the rest of the clients and freedmen; these
persons were indeed the leaders and foremost persons, (and did this) because of their anger against al-Ma‘mūn when he wished to transfer the caliphate from the descendants of al-‘Abbās to those of ‘Āli and because he had abandoned the black garments of his forefathers in favor of green ones. When he had finished with the ceremony of pledging allegiance, he promised the army that he would give them pay allotments for six (months), but in fact he kept this back from them. When they realized this, they rose up in a clamor against him, so he gave each man two hundred dirhams. He also wrote to the Sawād on behalf of certain amongst them for the equivalent of the amount of pay owing to them in the form of wheat and barley. Hence they sallied forth to take possession of that, and everything in their path they carried off as plunder. In this way, they appropriated two shares in one operation, that of the local people and that of the ruling authority. With the aid of the Baghdad troops, Ibrāhīm secured power over the people of Kūfah and the whole of the Sawād. He established his encampment at Madā‘in, and appointed as governor of the East Side of Baghdad al-‘Abbās b. Mūsā al-Hādi and over the West Side Ishaq b. Mūsā al-Hādi.211 Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī recited the following:

O house of Fihr,212 have you not realized that
   I have devoted myself to your defence in the perilous places?

In this year, Mahdi b. ‘Alwān al-Ḥarūrī proclaimed a Khārijīte rising (ḥakkama).213 He raised the standard of rebellion at Buzurjshābūr and secured control of the sub-districts there and of the Nahr Būq and Rādhanayn.214 Some people have asserted

211. Azdī, 342, 343; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 341.
212. I.e., Quraysh, Fihr usually being identified with the eponymous ancestor Quraysh.
213. The Khārijītes were often called the Muḥakkimah because of their original call to ‘Ali to submit to the judgment (taḥkīm) of God, and Ḥārūriyyah because their original secession from ‘Ali’s army took them to Ḥarūrā’.
214. Buzurjshābūr was a district to the east of the Tigris between Baghdad and Ḥarbā‘; the Būq Canal connected Baghdad and Nahrawān; and the “two Rādḥāns,” Upper and Lower, comprised the district north of Madā‘in to Nahrawān; see Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, I, 410, 510, III, 12–13, V, 318; Le Strange, Lands, 31, 35.
that Mahdi's rebellion took place in the year 203, in the month of Shawwal (April 819). Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī sent against him Abū Ishāq b. al-Rashīd (the future Caliph al-Mu'tasim), together with a group of commanders, including Abū al-Batṭ and Sa'id b. al-Sājūr. In addition Abū Ishāq had with him some Turkish military slaves (ghilmān). It is mentioned from Shubayl, the şāhib al-s.l.bah,215 that he accompanied Abū Ishāq when he was himself a military slave, and they encountered the Khārijites (al-Shurat)216 in battle. One of the tribesmen aimed a lance-thrust at Abū Ishāq, but one of his Turkish military slaves interposed himself to protect Abu Ishāq, saying to the tribesman, "ashinās mā-rā [recognise me]!"217 Abū Ishāq gave him the name of Ashinās on that very day; he was Abū Ja'far Ashinās. Mahdi was defeated and driven back to Ḥawlāyā.218

A certain person (of those relating historical traditions) has said that Ibrāhīm sent only al-Muṭṭalib against Mahdi b. 'Al-wān al-Dihqān al-Ḥarūrī. He marched against Mahdī, and when he drew near to the latter, he captured one of the non-activist Khārijītes (qa'ad al-Ḥarūriyyah) called Aqḍhā and killed him. The tribesmen banded together and attacked him, and routed him, compelling him to retreat into Baghdad.

In this year, the brother of Abū al-Sarāyā219 rose in rebellion at Kūfah and adopted the wearing of white garments.220 A group

---

215. Unexplained. Possibly a reference to an estate owned by this man, although Yāqūt, Mu’jam, III, 235, knows only vaguely of a Salabah mentioned in the historical traditions; perhaps more probably, given the military context of the passage, Shubayl was the official charged with the division of plunder, salab(ah), after a battle.

216. Again, the Khārijītes were also known as "sellers" because they allegedly bartered (sharaw) their present life for a martyr's heavenly crown, echoing Qur'ān, II, 203.


218. Ya'qūbī, Tu'rikh, II, 548; Azdī, 343, 345, 350–2; 'Uyun, 354; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 342. Ḥawlāyā was a village in the district of Nahrawān; see Yāqūt, Mu’jam, II, 332.

219. Named as Abū 'Abdallāh, below, 72.

220. I.e., an anti-'Abbāsid, in this case almost certainly pro-'Alid, symbolic gesture; the wearing of green garments was an innovation of al-Ma'mūn, symbol of his hope of reconciling the two wings of Islam; see Sourdel, "La politique religieuse du calife 'abbāside al-Ma'mūn," 35. In Jahshiyārī, Kitāb
of adherents gathered round him. Ghassān b. Abī al-Faraj then confronted him in battle in Rajab (January–February 818), killed him and sent his head to Ibrāhim b. al-Mahdī.\textsuperscript{221}

\textit{Abū al-Sarāyā’s Brother Adopts White Garments (tabyīd) and Appears at Kūfah}

It is mentioned that al-Ma‘mūn’s message ordering him to adopt green clothing and to take the oath of allegiance to ‘Ali b. Mūsā b. Ja‘far b. Muḥammad as heir to the throne after his own death reached al-Ḥasan b. Sahl when he was at Mubārak in his military encampment. The message further ordered him to move forward against Baghdad and besiege the people in it. Al-Ḥasan therefore struck camp and arrived at Simmar.\textsuperscript{222} He wrote to Ḥumayd b. ‘Abd al-Ḥamid instructing him to move forward against Baghdad in order to besiege the people there from another side, and ordering him to adopt green clothing; this Ḥumayd duly did. Sa‘īd b. al-Sājūr, Abū al-Baṭṭ, Ghassān b. Abī al-Faraj, Muḥammad b. Ibrāhim al-Ifrīqī and a number of Ḥumayd’s other commanders had written to Ibrāhim b. al-Mahdī undertaking to seize Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah on his behalf. There happened to have arisen a considerable distance between them and Ḥumayd himself, and at the same time, they were in correspondence with al-Ḥasan b. Sahl, telling him that Ḥumayd was in communication with Ibrāhim, whilst Ḥumayd was writing similar information about them. Al-Ḥasan himself was writing to Ḥumayd summoning the latter to him; but Ḥumayd did not comply with this, fearing that if he set off to-

\textsuperscript{221} Azdi, 343.

\textsuperscript{222} A village in the district of Kaskar, i.e., the region to the north and east of Wāsit, according to Yāqūt, \textit{Mu‘jam}, III, 246.
wards al-Hasan, the others would swoop down on his army. They, for their part, were writing to al-Hasan to the effect that there was nothing preventing Humayd from going to al-Hasan except the fact that he was showing opposition to him and that he had purchased landed properties in the districts bounded by Šarāt, Sūrā and the Sawād.224

When al-Hasan wrote messages to Humayd insisting that he should come, Humayd set out to go to him on Thursday, the fifth of Rabi‘ II225 (October 21, 817). At that point, Sa‘īd and his confederates wrote to Ibrāhīm passing on this information and asking him to dispatch to them ‘Isā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid, so that they could transfer to his control Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah and Humayd’s army. Ibrāhīm had left Baghdad on the Tuesday and had encamped at Kalwādhā en route for Madā‘īn. When the message reached him, he sent ‘Isā to them. When the troops in Humayd’s army camp heard about ‘Isā’s advance and his encamping at Qaryat al-A‘rāb,226 only one farsakh (six km) from Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah, they prepared for flight; this was on the night of (Monday—) Tuesday. The troops of Sa‘īd, Abū al-Baṭṭ and al-Faḍl b. Muḥammad b. al-Ṣabbāḥ al-Kindi al-Kūfī227 fell upon Humayd’s encampment and plundered everything in it. It is reported that they seized a hundred bags of wealth and goods belonging to Humayd. One of Humayd’s sons and Mu‘ādh b. ‘Abdallāh fled; some of the fleeing troops proceeded in the direction of Kūfah and some in that of Nil. Regarding Humayd’s son, he fled with his father’s slavegirls to Kūfah, where he hired mules, and then set off along the highway till he caught up with his father at al-Hasan’s camp. Meanwhile ‘Isā entered Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah; Sa‘īd and his confederates handed it over to him, and ‘Isā took formal possession of it

---

223. Presumably the district of the Sūrā channel of the Euphrates (the main one at the present day), or the channel itself, which flowed by Hillah; see ibid., V, 321; Le Strange, Lands, 26, 70–2.
224. Presumably meant here in the restricted sense of the Sawād, i.e., the surrounding agricultural region, of Kūfah.
225. Actually a Wednesday.
226. “The village of the tribesmen, Bedouins.”
227. Descendant of the great Kūfān family of al-Ash‘ath b. Qays al-Kindi; shortly after this he was appointed governor of the city by Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdi’s supporters (below, 74); see Crone, 111.
from them. This was on Tuesday, the tenth of Rabi' II\textsuperscript{228} (October 26, 817).

(This news) reached al-Hasan b. Sahl when Ḥumayd was with him, and the latter said to al-Hasan, "Didn't I tell you that this would happen? But you let yourself be deceived!" He then left al-Hasan and set off and came to Kūfah, where he collected some money and possessions of his which were deposited there. He also appointed as governor of Kūfah the 'Alid al-'Abbās b. Mūsā b. Ja'far\textsuperscript{229} and ordered him to wear green garments and to put in the sermon al-Ma'mūn's name and then after it that of his own brother 'Alī b. Mūsā. He provided him with a subvention of a hundred thousand dirhams and told him, "Fight on your brother's behalf, for the people of Kūfah will respond to your call for this cause and I shall, moreover, be at your side." After nightfall, Ḥumayd set out from Kūfah and left him there. Meanwhile, when al-Hasan had received the news, he had sent Ḥakim al-Hārithi to Nil. When all this came to 'Īsā's notice—he being at Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah—he and his forces got ready and then set out for Nil. During the night of Saturday (Friday-Saturday), the fourteenth of Rabi' II\textsuperscript{230} (October 29-30, 817), a red glow appeared in the sky and then faded, leaving two red pillars in the sky which lasted till the end of the night.

On the Saturday morning, 'Īsā and his troops marched out of Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah to Nil. Ḥakim fell on them in battle. 'Īsā and Sa'īd actually arrived when the battle was already on. Ḥakim was defeated, and the victors entered Nil. While there, they received the news about the 'Alid al-'Abbās b. Mūsā b. Ja'far, how he had summoned the people of Kūfah to acknowledge al-Ma'mūn and then his own brother 'Alī b. Mūsā and how a large number of the citizens of Kūfah had joined him. Another group of the people had, however, told him, "If you are going to place al-Ma'mūn's name in the sermon, and only after him your brother's name, then your appeal is of no concern to us; but if you will invoke your brother's name [first], or

\textsuperscript{228} Actually a Wednesday.
\textsuperscript{229} I.e., the brother of the Imam 'Alī al-Ridā and Zayd al-Nār.
\textsuperscript{230} Actually a Friday.
some other member of the 'Alid family or yourself, then we will join you.” Al-'Abbās replied, “I am invoking al-Ma'mūn's name [first], and after his name, my brother's.” Accordingly, the extremist faction (al-Ghāliyah) of the Rāfidah231 and most of the Shi‘ah232 refused to support him. Al-'Abbās was also proclaiming publicly that Ḥumayd was going to come back with aid and military support for him and that al-Ḥasan was sending a detachment of his own troops as reinforcements; but not a single person of these ever reached him.

Sa‘īd and Abū al-Baṭṭ set out from Nil against Kūfah. When they reached Dayr al-A‘war,233 they took a road which brought them to Harthamah’s encampment at Qaryat Shāhī. When Sa‘īd’s forces had gathered round him, they set out on Monday, the second of Jumādā I [November 16, 817]. When they reached the vicinity of Qanṭarah234 there marched out to engage them in battle the 'Alid ‘Ali b. Muḥammad b. Ja‘far, the son of the man who had been hailed as Caliph at Mecca, and Abū ‘Abdallāh, the brother of Abū al-Sarāyā, accompanied by a numerous host which his cousin the governor of Kūfah, al-'Abbās b. Mūsā b. Ja‘far, had sent with ‘Ali b. Muḥammad. They fought with their opponents for a period of time and then ‘Ali and his followers fled in defeat back into Kūfah.

Sa‘īd and his accompanying forces advanced until they made camp at Ḥirah.235 On the Tuesday morning, they set out and gave battle to ‘Ali’s forces in the neighborhood of ‘Īsā b. Mūsā’s house.236 The members of the ‘Abbāsid family and their clients

---

231. Originally, those who rejected (rafada) the first three Caliphs. See Nöldeke, “Zur Ausbreitung des Schiitismus,” Isl., XIII [1923], 73–4; Watt, index, and esp. 158–60, where the term’s different denotations are given; El2 s.v. Ghulāt [M.G.S. Hodgson].

232. I.e., the more moderate Shi‘is, contrasted to the extremists.

233. According to Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, II, 499, a monastery in the environs of Kūfah, but not apparently mentioned in Shābushūtī’s Kitāb al-Diyārāt.

234. Often rendered as Qanṭarāt al-Kūfah or al-Qanātir, bridge point and settlement on the Badāt Canal leading off the Euphrates to the north of Kūfah; see Le Strange, Lands, 74.

235. The ancient capital of the pre-Islamic Lakhmid kings, by now eclipsed by Kūfah, and lying just to the south of that city; see Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, II, 328–31; Le Strange, Lands, 75–6; El2 s.v. [A.F.L. Beeston—I. Shahid].

236. I.e., that of the ‘Abbāsid prince ‘Īsā b. Mūsā b. Muḥammad, nephew of al-Saffāh and al-Maḥsūr and one-time heir apparent to the throne, for fifteen
and freedmen acceded to Sa‘īd and came out from Kūfah [to join him]. A battle then took place lasting all through the day till nightfall. Sa‘īd’s troops’ battle-cry was, ‘For Ibrāhīm and Mansūr, and no obedience to al-Ma‘mūn;’ they wore black, whereas al-‘Abbās and his forces drawn from the people of Kūfah wore green. When Wednesday came, they fought again in the same spot, and every detachment of the troops was involved; whenever they secured control of something, they set fire to it. When the leading men of Kūfah perceived this, they went to Sa‘īd and his confederates and asked for a guarantee of safety for al-‘Abbās b. Mūsā b. Ja‘far and his companions on condition that they evacuate Kūfah. Sa‘īd and his confederates agreed to this. The Kūfan leaders then went back to al-‘Abbās and informed him of this arrangement. They said, ‘The greater part of your forces is composed of the rabble [ghawghā’]. You must have seen what the local citizens have had to suffer—burning, plundering and slaughter—so depart from our midst, for we no longer want to be burdened with you.” Al-‘Abbās accepted their instructions, fearing that they were going to hand him over. He moved out of the house which he had been occupying by the open space of al-Kunāsah; his followers, however, remained unaware of this arrangement. When Sa‘īd and his forces fell back on Hīrah, al-‘Abbās b. Mūsā’s followers suddenly attacked those of Sa‘īd’s forces and the clients and freedmen of the ‘Abbāsid ‘Īsā b. Mūsā who had remained behind in Kūfah. Al-‘Abbās’s followers put them to flight, driving them back to the protective rampart and ditch [khandaq] (round the city) and plundering the suburb [rabād] of ‘Īsā b. Mūsā; then

---

years governor of Kūfah, died in 167 (783/4); see Lassner, The shaping of ‘Abbāsid rule, index; Kennedy, 91–3; El² s.v. (Sourdel).

237. An indication that, as in Mecca (see above, 33), the ‘Alids’ appeal was especially to the lower classes and mob; cf. Kennedy, 160.

238. Originally, as its name implies, a rubbish dump on the west side of the city, then an open space used for unloading caravans, for fairs, etc., but clearly by now containing buildings; see Le Strange, Lands, 75; El² s.v. al-Kūfa [H. Djait].

239. Presumably the rampart and ditch constructed in al-Mansūr’s time, but not enclosing, in Djait’s surmise, the Kunāsah and some of the suburbs; see ibid.
they set fire to the houses and killed everyone they could get hold of.

The members of the 'Abbāsid family and their clients and freedmen sent to Saʿīd informing him of these events and telling him that al-ʿAbbās had failed to keep his side of the guarantee of security which he had sought. Saʿīd and Abū al-Baṭṭ rode forth with their troops and reached Kūfah by the early part of the night. Every person who had been involved in the plundering whom they caught, they killed, and every possession belonging to al-ʿAbbās’s partisans which they got hold of, they burned. Finally, they came to the open space of al-Kunāsah, and remained there for the greater part of the night, until the leading men of Kūfah came to them and informed them that the breaches of the guarantee had been the responsibility of the rabble and that al-ʿAbbās himself was blameless here; then they returned (to their homes). When morning came—this being Thursday, the fifth of Jumādā I (November 19, 817)—Saʿīd and Abū al-Baṭṭ entered Kūfah (proper).²⁰ A herald of theirs proclaimed that there was a guarantee of safety for everyone (literally, “for the white and the black”); the only measures which they took affecting people were beneficial ones. They appointed as governor of Kūfah a local citizen, al-Ṭaʿl b. Muḥammad b. al-Ṣabbāḥ al-Kindi.

At this point, Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī wrote instructing them to move to the neighborhood of Wāsīṭ, and he wrote specifically to Saʿīd instructing him to appoint someone other than al-Kindi as governor of Kūfah because of his bias in favor of his fellow-townsmen. So he appointed over it Ghassān b. Abī Ḥaraj but then removed him after he had killed Abū ʿAbdallāh, Abū al-Sarāyā’s brother. Next, Saʿīd appointed over Kūfah his nephew al-Hawī. The latter remained governor until Ḥumayd b. ʿAbd Ḥamīd marched on Kūfah and al-Hawī had to flee. Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī also ordered ʿĪsā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid to make his way to the neighborhood of Wāsīṭ via the

²⁰ Presumably the madinah, that part of the city enclosed by the rampart and ditch.
Nil Road, and Ibn 'A'ishah al-Hāshimi\textsuperscript{241} and Nu'aym b. Khāzim\textsuperscript{242} to travel together; these last two set out from the region of Jūkhā, as Ibrāhīm had ordered them. This was in Jumādā I (November–December 817). Sa'īd, Abū al-Baṭṭ and al-Ifrīqi caught up with Ibn 'A'ishah and Nu'aym, and they encamped at Siyādah\textsuperscript{243} near Wāsīt. They assembled all the forces in one place, under the leadership of 'Īsā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid. They kept on making cavalry sorties each day as far as the encampment of al-Ḥasan and his troops at Wāsīt; but none of al-Ḥasan’s forces would ever come out and engage them, remaining fortified within the town of Wāsīt. Then al-Ḥasan gave his troops the order to prepare to march out for battle, and they did this on Saturday, the twenty-sixth of Rajab\textsuperscript{244} (February 7, 818). Fierce fighting raged till almost noon, but then 'Īsā and his army were put to flight. They retreated till they came to Tāmāyā and Nil, and al-Ḥasan’s troops seized everything there—weapons, beasts, etc.—in 'Īsā’s camp.\textsuperscript{245}

In this year, Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdi arrested the vigilante leader Sahl b. Salāmah and then jailed and ill-treated him.

\textit{Ibrāhīm Arrests and Imprisons Sahl b. Salāmah}

It is mentioned that Sahl b. Salāmah remained resident in Baghdad, adjuring people to act in accordance with the Book of God and the \textit{sunnah} of His Prophet; he kept on urging people thus until the majority of the population of Baghdad had rallied to him and had taken up their abode around him, with the exception of those who remained within their own houses but who nevertheless agreed with and supported his views.

\textsuperscript{241} The 'Abbāsid prince Ibrāhīm b. Muhammad b. 'Abd al-Wahhāb b. Ibrāhīm al-Imām, great-great-nephew of al-Saffāh, active in support of Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdi and in 210 (825) executed by al-Ma’mūn, see below, 145–6, 147–8.

\textsuperscript{242} Presumably a brother of the Khuzaymah b. Khāzim who was also a supporter of Mansūr b. al-Mahdi, see above, 47–8.

\textsuperscript{243} Or perhaps Ṣayyādah, unidentified, but presumably meaning, “place where traps, snares, etc., are set for game or fish.”

\textsuperscript{244} Actually a Sunday.

Ibrāhīm had intended to attack Sahl before the battle (in which ʿĪsā was defeated at Wāsīṭ), but he had held back. When the battle actually took place, and ʿĪsā’s confederates and the troops with him were beaten, Ibrāhīm turned his attention to Sahl b. Salāmah. He now began to intrigue against Sahl and those supporters of his who had pledged their allegiance to Sahl on the basis of behavior in conformity with the Book and the sunnah and of denying obedience to anyone of God’s creation who was in rebellion against his Creator.245 Every person who had pledged himself to Sahl had constructed by the door of his house a tower of plaster and fired brick, with weapons and copies of the Qur’ān on it. These adherents of his reached as far as the Bāb al-Shām, in addition to his adherents among the people of Karkh and others.

When ʿĪsā got back to Baghdad after his defeat, he, his brothers and his body of retainers proceeded against Sahl b. Salāmah, because he had been denouncing them for the most vicious of their works and activities and had been stigmatizing them as “evildoers” (fussāq);245 he never used any other word in reference to them but this. So they fought with him over a period of several days, the leader in this struggle being ʿĪsā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid. When ʿĪsā came to the streets and alleys which were near Sahl, he gave the people living along these ways a thousand or two thousand dirhams on condition that they would stand aside from the streets and alleys for him (and admit ʿĪsā’s troops). Thereupon they agreed to this, and each man received as his share one or two dirhams or suchlike. On Saturday, the twenty-fourth of Shaʿbān246 (March 7, 818(, they prepared an onslaught from every direction. The inhabitants of

---

246. Lapidus, 376–8, notes that these two slogans had been used by previous revolutionary movements, the first originally by the Khārijites, the second by the ʿAbbāsids themselves in their daʿwah or campaign to achieve power, by adopting these, Sahl was setting himself up as the embodiment of the righteous community, if necessary against the caliphate itself, no longer regarded as the sole mouthpiece for the community or its sole representative.

247. Much theological discussion in early Islam revolved around the salvational status of the fāsiq, the man guilty of grave sins (kabāʾir), the Khārijites held that he was doomed to perpetual hell fire, and both they and the Muʿtazilah taught that a fāsiq imām or caliph should be deposed.

248. Actually a Sunday.
The streets and alleys deserted Sahl, until the attackers penetrated to the mosque of Ţāhir b. al-Husayn and to Sahl's own house, while he himself was in the neighborhood of the mosque.

When they drew near to him, he concealed himself, threw away his arms and mingled with the crowd of onlookers and slipped in amongst the womenfolk. The attackers entered his house, and when they were unable to find him, set agents and informers to watch out for him. During the night, they arrested him in one of the streets near his house and brought him to Ӏshāq b. Mūsā al-Ḥādī, the next in succession after his paternal uncle Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdi, who was in the City of Peace. Ӏshāq questioned him and argued with him; he brought him into the presence of his companions and accused him, "You have incited the people against us, and have impugned the validity of our rule." Sahl replied, "My movement was in the name of the 'Abbasids, and I was only adjuring people to act in accordance with the Book and sunnah; and at this present moment, I summon you to adhere to the program which I have laid down." However, they rejected his justification and then told him, "Go forth to the people and confess to them that the program to which you summoned them is invalid." He was brought out before the people, but told them, "You have been fully cognizant of what I summoned you to—to act in conformity with the Book and the sunnah—and I still summon you to it at this present moment." When he uttered these words to the people, Ӏsā's men slashed his neck and beat him in the face. When they did that to him, he cried out, "The one who has been deceived is the one whom you have deceived, O men of Ḥarbiyyah!" He was seized and taken in to Ӏshāq, who put him in fetters. This was on the Sunday.

During the night of Monday (Sunday—Monday), they took him along to Ibrāhīm at Madā’in. When he came into Ibrāhīm’s presence, Ibrāhīm spoke to him in the same terms as Ishāq had done, but he still returned the same answer as before. They had captured one of Sahl’s adherents called Muḥammad al-Rawwā’ī. Ibrāhīm struck him, pulled out the hairs of his beard, put him in irons and jailed him. When Sahl b. Salāmah was arrested, they jailed him also and gave out the supposed informa-
tion that Sahl had been handed back to ‘Īsā and that the latter had killed him. They only spread this story out of fear that the people would get to know where Sahl was and rescue him. The period between his first public appeal and his arrest and imprisonment was twelve months.²⁴⁹

In this year, al-Maʾmūn set out from Marw intending to go to Iraq.

Al-Maʾmūn’s Departure from Marw

It is mentioned that the ‘Alid ‘Ali b. Mūsā b. Jaʿfar b. Muḥammad told al-Maʾmūn about the conditions of civil tumult and fighting into which the people had been plunged since his brother had been killed; about how al-Faḍl b. Sahl had been concealing reports from him; that his own family and the people in general had condemned him for various things, saying that he was bewitched and mentally deranged; and that, when they had perceived all that, they had pledged their allegiance to his paternal uncle Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdi as Caliph. Al-Maʾmūn replied that, according to what al-Faḍl had informed him, they had not pledged allegiance to Ibrāhīm as Caliph but had merely set him up as amir to rule over and look after their interests. ‘Alī then told al-Maʾmūn that al-Faḍl had misinformed and hoodwinked him, that a state of war existed between Ibrāhīm and al-Ḥasan b. Sahl and that people were condemning al-Maʾmūn for al-Faḍl’s position and influence and that of his brother (al-Ḥasan), and for ‘Alī’s own rôle and al-Maʾmūn’s requirement of homage to him as successor to the throne after al-Maʾmūn. Al-Maʾmūn asked, “Who of my military commanders knows all this?” ‘Alī told him, “Yaḥyā b. Muʿādh²⁵⁰ and ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Imrān and a number of other leading commanders.” The Caliph told ‘Alī to send them into him so that he might interrogate them about ‘Alī’s report. So ‘Alī had them—comprising Yaḥyā b. Muʿādh, ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Imrān, Mūsā, ‘Alī b. Abī

²⁵⁰. Of Khurasanian origin and a supporter of al-Maʾmūn; see Crone, 184. He is not to be confused with the famous ascetic and mystic of a generation later, Yaḥyā b. Muʿādh al-Rāzī, who died in 258 [872].
Saʿīd (the son of al-Faḍl’s sister251) and Khalaf al-Miṣrī—brought into the Caliph’s presence, and al-Maʿmūn asked them about what ʿAḥū had said. At first, they refused to say anything until al-Maʿmūn would give them a guarantee of personal safety from possible reprisals against them by al-Faḍl b. Sahl; the Caliph gave them this promise, wrote out for each one of them a guarantee in his own hand and passed it over to them.

Then they told him about the state of civil conflict into which the people had been plunged, giving a clear and detailed exposition of it, and informing him about the anger against him on the part of his own family, his mawlās (clients and freedmen) and his commanders, on account of so many things. [They pointed out] how al-Faḍl had deluded him in the affair of Harthamah, in that the latter had only come to al-Maʿmūn in order to give sincere advice and to explain clearly to him what was being wrought against his interests and how the caliphate would slip out of his hands and those of his family unless al-Maʿmūn reasserted his personal control over affairs of state; and how, nevertheless, al-Faḍl had secretly suborned someone to kill Harthamah, when the latter had only wished to offer wise counsel. [They further told the Caliph] that Ṭāḥir b. al-Ḥusayn had exerted himself to the utmost in al-Maʿmūn’s service, had made numerous conquests and had secured the caliphate for him, but then when Ṭāḥir had made everything smooth for al-Maʿmūn’s assumption of power, he was suddenly torn away from everything and dispatched to a distant corner of the empire at Raqqah, with a denial of access to his own wealth and possessions until his position had become enfeebled and his own troops rose in revolt against him. If Ṭāḥir had been the Caliph’s representative in Baghdad, he would have exercised the governmental power firmly, and the assaults on al-Ḥasan b. Sahl’s position would not have been ventured against Ṭāḥir. All the different regions of the world had fallen apart, Ṭāḥir b. al-Ḥusayn had been deliberately left in obscurity at Raqqah during these years since the killing of Muḥammad (al-Amin), and his help had never been sought in any of these mili-

---

251. According to Yaʿqūbī, Taʿrīkh, II, 549, the son of al-Faḍl’s maternal aunt.
tary campaigns; indeed, the help of people many times his inferior in worth had been sought. They asked al-Ma’mūn to go to Baghdad, adducing the argument that if the Hashimites, their mawlas, the commanders and the troops could only see his prestige and might, they would become still and quiescent before it and hasten to give him full obedience.²⁵²

When al-Ma’mūn realized fully the truth of these allegations, he gave orders for departure to Baghdad. But when he issued this command, al-Faḍl b. Sahl realized that at least some of the responsibility for this decision stemmed from the commanders’ advice; hence he treated them harshly, even having some of them flogged, jailing some others and having the hairs of the beards of yet others pulled out. ‘Ali b. Mūsā then came to him repeatedly concerning them, and informed him about the guarantee of safety vis-à-vis him which they held; however, he told ‘Ali that he would achieve his own aims anyway, by stealth. Then al-Faḍl set off from Marw, but when he reached Sarakhs,²⁵³ a group of men attacked him when he was in the bath and hacked him to death with their swords. This happened on Friday, the second of Sha’bān, 202²⁵⁴ (February 13, 818). They were apprehended, and the assassins proved to be men from al-Ma’mūn’s retinue, numbering four persons, Gālib al-Mas’ūdi al-Aswad, Qustantīn al-Rūmī, Faraj al-Daylāmī and Muwaffaq al-Ṣaqlābī. Al-Faḍl was sixty years old when they killed him. They fled, and al-Ma’mūn sent people in pursuit of them, offering a reward of ten thousand dinars to whomsoever brought them back. Al-‘Abbās b. al-Haytham b. Buzurjmihr al-Dinawārī brought them back. They asserted to al-Ma’mūn, “You yourself ordered us to kill him!” The Caliph, however, ordered their heads to be cut off.²⁵⁵

²⁵³. A town of northern Khurasan, on the route through the desert from Marw to Tūs; see Yaqūt, Mu’jam, III, 208–9; Le Strange, Lands, 395–6; EI¹ s.v. (J. Ruska).
²⁵⁴. Actually a Saturday. Mas’ūdi, Tanbih, 350, tr. 449, has Monday, the fifth of Sha’bān (actually a Tuesday).
²⁵⁵. Id., Muriḥ, VII, 61 = ed. Pellat, § 2747; Azdī, 343. It was widely believed that the Caliph was behind al-Faḍl’s assassination, now that the era of Sahīlīd ascendancy (marked also by al-Ḥasan’s attack of acute melancholia shortly af-
The Events of the Year 202

It has been said that, when al-Fadl’s killers were captured, al-Ma’mūn interrogated them, and some of them said that ‘Ali b. Abi Sa’īd, the son of al-Fadl’s sister, had secretly suborned them, whilst others denied this. The Caliph ordered them to be executed, and then summoned ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. ‘Imrān, ‘Ali, Mūsā and Khalaf for questioning. They denied having known anything at all about the affair, but he refused to believe them and ordered them to be put to death. He then sent their heads to al-Ḥasan b. Sahl at Wāsīt and informed him what a severe misfortune he had suffered through al-Fadl’s murder and how he had appointed al-Ḥasan to take al-Fadl’s place. The letter containing this information reached al-Ḥasan in the month of Ramaḍān (March–April 818).256

Al-Ḥasan and his troops continued to remain at Wāsīt until the tax collection became due and at least part of the land tax was gathered in. Al-Ma’mūn departed from Sarakhs for Iraq on the day of the breaking of the fast, al-Fītr [on the first of Shawwāl, 202 [April 12, 818]]. Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī was meanwhile at Mada’in, with ‘Īsā, Abū at-Baṭṭ and Sa’īd at Nīl and Ṭarnāyā making repeated military forays [literally: in the evenings and mornings]. Al-Muṭṭalib b. ‘Abdallāh b. Mālik b. ‘Abdallāh had set out from Mada’in. He now claimed to be ill, and started secretly acknowledging al-Ma’mūn as Caliph, on the plea that al-Manṣūr b. al-Mahdī was al-Ma’mūn’s representative, and throwing off allegiance to Ibrāhīm. Manṣūr, Khuzaymah b. Khāzīm and many commanders from the troops of the East Side (of Baghdad) followed his lead here. Al-Muṭṭalib wrote to Ḫumayd and ‘Ali b. Hishām instructing them to move forward and that Ḫumayd should then encamp at the Nahr Ṣarṣār and ‘Ali at Nahrawān.

When Ibrāhīm became fully apprised of this news, he set off from Mada’in to Baghdad and encamped at Zandawār257 on Sat-
urday, the fourteenth of Şafar (203 [August 21, 818]). He sent messages to al-Muţţalib, Mansûr and Khuzaymah, but when his messenger came to them, they made excuses to him. So when İbrâhîm perceived this, he sent 'İsâ b. Muhammad b. Abî Khâlid and his brothers to them. Mansûr and Khuzaymah threw in their hands without a fight, but al-Muţţalib's clients and freedmen and his retainers put up a fight in defence of his house until the number of men against them grew too large. İbrâhîm ordered a herald to proclaim that anyone eager for plunder should make his way to al-Muţţalib's house. By the time of the noon worship, the mob reached the house; they plundered everything they could find and further ransacked the houses of his kinsmen. They searched for al-Muţţalib but were unable to find him. This took place on Tuesday, the sixteenth of Şafar 203 [August 23, 818].

When the news reached Humayd and 'Ali b. Hishâm, Humayd sent a commander who seized Madâ'în, cut the route across the bridge and encamped by it. 'Ali b. Hishâm sent a commander who encamped at Madâ'în and proceeded to the Nahr Diyâlā.259 and then cut off the route there. Humayd's commanders and their troops remained in Madâ'în. İbrâhîm now regretted what he had done in regard to al-Muţţalib, but he was still unable to get his hands on him.260

In this year, al-Ma'mûn married Bûrân, the daughter of al-Hasan b. Sahl.261

In this year, al-Ma'mûn married his daughter Umm Ḥâbîb to 'Ali b. Mûsâ al-Riḍâ and another daughter, Umm al-Fadîl, to Muḥammad b. 'Ali b. Mûsâ.262

258. Actually a Monday.
259. The Diyâlâ Canal ran from the Nahrawân Canal southwards to the Tigris below east Baghdad; see Yâqût, Mu'jam, II, 495; Le Strange, Lands, 59–61; El s.v. [S.H. Longrigg].
261. Azdî, loc. cit.; 'Uyun, 357; Ibn al-Athîr, al-Kâmil, VI, 350. The consummation of the marriage took place in Ramaḍân 210 [December 824-January 825], see below, 153, 158. The reference here is to the Caliph's betrothal to the eight-year-old Bûrân, see Abbott, 225.
262. Mas'udî, Murûj, VII, 61–2 = ed. Pellat, § 2747; Iṣfâhânî, Maqâtîl, 565; Azdî, loc. cit.; 'Uyun, 357; Ibn al-Athîr, al-Kâmil, VI, 350; Donaldson, 167; Abbott, 224–5; Sourdel, "La politique religieuse du calife 'abbâside al-Ma'-
The Events of the Year 202

In this year, Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā b. Ja‘far b. Muhammad led the pilgrimage and invoked his brother in the prayers as heir to the caliphate after al-Ma‘mūn. Al-Ḥasan b. Sahl had written to ʿĪsā b. Yazīd al-Julūdī, who was at Baṣrāh, and the latter came to Mecca with his followers; he participated in the ceremonies of the pilgrimage, and then returned. Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā proceeded to the Yemen, which Ḥamdawayh b. ‘Alī b. ʿĪsā b. Māḥān had seized.263

mūn,” 38, noting this as a sign of al-Ma‘mūn’s veneration for ‘Alī, even after the reversal of these pro-ʿAlid usages after ʿAlī al-Riḍā’s death; Marquet, 127–8, also noting the Caliph’s continued policy of sympathy for the ʿAlids after ʿAlī al-Riḍā’s demise, displayed in several ways.

263. Khalifah, Ta‘rikh, II, 765; Mas‘ūdī, Murūj, IX, 69–70 = ed. Pellat, § 3649; Azdī, 350; Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, loc. cit.; Geddes, 103–4; Marquet, 111.
It is mentioned that one of the events taking place during this year was the death of ‘Ali b. Mūsā b. Ja‘far.

**The Cause of the Death of ‘Alī b. Mūsā b. Ja‘far**

It is mentioned that al-Ma‘mūn set out from Sarakhs until he arrived at Tūs. When he came to it, he halted at his father’s tomb there for a few days. ‘Ali b. Mūsā then ate an inordinate quantity of grapes and suddenly died, this being at the end of Safar (early September 818). Al-Ma‘mūn gave orders, and he was buried at the side of al-Rashid’s grave. In the month of Safar (early September 818), al-Ma‘mūn set out from Sarakhs until he arrived at Tūs. When he came to it, he halted at his father’s tomb there for a few days. ‘Ali b. Mūsā then ate an inordinate quantity of grapes and suddenly died, this being at the end of Safar (early September 818). Al-Ma‘mūn gave orders, and he was buried at the side of al-Rashid’s grave. In the month of

264. Khalifah, Ta’rīkh, II, 766; Ya‘qūbī, Ta’rīkh, II, 551, stating that he died at the village of Nūqān and giving a report that ‘Ali b. Hishām killed him with a poisoned pomegranate (for Ya‘qūbī’s general attitude here, see Marquet, 127); Mas‘ūdī, Murūj, VII, 61 = ed. Pellat, § 2747; id., Tanbih, 350, tr. 449, with the date of death given as 1 Safar; Iṣṭahārī, Maqātil, 565–7, 571–2; Azdī, 352; Donaldson, 169, 171–2; Abbott, 126; Kennedy, 161. However, G.C. Miles, The numismatic history of Rayy, 105–8, regards this date of Safar 203 for ‘Ali’s death as too early, on numismatic grounds.
The Events of the Year 203

Rabi’ I (September–October 818) al-Ma’mūn wrote to al-Ḥasan b. Sahl informing him that ‘Alī b. Mūsā b. Ja’far had died and communicating to him how his death had overwhelmed him with grief and feelings of loss. He also wrote to the members of the ‘Abbasid family, the clients and freedmen, and the people of Baghdad, announcing to them ‘Alī b. Mūsā’s death, stressing that it was only his (al-Ma’mūn’s) appointment of ‘Alī as his successor to the throne of which they had disapproved, and asking them to resume now their obedience to him, but they wrote back a reply to him and to al-Ḥasan couched in the toughest terms by which anyone could ever be addressed.265

The person who led the prayers over ‘Alī b. Mūsā was al-Ma’mūn himself.

In this year, al-Ma’mūn travelled from Ṭūs en route for Baghdad. When he reached Rayy, he lowered its tax assessment by two million dirhams.266

In this year, al-Ḥasan’s army was overcome by an attack of melancholia and depression (al-sawdā’). The cause of this was said to be that he suffered a severe illness, which subsequently brought about a mental disturbance, to the point that he had to be put in fetters of restraint and locked up in a house. Al-Ḥasan’s commanders wrote to al-Ma’mūn about this, and a reply to their letter came back appointing Dīnār b. ‘Abdallāh as supreme commander of al-Ḥasan’s army and informing them that the Caliph himself was on his way, close behind the letter.267

In this year, Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī had ‘Īsā b. Muḥammad b. Abi Khālid beaten and imprisoned.

265. Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 351. The text of this letter is not extant, but what purports to be al-Ma’mūn’s answer is reproduced by the much later Shi’ī author Majlīsī, apparently going back to the historian Miskawayh; see Madelung, “New documents concerning al-Ma’mūn, al-Faḍl b. Sahl and ‘Alī al-Riḍā,” 339–45.

266. Again, Miles, 105, regards this date as too early and would place this event in the year 204 (819/20).

‘Īsā b. Muḥammad is Beaten and Imprisoned

It is mentioned that ‘Īsā b. Muḥammad b. Abi Khālid had been in constant correspondence with Ḥumayd and al-Ḥasan, the envoy between them being Muḥammad al-Maʿbādi al-Ḥāshimi. At the same time, ‘Īsā was ostensibly displaying his obedience and giving his counsel to Ibrāhīm, but was never showing any fight to Ḥumayd nor opposing the latter's actions in any way. Whenever Ibrāhīm instructed him, "Get ready to go out and engage Ḥumayd!" he would make excuses to him that the army was clamoring for its pay allocations, or, on another occasion, he would say, "[Let us wait] till the tax yields are gathered in." He kept on in this vein until finally, when he became fully assured about what he wanted from the negotiations between himself and al-Ḥasan and Ḥumayd, he deserted Ibrāhīm's side, with the understanding that he would hand Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī over to them on Friday, the twenty-ninth of Shawwāl (April 29, 819). Information about this reached Ibrāhīm. On the Thursday, ‘Īsā proceeded to the Bab al-Jisr and proclaimed to the people, "I have come to a peace agreement with Ḥumayd; I have solemnly pledged to him that I shall not trespass upon his administrative charge and he has guaranteed to me that he will not trespass on mine." He then ordered a defensive trench and rampart (khanḍaq) to be dug at the Bab al-Jisr and the Bab al-Shām. These words of his reached Ibrāhīm, as did news of what he had been doing. ‘Īsā had previously asked Ibrāhīm if he might lead the Friday worship in the City (of Peace), and Ibrāhīm had assented. Now when ‘Īsā uttered these pronouncements, and news of them was duly reported to Ibrāhīm, together with the

268. I.e., of the branch of the 'Abbāsid family descended from Maʿbād b. al-ʿAbbās; they owned property in Karkh, after which the Maʿbādi bridge over the ‘Īsā Canal was named; see Le Strange, Baghdad, 75; Lassner, Topography, 75.

269. Probably the gate leading to the main or upper bridge (jisr) constructed by al-Mansūr to connect the district of the Khuld Palace with Ruṣāfāh on the east bank, but the sources are not entirely explicit over the location; see Le Strange, Baghdad, 178, 198; Lassner, Topography, 151, 281. At all events, the defensive trench and rampart mentioned below would be along the northern perimeter of the Round City.
fact that 'Īsā was planning to seize him, Ibrāhim was on his guard.

It is mentioned that Hārūn, 'Īsā's brother, told Ibrāhim what 'Īsā was planning to do to him. Hence when Hārūn passed this information on, Ibrāhim sent to 'Īsā ordering him to come to him so that he might harangue and examine him about certain aspects of his intentions, but 'Īsā adduced various reasons for not coming. Ibrāhim kept on, repeatedly dispatching messengers to 'Īsā, until finally he went personally to 'Īsā's palace in Ṣuṣāfah. When he went in, all the other people were excluded, and Ibrāhim and 'Īsā talked in private. Ibrāhim started to reproach 'Īsā, and 'Īsā began to excuse himself from such reproof and to give the lie to some of the accusations which Ibrāhim was making. When Ibrāhim had forced 'Īsā to admit to various things, he gave orders and 'Īsā was beaten. He then imprisoned him, and arrested a number of his commanders and jailed them; he sent (men) to 'Īsā's house and arrested the slave mother of his children and several of his young children and jailed them too. This took place in the night of Thursday (Wednesday—Thursday, the twenty-seventh—twenty-eighth of Shawwāl (April 28–29, 819). Ibrāhim searched for one of 'Īsā's lieutenants called al-`Abbas, but the latter concealed himself.

When the news of 'Īsā's imprisonment reached his family and his retainers, groups of them went along to each other, and members of his family and his brothers incited the people against Ibrāhim. They gathered together under the leadership of (al-) `Abbas, 'Īsā's lieutenant, and attacked Ibrāhim's financial official at the bridge and drove him out; he crossed over to Ibrāhim and told him the news, and Ibrāhim ordered the bridge to be cut. They expelled every single one of Ibrāhim's financial officials in Karkh and elsewhere. Evildoers and mobsters appeared, and took over the manning of the strong points (al-masālih). (Al-)`Abbās wrote to Ḥumayd asking him to advance
towards them so that they might hand over Baghdad to him.\(^{271}\)

When Friday came, the Friday worship in the mosque of the City (of Peace) comprised only four cycles of inclinations (\(raka'at\)); the muezzin led the worship, but there was no sermon.

In this year, the people of Baghdad threw off allegiance to Ibrāhim b. al-Mahdi and mentioned al-Ma'mūn's name as Caliph in the prayers.

\textit{The People of Baghdad Throw off Allegiance to Ibrāhim}

We have just mentioned above the story of Ibrāhim and ʻĪsā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid's relations, Ibrāhim's imprisoning of ʻĪsā, the banding together of ʻĪsā's lieutenant (al-) ʻAbbās and ʻĪsā's brothers against Ibrāhim and their message to Ḥumayd inviting him to come to them so that they might hand over Baghdad to him. It is further mentioned that this message of theirs, containing the stipulation that Ḥumayd should give each man of the Baghdad troops fifty dirhams, reached Ḥumayd, and he agreed to their terms. He moved forward till he encamped at the Nahr Ṣarṣar on the road to Kūfah on the Sunday, and (al-) ʻAbbās and the commanders of the Baghdad troops went out to him. They met him on the Monday morning, and he gave them promises and hopes of reward, which they accepted. He promised them (specifically) that he would hand out the pay allotments to them on the following Saturday at Yāsiriyah,\(^{272}\) on condition that they would perform the Friday worship and would place al-Ma'mūn's name in the bidding prayer and renounce allegiance to Ibrāhim; to this they agreed.

When the news reached Ibrāhim, he released ʻĪsā and his brothers from jail and asked him to return home and take charge, on his behalf, of that side (of Baghdad); but ʻĪsā refused to undertake this for him. When Friday came, (al-) ʻAbbās sent


\(272\). A suburb of western Baghdad lying on the ʻĪsā Canal towards Muḥawwal; see Yāqūt, \textit{Mu'jam}, V, 425; Le Strange, \textit{Baghdad}, 151–2; Lassner, \textit{Topography}, 75, 100, 259.
to the legal scholar (faqīh) Muhammad b. Abī Rajā,\textsuperscript{273} and the latter led the people in the Friday worship and made the prayers in al-Ma'ūmūn’s name. On the Saturday, Ḥumayd went to Yāsiriyyah, reviewed the army of the Baghdad troops and paid out to them the fifty dirhams which he had promised. They asked him, however, to reduce this sum by ten dirhams each and thereby pay forty dirhams each instead, because of their feeling of ill-omen stemming from the episode of Ḥ.～hām’s offering them fifty dirhams and then tricking them by not paying out the allotments. Ḥumayd answered them, “No, I won’t; on the contrary, I shall increase your pay and give you each sixty dirhams.”

When Ibrahim heard the news, he summoned ʿĪsā and asked him to engage Ḥumayd in fighting; he agreed to do this, so Ibrahim let him go completely free, having however taken from him guarantors of his good faith. ʿĪsā then addressed the troops and promised them the same as Ḥumayd had given, but they refused to accept this from him. On the Monday, ʿĪsā, his brothers and the commanders of the troops on the East Side crossed over to them and offered the troops on the West Side an amount in excess of what Ḥumayd had given; but they greeted ʿĪsā and his companions with obloquy and expostulated, “We don’t want Ibrahim!” So ʿĪsā and his companions went forward and entered the City (of Peace); they locked the gates and went up on the walls, and fought the troops for a while. When, however, the numbers opposing them became too great, they retreated till they reached the Bāb Khurāsān, and then they took to boats.\textsuperscript{274} ʿĪsā himself went back as if he intended to throw himself into the fight against them once more, but devised a stratagem so that he placed himself into his opponents’ hands as if he had been taken prisoner; one of his commanders then took him to his house, whilst the rest of the troops went back to Ibrahim and told him what had happened. The news plunged Ibrahim into deep grief.

Al-Muṭṭalib b. ʿAbdallāh Mālik had concealed himself from Ibrahim, so when Humayd drew near, he tried to cross over to

\textsuperscript{273} Cf. ibid., 69, 255; this scholar is thus identified.

\textsuperscript{274} I.e., on the Tigris.
him. But the ferry man\textsuperscript{275} arrested him and took him along to Ibrāhīm, who imprisoned al-Muṭṭalib in his house for three or four days and then freed him on the night of Monday, the first of Dhū al-Hijjah (Sunday–Monday, the twenty-ninth of Dhū al-Qa'\textsuperscript{d}ah—the first of Dhū al-Hijjah, 203[May 30, 819]).\textsuperscript{276}

In this year, Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī concealed himself and disappeared from view after the period of warfare between him and Ḫumayd b. 'Abd al-Ḥamīd and after he had released Sahl b. Salāmah from prison.\textsuperscript{277}

\textit{Ibrāhīm Goes into Hiding}

It is mentioned that the people used to mention that Sahl b. Salāmah had been killed, when he was (in fact) held in captivity by Ibrāhīm. When Ḫumayd marched on Baghdad and entered it, Ibrāhīm brought Sahl forth, and the latter used to offer up prayers in the mosque of Ruṣāfah as formerly, and then when it was night, Ibrāhīm committed Sahl back to his imprisonment. He remained subject to this procedure for several days. Sahl's partisans came to him with the intention of joining up with him (banding together to release him); but he told them, "Stay in your houses, for I shall obtain something advantageous from this fellow [\textit{arzī hādhā}]," meaning Ibrāhīm. On the night of Monday (Sunday–Monday), the first of Dhū al-Hijjah (May 30, 819), Ibrāhīm set him free, and Sahl went off and hid himself. When Ibrāhīm's retainers and commanders saw that Ḫumayd had encamped at the mills of 'Abdallāh b. Mālik,\textsuperscript{278} the greater part of them transferred their allegiance to Ḫumayd, and seized Madā'in on his behalf. When Ibrāhīm real-

\textsuperscript{275} Reading, with the \textit{Addenda et emendenda}, p. DCCLXVIII, \textit{al-mu'abbir} "ferry man, boatman" (see \textit{Glossarium}, p. CCCL); for the text's dubious \textit{al-m.'}b.d, which might, nevertheless, refer to the Ma'\textit{bā}dī bridge, see above, 86 and n. 268.


\textsuperscript{277} Ya'qūbī, \textit{Ta'rikh}, II, 551; Mas'ūdī, \textit{Murij}, VII, 62 = ed. Pellat, § 2748; Barbier de Meynard, 250 ff.

\textsuperscript{278} 'Abdallāh b. Mālik's property lay on the eastern bank of the Tigris near Qarn al-Ṣārāt, where the Ṣārāt Canal joined the river near the new bridge, see Lassner, \textit{Topography}, 70, 255.
ized this, he sent all the forces which he had with him forth to fight. The two sides met in battle at the bridge over the Nahr Diyâla and fought together. Ḫumayd defeated Ibrâhim's forces. They cut the bridge, but Ḫumayd's forces pursued them right into the houses of Baghdad. This was on Thursday, the thirtieth of Dhū al-Qa'dah,279 [203 [May 29, 819]].

When it was the day of the Festival of the Sacrifice (‘Īd al-‘Adhā) [the tenth of Dhū al-Ḥijjah, 803 [June 8, 819]], Ibrâhim ordered the judge to lead the people in the worship at 'Īsābâdh;280 he did this, and then the people returned home. Al-Fadl b. al-Rabi' was in hiding, but then went over to Ḫumayd. ‘Alî b. Rayṭah281 likewise transferred to Ḫumayd's encampment, and the Hāshimites and the commanders began one-by-one to attach themselves to Ḫumayd's side. When Ibrâhim perceived this, he was filled with self-reproach and thrown into misery. Al-Muttalib had been in correspondence with Ḫumayd, undertaking to deliver to him control of the East Side of the city, while Sa'id b. al-Sājūr, Abū al-Baṭṭ and 'Abdawayh, in company with a host of other commanders, were in correspondence with ‘Alî b. Hishām, undertaking to capture Ibrâhim for him. When Ibrâhim got to know about their plans and that all his retainers were plotting against him, he realized that they had surrounded him, and he set about outwitting them. When nightfall came, he went into hiding on the night of Wednesday, the sixteenth of Dhu al-Ḥijjah, 203 [the night of Tuesday–Wednesday,282 June 13–14, 819].283

Al-Muttalib sent a message to Ḫumayd informing him that he and his followers had surrounded Ibrâhim's house, and if Ḫumayd was seeking Ibrâhim, he was to come to him. Also,
Ibn al-Sājr and his companions sent a message to ‘Ali b. Hishām. Ḥumayd, who was staying at the mills of ‘Abdallāh (b. Mālik), rode off immediately, and went to the Bāb al-Jisr. ‘Ali b. Hishām proceeded till he halted at the Nahr Bin and then advanced to the Kawthar mosque. Ibn al-Sājr and his companions came out to meet him, and al-Muṭṭalib came to Ḥumayd and met him at the Bāb al-Jisr. Ḥumayd showed them great favor, gave them promises of future beneficence and told them that he was going to inform al-Ma‘mūn about what they had done. They came to Ibrāhīm’s house and began a search for him there, but without success; Ibrāhīm remained in concealment till al-Ma‘mūn arrived and after that, until events turned out for him as they did.

Sahl b. Salāmah had returned from his place of concealment to his own house. He now showed himself openly. Ḥumayd sent for him, received him with favor and treated him as an intimate. He had Sahl mounted on a mule and sent him back to his family. Sahl remained there till al-Ma‘mūn entered Baghdad; then he came to the Caliph, who rewarded him with favors and presents and ordered him to remain quietly in his house.

In this year, there was an eclipse of the sun on Sunday, the twenty-eighth of Dhu al-Hijjah, [203|June 26, 819], to the extent that the sun’s light faded away and over two-thirds of its orb disappeared. The eclipse began when the sun was getting high and continued till it was nearly noon; then it cleared away.

The total length of Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdi’s tenure of power was one year, eleven months and twelve days. ‘Ali b. Hishām secured control of the East Side of Baghdad, and Ḥumayd b. ‘Abd al-Ḥamīd controlled the West Side.

284. Presumably on the property of Kawthar b. al-Yamān in Karkh; see Las-sner, Topography, 258, n. 58.
286. Ibid., VI, 356.
ceed as far as Hamadhan by the end of Dhū al-Ḥijjah (203/late June 819).
In this year, Sulaymān b. ʿAbdallāh b. Sulaymān b. ʿAlī led the pilgrimage.\textsuperscript{288}

\textsuperscript{288} Khalīfah, Taʾrikh, II, 766; Azdi, 353. Sulaymān was an ʿAbbāsid prince, descended from ʿAbdallāh b. al-ʿAbbās; subsequently, in 214 (829/30), he became governor of Mecca.
The Events of the Year

204
(JUNE 28, 819—JUNE 16, 820)

The events taking place during this year included al-Ma’mūn’s arrival in Iraq and the end of the (previous) increase in civil strife in Baghdad.

Al-Ma’mūn’s Arrival in Iraq and What Happened There

It is mentioned concerning al-Ma’mūn that when he reached Jurjān he stayed there a month. Then he left and travelled to Rayy in Dhū al-Ḥijjah [203 (June 819)], and stayed there for a few days. Then he left Rayy and began travelling from one staging post to another, staying one or two days (in each of them) until he reached Nahrawān, this being on a Saturday, and stayed there eight days. The members of his family, the

289. The surviving part of Ibn Abī .Tracey’s Kitāb Baghādād begins here.
290. I.e., the southeast Caspian coastland region, Persian Gurgān; see Le Strange, Lands, 376–81; Barthold, An historical geography of Iran, 115; El s.v. Gurgān (Hartmann—J.A. Boyle).
291. This must be the occasion recorded above, 85, when al-Ma’mūn lightened the assessment of the land-tax of Rayy.
commanders and the leading personalities came out [to meet him] and greeted him. Previous to this, while he was on the road, al-Ma'mün had written to Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn, who was at that time at Raqqah, telling Tāhir to meet him at Nahrawān, and Tāhir duly met up with him there. On the next 292 Saturday, al-Ma'mün entered Baghdad, as the sun was getting high, on the fifteenth of ʿṢafar, 204 293 (August 11, 819), with himself and his retinue all wearing short green Persian coats (aqbiyāh) and tall caps (gālānis) and bearing short lances (ṭarrādāt) (with green pennants) and green banners (aʿlām). 294

When he arrived, he halted and encamped at Ruṣāfah, accompanied by Tāhir. He ordered Tāhir to encamp at Khayzūraniyyah with his troops. Then he transferred his quarters to his palace on the bank of the Tigris. He gave commands to Ḥumayd b. ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd, ʿAlī b. Hishām and every one of the commanders in his army that they should remain in their military encampments. Now these commanders had been resorting to al-Ma'mūn's palace each day, and no one had been able to enter into his presence unless he wore green clothes. The people of Baghdad and the Ḥāshimites likewise all wore green. Al-Ma'mūn's partisans used to tear off anything black which they observed people wearing, except for caps; 295 isolated individuals used to wear them (black caps), but in fear and trembling; and as for a Persian coat or banner, no one dared to wear one at all or to carry one.

They remained in this state of affairs for eight days, but then the Ḥāshimites, and the members of the ʿAbbāsid family in

292. Reading al-ākharu for the text's al-ākhiru.
293. Actually a Thursday. The date of the fifteenth of ʿṢafar for al-Ma'mūn's entry given by Ibn Abī Tāhir, 2, n. 3, tr. Keller, i, n. 1, by Tabārī here, by Ibn al-Athīr following them, etc., must really be, relying on other, parallel sources (e.g., Ibn Qutaybah), Sunday, the eleventh of ʿṢafar (August 7). Yaʿqūbī, Taʿrikh, ii, 551, has Rabīʿ I, i.e., the following month, Maṣʿūdī, Tanbih, 351, tr. 450, has Saturday, the eighteenth of ʿṢafar (actually a Sunday), Azdī, 353, merely has the month of ʿṢafar.
294. Following the tarrād/tīrād of Lane's Lexicon = mitrād, "short spear," in Ibn Abī Tāhir, tr. 1, Keller has for these last two terms, "Fahnen und Abzeichungen waren grün."
295. This exception is not easily explicable, unless it was that the black cap was so archetypically the ʿAbbāsid symbol as to be regarded as sacrosanct.
The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

particular, began to mumur against it and told al-Ma'mūn, "O Commander of the Faithful, you have abandoned the dress of your forefathers, the members of your family and the supporters of their dynasty, and you have adopted green!" The commanders of the Khurasanian troops also wrote to him about this. It is said that al-Ma'mūn instructed Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn to ask him for any of his requirements, and the first matter which Tāhir raised with him was that he should cast aside the wearing of green clothes and revert to wearing black clothes and the traditional apparel of the régime of ('Abbāsid) forefathers. So when al-Ma'mūn saw that the people were obediently following his orders and wearing green, but were hating it, and Saturday came along, he took his place among them, still wearing green. When all his followers were gathered round him, he called for black garments and donned them, he then called for a black robe of honor, and presented it to Tāhir. Then he summoned forward a number of commanders and gave them black coats and caps to wear. When they came forth from the Caliph's presence wearing black, the rest of the commanders and the army in general threw off their green garments and adopted black ones. This was on Saturday, the twenty-second of Ṣafar\(^{296}\) (204 [August 18, 819]).\(^{297}\)

It has been said that al-Ma'mūn wore green garments for twenty-seven\(^{298}\) days after his entry into Baghdad, and then they were torn up. It is said that he continued to stay in Baghdad at Ruṣāfah until he built residences along the Tigris bank near his own original palace and in the Mūsā garden.\(^{299}\)

It is mentioned from Ibrāhīm b. al-ʿAbbās [al-Ṣūlī] al-Kātib\(^{300}\) from 'Amr b. Mas'adah [al-Ṣūlī]\(^{301}\) that Aḥmad b. Abi Khālid

---

296. Actually a Thursday.
298. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 4, tr. 2: for 29 days.
299. Cf. also ibid., 4, 22, tr. 2, 10. Concerning al-Ma'mūn's palaces, see Lassen, Topography, 84, 265–6.
300. Secretary to Aḥmad b. Abi Khālid and subsequently controller of expenditure and chancery head under al-Mutawakkil, and also a poet; see Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 10, 221, 266, 274, II, 734; Sezgin, GAS, II, 578–80.
301. Cousin of the above and secretary to al-Ma'mūn, and also a poet; see Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 234–8; Sezgin, GAS, II, 616–17.
al-Ahwal said: When we travelled from Khurasan with al-Ma'mūn, and we arrived at the pass of Ḥulwān, I myself being his riding-companion, he said to me, "O Ahmad, I detect the fragrant smell of Iraq!" I answered him with an inappropriate reply and said, "How suitable it is!" And he said, "This is not the answer to my observation, but I assume that you were somehow distracted or were deep in thought." Ahmad went on to relate: I replied, "Yes, indeed, O Commander of the Faithful." He said, "What were you thinking about?" Ahmad went on to relate: I said, "O Commander of the Faithful, I was reflecting about our forthcoming attack on the people of Baghdad [or: the troops, ahl, of Baghdad], when we have with us only fifty thousand dirhams and there is internecine strife raging in the hearts of the people, to the extent that they positively revel in it. So what will be our position if someone stirs up trouble, or someone makes an untoward move?" Ahmad went on to relate: He bowed his head and remained silent for quite a while, and then he replied, "O Ahmad, you are quite right, and how correctly were you thinking! But let me tell you, people in this city can be divided into three categories: those who are the oppressors, those who are the oppressed and those who fall into neither category. In regard to the oppressor, he can only expect our forgiveness and our restraint [from punishing him], in regard to the oppressed person, he can only expect to get justice through ourself, whilst in regard to the person who is neither an oppressor nor oppressed, his house is wide enough for him [that is, he is quite content and has no need of us]." And by God, it proved just as he said.

In this year, al-Ma'mūn ordered that the proportional tax (muqāsamah) levied on the produce of the cultivation of the

---

302. Secretary who became head of al-Ma'mūn's administration after al-Fādil b. Sahl's death; see Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 218–25. As noted by Kennedy, 166, it is not entirely clear whether he was the brother of the Khurasanian military leader in Baghdad, Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid, but Shahan, 51–2, is surely right in stressing his Iranian origin, pace Sourdel's suggestion that he was a Syrian.

303. I.e., the Paytak pass through the Zagros mountains; see El' s.v. Ḥulwān (Lockhart).

304. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 1–6, tr. 1–3; Azdi, 353–5, with further anecdotal material; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Ṯānī, VI, 357–8.

305. See on this, F. Lekkegaard, Islamic taxation in the classic period, 108 ff.
Sawād should be reduced to two-fifths, whereas they had previously been liable for a half of their produce, and he adopted the "bridled" qafīz (al-qafīz al-muljam), made up of ten makkūks according to the Hārūnī makkūk, as the officially authorised measure of capacity.\(^{306}\)

In this year, Yahyā b. Mu'ādh gave battle to Bābak, but neither side gained the upper hand over the other.\(^{307}\)

(In this year,\(^{308}\) al-Ma'mūn appointed Ṣālih b. al-Rashīd\(^{309}\) as governor of Baṣrāh, and 'Ubaydallāh b. al-Ḥasan b. 'Ubaydallāh b. al-`Abbās b. ‘Alī b. Abī Ṭalib over the two Holy cities (Mecca and Madīnah).\(^{309}\)

In this year, 'Ubaydallāh b. al-Ḥasan (b. 'Ubaydallāh b. al-`Abbās b. ‘Alī b. Abī Ṭalib) led the pilgrimage.\(^{310}\)

---

\(^{306}\) Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 22, tr. 10, with a fuller account of this event; Azdī, 353; 'Uyūn, 359; Ibn al-Āthīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 358. For the measures mentioned here, see Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, tr. 10, n. 1; W. Hinz, Islamische Masse und Gewichte, 48–9; Bosworth, "Abū 'Abdallāh al-Khwārazmī on the technical terms of the secretary's art," JESHO, XII (1969), 149–50; but note that Ibn Abī Ṭāhir here and also Khwārazmī gives the equivalence in Iraq as being eight makkūks to a qafīz.

\(^{307}\) Azdī, loc. cit.; Ibn al-Āthīr, al-Kāmil, loc. cit.

\(^{308}\) I.e., the son of the Caliph al-Rashīd.

\(^{309}\) Ya'qūbī, Ta'rikh, II, 553; Ibn al-Āthīr, al-Kāmil, loc. cit.; Geddes, 104.

\(^{310}\) Khalīfah, Ta'rikh, II, 767; Azdī, loc. cit.; Ibn al-Āthīr, al-Kāmil, loc. cit.
The Events of the Year

205
(JUNE 17, 820—JUNE 5, 821)

Among the events taking place during this year was al-Ma'mun's appointment of Ṭāhir b. al-ḥusayn as governor of the lands from the City of Peace to the farthest province of the East.\(^{311}\) Previously, the Caliph had appointed him governor of the Jazirah, commander of the guard (al-shurafl), (in Baghdad), governor of the two sides of Baghdad and the person responsible for police duties (maʿāwin)\(^ {312}\) in the Sawād.\(^ {313}\) Ṭāhir now took up the role of receiving people in audience.

---

\(^{311}\) For the general background to this, see Barthold, *Turkestan down to the Mongol invasion*, 208-9; Bosworth, *Sistān under the Arabs*, 108-9; id., in *Cambridge history of Iran*, IV, 95-6; Daniel, 181-2.

\(^{312}\) It is not clear from the sources exactly what the maʿāwin, sing. maʿūnah, literally “assistance,” involved; as well as entailing police duties, they seem also to have denoted some kind of financial burdens, perhaps for supporting local officials; see Lækkegaard, 186-7. In some of the Cairo Geniza documents, maʿūnah appears as a euphemism for “jail,” see S.D. Goitein, *A Mediterranean society. II. The community*, 368; P. Crone, El² s.v. Maʿūna.

\(^{313}\) Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 23, tr. 11 [Ṭāhir's appointment to the offices in the Jazirah and Baghdad, the date for this being given as Sunday, 'Āshūrā day = the tenth of Muḥarram, 205 [June 26, 820, actually a Thursday]]; Yaʿqūbi, *Taʾrikh*, II, 542, 553-4; Azdī, loc. cit.; *Uyun*, 363; G. Rothstein, “Zu aš-Šābusti’s Bericht über die Ṭāhiriden,” in *Orientalistische Studien Theodor Nöldeke ... gewidmet*, I, 159-61.
The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

The Appointment of Ṭāhir b. al-Ḥusayn as Governor of Khurasan

The reason for al-Ma'mūn's appointing Ṭāhir over Khurasan and the East is what is mentioned from Ḥammād b. al-Ḥasan, from Bishr b. Ghiyāth al-Mārisī who related: I, together with Thumāmah (b. Ashras al-Numayrī) and Muḥammad b. Abī al-ʿAbbas (al-Ṭūsī) and 'Alī b. al-Haytham, was present at 'Abdallah al-Ma'mūn's court. They were engaged in a disputation about Shi'ism. Muḥammad b. Abī al-ʿAbbās argued on behalf of the cause of the imāmate [for the Imāmi Shi'ah], whilst 'Alī b. al-Haytham upheld the cause of the Zaydi Shi'ah. The discussion between the two proceeded, until a point was reached when Muḥammad said to 'Alī, "You ignorant peasant [nabātı], what do you know about theological disputation [kalām]?" Bishr continued: Al-Ma'mūn, who was at first reclining on a cushion, then sat up and spoke out, "Hurling insults is unseemly, and unpleasant language is reprehensible. We have allowed theological disputation to take place and have staged the open presentation of [religious] viewpoints [azharnā al-maqqālāt]. Now upon whoever speaks the truth, we bestow praise; for whoever does not know the truth, we provide instruction; and in regard to whoever is ignorant of both ways [of disputation], we make a decision as to what is appropriate for him. So, you two, come to an agreement on basic principles [aṣl], for kalām is concerned with secondary, derivative matters [fuṭū'ī], and if you pursue a topic into all its second-

---

314. Prominent Murji'ite theologian and upholder of the createdness of the Qur'ān, died in 218 (833); see Watt, index; Sezgin, GAS, I, 616–17; EI² s.v. [Carra de Vaux—Nader—Schacht].
315. Mu'tazilite theologian, highly esteemed at the 'Abbāsid court, died in 213 (828); see Watt, index; Sezgin, GAS, I, 615–16; EI¹ s.v. [Horten].
316. Khurasanian commander in al-Ma'mūn's army, from a family which had been prominent in the 'Abbāsid revolution, and brother-in-law of Ṭāhir b. al-Ḥusayn; see Crone, 174.
318. Nabāṭī (originally referring to the Aramaic-speaking indigenous populations of Syria and Iraq) was a term of opprobrium in early Islam; see Nöldeke, "Die Namen der aramäischen Nation und Sprache," ZDMG, XXV (1817), 124–7.
The Events of the Year 205

ary aspects, you nevertheless come back in the end to the basics." He went on to say, "Thus we say, 'There is no god but God, the Unique One, who has no partner, and Muḥammad is His servant and His prophet.'"

The two of them discussed the topic of the divinely-ordained prescriptions and laws (al-fara'īd wa-al-sharā'ī') in Islam, and argued together after that. Muhammad pressed 'Ali once more with arguments similar to those used at first, but 'Ali replied, "By God, were it not for the elevated nature of his [the Caliph's] gathering, and the compassion which God has bestowed on him, and were it not a prohibited action, I would certainly make your forehead run with sweat! Your ignorance is sufficiently demonstrated by your washing down the pulpit in the city [the City of Peace?]"

Bishr continued: Al-Ma'mūn sat up, having been reclining, and said, "What's this about your washing down the pulpit? Was it the result of my falling short in some way in regard to you, or because al-Manṣūr fell similarly short in regard to your father? Were it not that the Caliph, having bestowed something, would be embarrassed to take it back, the nearest thing to the ground between the two of us would be your head [cut off]! So arise, and take care not to do it again!"

Bishr continued: Muhammad b. Abi al-'Abbas departed and went along to Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn, who happened to be his sister's husband, and said to him, "So-and-so has just happened to me!"

(The eunuch [al-ḵāḍīm] Fatḥ used to act as al-Ma'mūn's doorkeeper when the Caliph was involved in his date wine

---

319. The washing down of the minbar in order to get rid of the impurity and pollution left by a previous occupant of it seems to have been not infrequent in early Islamic times. See Tabari, Glossarium, p. CCCLXXXVIII, citing Mas'ūdī and Isfahānī, when, during 'Uthmān's caliphate, Sa'id b. al-'Āṣ washed the minbar of the mosque at Kufah when he took over as governor from al-Walid b. 'Uqbah, and see Crone, 258, n. 606, citing Kindī, on the washing down of the minbar at Fustāṭ on al-Ma'mūn's orders after the death of the Imam 'Ali b. Mūsā al-Ridā, whose name had been pronounced from it. The point of the remark in the present context nevertheless remains obscure.

The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

[nabīḍh]^{321} drinking sessions; Yāsir was in charge of the robes of honor; Ḥusayn acted as cup-bearer; and Abū Maryam, the slave boy of Sa’īd al-Jawhari, used to go to-and-fro attending to various needs.) Tāhir rode up to the palace. Fath went in and announced, “Tāhir is at the door.” The Caliph replied, “It isn’t one of his usual times, [but] let him come in!” So Tāhir entered; he greeted al-Ma’mūn, and the Caliph returned the salutation. The Caliph ordered, “Give Tāhir a ratl [of wine] to drink.” Tāhir took it in his right hand. Al-Ma’mūn said to him, “Sit down!” But he went away (from the circle), drained the cup and then came back. Al-Ma’mūn had meanwhile drunk another ratl, so he ordered, “Give him a second draught!” Tāhir behaved exactly as when he drained the first draught. Then he came back, and al-Ma’mūn said to him (again), “Sit down!” Tāhir replied, however, “O Commander of the Faithful, it is not fitting for the commander of the guard to sit down in his master’s presence.” Al-Ma’mūn retorted, “That only applies to public sessions at court [majlis al-‘ammah], whereas in private sessions [majlis al-khāṣṣah] it is allowable.”

Bishr continued: Al-Ma’mūn wept, and tears welled up in his eyes. Tāhir said to him, “O Commander of the Faithful, why are you weeping, may God never cause your eyes to flow with tears! By God, all the lands have submitted to your rule, all the Muslims have acknowledged you as ruler, and you have achieved your desired object in everything you have undertaken.” Al-Ma’mūn replied, “I am weeping on account of a matter which is humiliating to mention and whose concealment is a source of grief. No one is free from some care, so tell me about any pressing need which you may have.” Tāhir said, “O Commander of the Faithful, Muḥammad b. Abī al-‘Abbās has committed a fault, so please pardon his error and show your favor to him.” The Caliph replied, “I have this moment received him back into my favor, I have ordered gifts to be awarded to him and I have restored to him his former position. Moreover, were it not for the fact that he is not the sort of per-

---

321. *Nabīḍh* is properly any intoxicating drink fermented from anything but grapes; only the Ḥanafi law school regarded the drinking of it as licit in certain circumstances, see *El*¹ s.v. (Wensinck); *El*² Khamr. 1 (Wensinck).
son suitable for convivial sessions, I would summon him here to court.”

Bishr continued: Ṭāhir went away, and told Ibn Abī al-ʿAbbas about all this. He summoned Ḥārūn b. Ṣabghūyah and said to him, “The secretaries have a feeling of mutual professional interest, and the Khurasanians [that is, the military] always stick together and support each other. So take with you three hundred thousand dirhams, and give the eunuch al-Ḥusayn two hundred thousand and his secretary Muḥammad b. Ḥārūn one hundred thousand, and ask al-Ḥusayn to ask al-Maʾmūn why he was weeping.” Bishr relates: He accordingly did that. He continued: When the Caliph had eaten his morning meal, he said, “O al-Ḥusayn, pour out a drink for me!” The latter replied, “No, by God, I won’t let you have anything to drink unless you tell me why you wept when Ṭāhir came into your presence.” Al-Maʾmūn replied, “O al-Ḥusayn, why are you so concerned about this, to the point that you have questioned me about it?” He said, “Because of your own grief about that.” Al-Maʾmūn replied, “O al-Ḥusayn, it is a matter concerning which, if it goes beyond your mouth [literally, “head”], I shall kill you.” Al-Ḥusayn said, “O my lord, when did I ever divulge any of your confidences?” Al-Maʾmūn said, “I called to mind my brother Muḥammad [al-Amin] and the humiliation which he suffered; the tears suffocated me, and I only found release in copious weeping. But Ṭāhir will not escape that from me which he will find unpleasant [because vengeance on him is still due from al-Amin’s killing].”

Bishr continued: Al-Ḥusayn passed on this information to Ṭāhir. Ṭāhir rode off to Aḥmad b. Abī Khalid and said to him, “Praise addressed to me is not accounted of low value, and a useful act done for me is never wasted. So get me away from the Caliph’s gaze [that is, from his possible vengeance].” He re-

332. Following the correct reading of this name or title in the Addenda et emendenda, p. DCCLXVIII, and in Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 31. This Ḥārūn must have been of Turkish extraction, perhaps a descendent of the pre-Islamic Yabghus, or rulers of Tukhāristān, on the upper Oxus; see Bosworth and Sir Gerard Clau-son, “Al-Xwārazmī on the peoples of Central Asia,” /RAS [1965], 9–10. In Ḫīlahānī, Aghānī, XIV, 37, Ḥārūn is described as a “senior Khurasanian, shrewd and trustworthy.”
torted, "I will certainly do that, so come back to me first thing tomorrow morning." Bishr continued: Ibn Abi Khālid rode off to al-Ma'mūn, and when he went into his presence, he said to the Caliph, "I never slept at all last night." Al-Ma'mūn said, "Why was that, you poor fellow?" Ibn Abi Khālid replied, "Because you have appointed Ghassān as governor over Khurasan, and he and his following are weak in numbers. I am afraid lest there be an outbreak of Turkish rebels against him, and they will annihilate him." Al-Ma'mūn said, "You have been thinking on the same lines as myself. Whom do you think is suitable?" He replied, "Ṭāhir b. al-Husayn." The Caliph exclaimed, "I am surprised at you, O Ahmad, Ṭāhir is, by God, a person who will throw off his obedience [khali'ī]." Ahmad b. Abi Khalīd said, "I will stand guarantor for his loyalty." Al-Ma'mūn said, "Send him forth, then." Bishr continued: So Ahmad summoned Ṭāhir immediately. Al-Ma'mūn appointed him to the command, and Ṭāhir departed instantly. He encamped in the garden of Khalīl b. Ḥāshim, and every day he remained there a hundred thousand (dirhams) were brought to him. He stayed there for a month, and a total of ten million (dirhams) which were regularly brought for the governor of Khurasan, was brought to him.

Abū Ḥassān al-Ziyādī says: Ṭāhir had been granted Khurasan and Jībāl, from Ḥulwān to [the far borders of] Khurasan, and his departure from Baghdad was on Friday, the twenty-ninth of

---

323. For Ghassān’s governorship in Khurasan, see Barthold, Turkestan, 208–10; Bosworth, Sīstān, 101–2. Ghassān in fact restored order there after a period of disturbance on al-Ma’īn’s departure from Marw, and among other things, appointed members of the Sāmānīd family to local governorships. The fears expressed of the Turks doubtless reflect the help given by them to the rebellion in al-Rashīd’s reign of Rāfī’ b. Layīth, see Barthold, op. cit., 200–1.

324. Following Keller’s vocalization of Ibn Abī Ṭāhir’s parallel text, 32 11. 4–5, rather than that of Ṭābarī’s text; the respective meanings amount to the same in any case.

325. ‘Uyun, 360–1.

326. Apparently to be identified with the suburb [rabāb] of Khalīl b. Ḥāshim al-Bāwārdī mentioned by Ya’qūbī, Buldān, 247, tr. G. Wiet, Les pays, 27.

Dhū al-Qa‘dah, 205\textsuperscript{328}[May 6, 821], he having established his encampment\textsuperscript{329} two months previously and having remained in his camp continuously. Abū Ḥassān continued: The reason for Tāhir’s appointment as governor, according to the generally-accepted view of people, was that ‘Abd al-Rahmān al-Muṭṭawwi‘ī gathered together forces in Nāsābūr with the intention of using them to fight the Ḥarūriyyah\textsuperscript{330} but without the governor of Khurasan’s permission. People were afraid that this was because of some secret plan or intention which he had worked towards.\textsuperscript{331} Ghassān b. ‘Abbād was acting as governor of Khurasan at that time, having been nominated by al-Ḥasan b. Sahl, Ghassān being the paternal cousin of al-Фādīl b. Sahl.\textsuperscript{332}

It is mentioned from ‘Alī b. Ḥārūn that, before Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn’s departure for Khurasan and his assumption of the governorship over it, al-Ḥasan b. Sahl urged him to go out and fight Nasr b. Shabath, but Tāhir replied, “Have I made war on a caliph, and have I handed over the caliphate to [another] caliph, that I should be given such an order as this? It is only fitting that you should send one of my subordinate commanders for a task like this!”\textsuperscript{333} This was the reason for the breach between al-Ḥasan and Tāhir. He continued to relate: Tāhir set out for

\textsuperscript{328} Actually a Monday; according to Ibn Abī Tāhir, 54, tr. 25, Tāhir departed on Sunday, the twenty-ninth of Dhū al-Qa‘dah.

\textsuperscript{329} Or: “he having gathered together his troops,” wa-qad kāna ‘askara.

\textsuperscript{330} Since al-Rashīd’s reign, Khurasan and Sīstān had been disturbed by a prolonged Kharijite rebellion under Ḥamzah b. Adharak (died in 213 [828]), and in the past ‘Abd al-Rahmān had fought the Kharijites in Sīstān; see Bosworth, Sīstān, 91-102.

\textsuperscript{331} The phrase is problematical; it reads, li-‘asli ‘amil ‘alayhi.

\textsuperscript{332} Ibn Abī Tāhir, 32-3, tr. 15, Ya‘qūbī, Ta’rīkh, II, 554-5; id., Buldān, 307, tr. 136-7, both with the different account of Tāhir’s appointment as being the result of his friend Ahmad b. Abī Khālid’s intrigue. The divergent accounts on Tāhir’s appointment and his subsequent act of rebelliousness, seen especially sharply in the account of Ya‘qūbī on one side and that of Ibn Abī Tāhir and Taḥārī on the other, but with significant items of information from further sources, are discussed by Sourdel, “Les circonstances de la mort de Tāhir I” au Ḫurāsān en 207/822,” Arabica, V (1958), 66-9. It seems likely that Ahmad b. Abī Khālid, known to have been corruptible and perhaps suborned by Tāhir, forged a letter of resignation from his governorship by Ghassān; see Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 222-3.

\textsuperscript{333} Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 360-2.
Khurasan as soon as he assumed the governorship, without speaking to al-Hasan b. Sahl at all. People reproached him for that, but he replied, "I am not the man to offer a solution to a difficulty [literally, to untie a knot] which he has made for me in his hostility."

In this year, 'Abdallah b. Tahir reached Baghdad, having returned from Raqqah. His father Tahir had appointed him there as his deputy and had commanded him to make war against Nasr b. Shabath. Yahyā b. Mu‘adh arrived, and al-Ma‘mūn appointed him governor of the Jazīrah.

In this year, al-Ma‘mūn appointed 'Īsā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid governor of Armenia and Azerbaijan, with responsibility for the war against Bābak.

In this year, al-Sari b. al-Ḥakam, governor in Egypt, died there.

In this year, Dāwūd b. Yazīd (b. Ḥātim al-Muhallabī), governor and financial administrator ('āmil) in Sind, died. Hence al-Ma‘mūn appointed as governor there Bishr b. Dāwūd (al-Muhallabī), with the stipulation that he should deliver to the Caliph a million dirhams each year.

In this year, al-Ma‘mūn appointed 'Īsā b. Yazīd al-Julūdī to combat the Zuṭṭ.

In this year, Tahir b. al-Husayn set out for Khurasan in Dhu al-Qa‘dah [205] April–May 82113. He remained (in his encampment) for two months until news of 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Naysābūrī al-Muṭṭawwī‘ī’s outbreak (khurūj) at Naysābūr

---

335. 'Uyūn, 361; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, loc. cit.
336. Ibid. Al-Sari had been appointed governor in 200 [816]; see Kindi, 161.
337. Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, loc. cit. Bishr remained governor, as his father's successor, till Ghassān b. 'Abbād was appointed in 213 [828/9], see below, 179–80.
338. Ibid. The Zuṭṭ were peoples from Sind, Jhats and others, established on the Persian Gulf shores since Sāsānīd times. The revolt of these Zuṭṭ in the marshlands of lower Iraq was not suppressed till 220 [835]; see Pellat, Le milieu basārien, 37–40; El' a. v. Zott (G. Ferrand).
reached him, and then he left. The Toghuz-Oghuz reached him, and then he left. The Toghuz-Oghuz\textsuperscript{340} arrived in Ushrūsanah.\textsuperscript{341}

In this year, Faraj (b. Ziyād) al-Rukkhaji\textsuperscript{342} seized ʿAbd al-Rahmān b. ʿAmmār al-Naysābūrī.

In this year, ʿUbaydallāh b. al-Ḥasan (b. ʿUbaydallāh b. ʿAbbās b. ʿAlī), governor of the two Holy Cities, led the pilgrimage.\textsuperscript{343}

\textsuperscript{340} A Turkish people of Inner Asia, from whom the Seljuqs were later to arise and who were at this time harrying the fringes of Islamic Transoxiana and assisting rebels there; see Barthold, Turkestan, 200–2; Bosworth, The Ghaznavids, their empire in Afghanistan and eastern Iran, 210 ff.; EI\textsuperscript{1} s.v. Toghuzghuz (Barthold); EI\textsuperscript{2} s.v. Ghuzz. i. Muslim East (Cohen).

\textsuperscript{341} The region of Transoxiana to the south of the southernmost bend of the Syr Darya; see Le Strange, Lands, 474–6; Barthold, Turkestan, 165–9.

\textsuperscript{342} A mawlā, originally captured in Sistān and overseer of the caliphal private domains under Ahmad b. Abi Khalid; see Bosworth, Sistān, 82–3; Crone, 190.

\textsuperscript{343} Khalīfah, Taʾrīkh, II, 768; Azdi, 359; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 362.
The Events of the Year

206
(JUNE 6, 821—MAY 26, 822)

The events taking place during this year included al-Ma'mūn's appointment of Dāwūd b. Bānijūr344 to be in charge of the war against the Zuṭṭ and to be governor of the provinces of Baṣrah, the Tigris districts, Yamāmah and Bahrayn.345

In this year, there occurred the high tide which inundated the Sawād, Kaskar, the land-grant (qaṭī‘ah) of Umm Ja‘far and the land-grant of al-‘Abbās and carried away the greater part of (the topsoil of) them.346

In this year, Bābak defeated (literally: cast down) ‘Īsā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid.347

In this year, al-Ma’mūn appointed ‘Abdallāh b. Tāhir governor of Raqqah with the task of combatting Naṣr b. Shabath and Muḍar.348

344. Following the reading of the Addenda et emendanda, p. DCCLXIX. Dāwūd was apparently a member of the Bānījūrid or Abū Dāwūdīd family, later governors of Tukhāristān, see EI² Suppl. s.v. Bānījūrids (Bosworth).
347. Ibid.
348. Ya‘qūbī, Ta‘rīkh, II, 555; Azdī, 359; ‘Uyūn, 362, 363. The North Arabian tribal group of Muḍar (on which see EI¹ Suppl. s.v. Rabi‘a and Muḍar [Kindermann]) provided much of Naṣr’s support.
The Events of the Year 206

Al-Ma'mūn Appoints 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir Governor of Raqqah

According to what is mentioned, the reason for this was that al-Ma'mūn had appointed Yahyā b. Mu'ādh as governor of the Jazirah, but then he died in this year, having appointed as successor in his governorship there his own son Aḥmad. It is mentioned from Yahyā b. al-Ḥasan b. 'Abd al-Khaliq that al-Ma'mūn summoned 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir during the month of Ramadān (January–February 822)—some say, however, that this was in the year 205 (820/1), others in the year 200 (820/2), and yet others in the year 20 (822/3). When 'Abdallāh came into his presence, al-Ma'mūn said, "O 'Abdallāh, I have been seeking guidance from God for a month now, and I hope that God is leading me to the right decision. I have observed a man describing his son's characteristics in order to praise the son in glowing terms, because of his own high opinion of him; and in order to exalt his status; but I have noted that you are actually better than your father's description of you. Now Yahyā b. Mu'ādh has died, and has appointed as his successor his son Aḥmad b. Yahyā, who is a nonentity. I have therefore considered it fit to appoint you governor over Muṣṭarr and the conduct of the war against Naṣr b. Shabath." 'Abdallāh replied, "I hear and obey, O Commander of the Faithful, and I hope that God will vouchsafe His favor for the Commander of the Faithful and the Muslims!"

Yahya continues: The Caliph invested him with the insignia of office, and then he ordered the drying lines of the fullers impeding 'Abdallāh's way to be taken down and the awnings against the sunlight to be removed from the streets so that there should be nothing which would catch on 'Abdallāh's banner as he went along them. Then, as part of the insignia of office he presented 'Abdallāh with a banner, which had as its legend, written in gold letters, the wording usually written on banners, to which he further added the phrase "O victorious one [yā Mansūr]!" 'Abdallāh went forth with his retinue and

349. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 34, tr. 16; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 363.
350. On the shiʿar or daʿwah "rallying cry in battle," such as this, see Gold-
arrived at his house. The next morning, a host of people rode along to visit him, including al-Faḍl b. al-Rabī’ī. The latter remained with him till nightfall and then got up to go. ‘Abdallāh said, “O Ābū al-‘Abbās, you have been generous and kind, and both my own father and your brother have adjured me not to decide any great matters without your advice. I need to know your views, and I need to find guidance through your good counsels. If you think it possible to remain here in my house till we can break the fast, then please stay!” Al-Faḍl replied to him, “Various circumstances render it impossible for me to break my fast here.” ‘Abdallāh said, “If you don’t like the cuisine of the Khurasanians, then send along to your own kitchen and they will bring you your usual food.” Al-Faḍl told him, “I have to perform several cycles of inclinations between the evening worship and complete darkness.” So ‘Abdallāh retorted, “Go, with God’s protection!” and went along with him as far as the courtyard of his [al-Faḍl’s] house, seeking his advice on various private matters.

Ţāhir’s Advice to his Son

It is said that ‘Abdallāh’s actual departure for [the lands of] Muḍar in order to combat Nasr b. Shabath took place six months after his father’s departure for Khurasan. When Ţāhir appointed his son ‘Abdallāh over Diyār Rabi’āh, he sent him an epistle, whose text is as follows:

Let there be in you the fear of God, He who is one and without associate. Hold Him in awe and reverence and avert his wrath. Look after the interests of your subjects.


351. The month being Ramadān.
352. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 34–5, tr. 16.
353. Diyār Muḍar was the region of the Jazīrah along the middle Euphrates and its tributaries, the lower Khābūr and Balikh, with Raqqah as its centre; see Le Strange, Lands, 101 ff.; Canard, 86–97; El² s.v. [Canard—Cahen].
354. The eastern part of the Jazīrah, centred on Mosul, see Le Strange, Lands, 86 ff.; Canard, 97–131; El² s.v. [Canard—Cahen].
Hold fast to all the good fortune which God has bestowed on you, at the same time remembering the ultimate destination [the return to God for judgment] towards which you are inevitably travelling, the duties to which you are obligated and for which you will be held responsible. [Take care] to labor at everything in such a way that God will ensure your preservation and will keep you safe from His punishment and painful retribution on the Day of Resurrection.

God has been gracious to you and has accordingly made it incumbent upon you to show tenderness towards those of His creatures over whom He has appointed you shepherd. He has enjoined you to behave justly with them, to maintain His divine truth and His prescribed punishments [ḥudūd] amongst them, to protect them, to defend their womenfolk and kindred [ḥarimihim wa-baydatihim], to preserve them from bloodshed, to keep the roads safe for them and to create the peaceful conditions in which they can go about their daily work. He holds you fully responsible for all the things enumerated above, whose observance has been laid upon you; He will require from you a reckoning concerning them, will question you about them and will recompense you for the good acts which you have committed and the evil acts which you have refrained from. So let your thoughts, your mind, your sharp-sightedness and your vision be entirely concentrated on these things, and let no one distract or divert you from them; for all this is the basic foundation of your authority and the fundamental support of your ruling position, and is the first thing which God bestows on you for guiding you along the right path.

Now the first thing which you must impose on yourself, and the goal towards which your actions should dispose you, is assiduous observance of the ritual prescriptions laid down by God as mandatory—the five daily acts of worship [ṣalawāt], and the assembling of the people together for worship with you at the appointed times and after due performance of the ritual ablutions [wudū']—required by the religious law. You must begin the ceremony
with the mention of God's name, you must use the correct chant as you recite the words of the worship; you must perform the inclinations and prostrations involved firmly and decisively and pronounce the profession of faith clearly. Also, let your intention in performing the worship be sincere in the sight of your Lord. Furthermore, urge those in your retinue and under your command to be assiduous in attendance and always show keenness yourself, for as God says, the worship urges people to what is reputable and restrains [them] from what is disreputable.\footnote{Cf. Qur'ān, XXIX, 44/45, and XXXI, 16/17.}

You must then follow this up by firm adherence to the practices [sunan] laid down by the Messenger of God and by perseverance in imitating his [noble] qualities, and you must imitate the examples left by the Prophet's successors, the virtuous early generation of Muslims [al-salaf al-ṣāliḥ]. Whenever you are faced with some problem, seek help over it by desiring God's favor, by showing piety to Him, by adhering to what He has ordained or prohibited, made lawful or forbidden, as revealed in His Book, and by following the trail indicated by the traditions from the Prophet, then act in this matter in accordance with the duties which you owe to God.

Do not incline away from justice according to your own likes and dislikes in favor of someone near to you or someone far away, but choose to be guided by the religious law [fiqh] and its practitioners, by religion and its exponents the theologians, and by the Book of God and those who act by it; for the greatest adornments which a man can have are a thorough knowledge of the religion of God, a searching desire for it, a zeal in urging others to follow it and a knowledge of that part of it by which a man is brought closer to God. Indeed, this thorough knowledge guides the way towards all that is good and is the leader thither; it ordains man towards good and restrains people from all acts of rebellion against God and from sins entailing perdition. By means of this, and with the help of God's favor, His ser-
vants increase in knowledge of Him, in glorifying Him and in following the right path towards the highest stages in man's journey back to God [ma‘ād, after the Resurrection]. All this in addition to what becomes apparent of the people's regard for your rule, their respect for your authority, their close bond with you and their trust in your justice.

Be careful to observe moderation [iqtiṣād, qaṣd]356 in all things, for there is nothing of more obvious value, nothing more conducive to personal security and nothing containing within itself so many merits, as moderation. Moderation is one of the forces predisposing towards right guidance, and right guidance is a guide towards divine favor and success; and this last, in turn, leads the way to happiness. Moreover, moderation is a supporting prop for religion and for those usages handed down from the Prophet by which men are guided. So choose moderation as your watchword in all affairs of your present life. Do not, however, fall short in your pursuit of the next world and a heavenly reward, in performing meritorious works, in following the accepted ways of virtuous behavior and in seeking out the waymarks towards righteousness. For the endeavor to increase in piety and the pursuit of good works can have no bounds when God's grace and approval, and the companionship of His saints in the abode of divine felicity, are being sought through them.

Know that moderation in the things of this world brings one increased prestige and preserves one from sinfulness. There is nothing more excellent than moderation as a protection for yourself and your intimates or as a force to improve and put right your affairs. So adopt it as a rule of life, and let yourself be guided by it; if you do, your affairs will all reach satisfactory completion, your power will increase, and both your personal circle of friends and the people in general [or: your personal affairs and public affairs] will benefit from it.

356. These terms here clearly mean "moderation, prudence, circumspection," the golden mean of the Greeks, and Tahir is here echoing Aristotle in urging it as the foundation for all right conduct; see Bosworth, "An early Arabic Mirror for Princes," /NES, XXIX (1970), 28.
Keep your mind fixed on God's favor; if you do, your subjects will behave towards you in an honest and upright fashion. In all your affairs, seek to bring yourself closer to God; through this policy, His grace will be vouchsafed to you perpetually. Do not take action against anyone for some offence committed in the official position to which you have appointed him before you have investigated the matter under suspicion, since it is a crime to let suspicions and evil thoughts come down upon innocent people. Adopt as a conscious policy a favorable attitude towards your associates, and set aside and repudiate malevolent thoughts about them. This will assist you in attaching them firmly to your own interest and in managing them. Do not allow Satan, the enemy of God, to be able to find some defect in your conduct. He only needs [to become aware of] a minor weakness, and he will be able to introduce an element of grief into your mind through your acquiring a bad opinion [of those around you] which will make the sweetness of life bitter for you.

Know that, in holding a favorable attitude towards people, you will find a source of strength and contentment of mind, and through it you will be able to bring to a satisfactory conclusion any of your affairs you wish; you may also use it to make people love you and behave honestly in all their dealings with you. However, this good opinion of your associates and this tenderness towards your subjects should not prevent you from making use of enquiries and investigations into the way in which your affairs are being conducted, from personally supervising the actions of your agents, from protecting the interests of your subjects and from looking into whatever may be conducive to their welfare and happiness. Indeed, personal supervision of your agents' activities, protection of your subjects' interests, investigation into their needs and shouldering their burdens should be preferred by you over everything else, for they will have more effect in strengthening religion and in breathing life into the sunna. Let your intentions in all this be pure; concentrate your efforts on self-reformation, in the same way as does a person who real-
izes that he will be held responsible for everything which he does, will be recompensed for his good deeds and will be punished for his bad ones. God has made His faith a sure refuge and a source of strength; He exalts those who follow Him and raises them in dignity. Hence lead those over whom you rule, and act as shepherd in the path of true religion and the way of divine guidance!

Be swift to apply the penalties prescribed by God [ḥudūd], to criminals, according to their positions in society and according to their deserts. Do not neglect this duty, and do not treat it lightly or be laggardly in punishing those deserving punishment, because if you fall short in this duty, you will surely damage your good reputation in people's eyes. In this matter, always stick determinedly to the well-established practices [sunan]. If you avoid all dubious courses and innovations [al-shubah wa-al-bida'at], your faith will be preserved unsullied and your nobility of character [murūwwah] will be kept intact.

When you make an agreement with someone, keep to it; and when you promise to perform some good deed, make sure that you fulfill it. Accept a favor gracefully and return it. Close your eyes to the minor shortcomings of petty offenders among your subjects; guard your tongue against uttering falsehood and calumny and show your detestation of those who practice this vice. Banish from your presence all slanderers, because the prime factor which will vitiate your present life and your future one is the encouragement of a notorious liar or a shameless disposition towards lying yourself. Mendacity, indeed, is the beginning of all sins, and calumny and slander set the seal on them. For the person who manufactures slander is not safe himself; nor is any friend of a man who listens to slander^{357} safe; and nothing will go right for the person who acts in accordance with slander.

Make friends of the people of sincerity and righteous-

---

^{357} Reading qābiluhā for the text's qā'iluhā, as according to F. Rosenthal, *The Muqaddimah, an introduction to history*, II, 145, n. 760.
ness. Give succor to the aristocracy [al-asḥrāf] by allotting them their just due; give material help to the weak; and strengthen the bonds of kinship. In all these things desire the face of God and the strengthening of His power; through them seek a heavenly reward from Him and the abode of eternal life. Shun evil thoughts and oppressive behavior, deflecting your mind completely from them, and demonstrate openly to your subjects your freedom from these defects. Let your rule over them be graced with the exercise of justice; govern them with due equity and with the knowledge which will lead you on the way of divine guidance. Keep a grip on your temper when you are angry, and adopt rather the attitudes of forbearance and magnanimity. Take care not to succumb to hasty temper, frivolous behavior and deception in anything you undertake. Also, take care that you do not say to yourself, “I have been set in authority, I shall do what I like,” because that will speedily destroy your judgment, and it further shows a lack of firm belief in God, He who is one and without associate. Make pure to God your intentions in this and your firm belief in Him!

Know that royal authority belongs to God alone; He bestows it upon whom He wills and takes it away from whom He wills. You will not find His favors towards anyone change more completely, nor His vengeance descend more swiftly, than in regard to those holders of power and those set in authority who have been the recipients of His favor, but have shown ingratitude towards God’s bounty and benevolence, and who have adopted a high and mighty attitude because of the goodness which He has bestowed on them.[358]

Lay aside any avariciousness which may be in your heart. Let the treasuries and storehouses which you pile up

---

358. Or: who have used oppressively that which He of His goodness has bestowed on them, wa-‘istatalū bi-mā ātāhum Allāh min fadlihi. Keller translated the corresponding passage of Ibn Abi Tahir, 42, tr. 19, “|wenn sie| . . . das, was ihm Gott in seiner Freigebigkeit verleiht, für ewig halten.” The lexica support all these various meanings for istatala; see Lisān al-’Arab1, XIII, 438, and Tāj al-’arūs1, VII, 422–3.
and accumulate be composed of piety, fear of God, justice, measures for your subjects' welfare and the prosperity of their land, acquaintance with their affairs, protection for the mass of them and assistance for those who sorrow. Know that wealth which is accumulated and then stored away in treasuries bears no fruit; but when it is expended on the improvement of the conditions of subjects, on the provision of their just dues and on removing burdens from them, it thrives and multiplies. As a result, the common people derive benefit from it, the governors bask in reflected glory from it, the whole age is made bright by it, and strength and defensive power are consolidated through it. Consequently, let the accumulated wealth of your treasuries be expended on making the world of Islam and its populace more prosperous. Further, allot part of it for what is due to those of the Commander of the Faithful's officials who preceded you\(^{359}\); and utilise another part of it to fulfill the just claims of your subjects, paying close heed to what will improve their general state and conditions of life. If you do all this, God's favor will be vouchsafed to you and you will have merited an increased reward from Him. Moreover, you will find that all these things will facilitate your levying the land-tax [\textit{jibayat kharājika}] and your collecting the taxes in kind from your subjects and from the regions under your control [\textit{jam' amwāl ra'iyyatika wa-'amalika}]. Because of your all-encompassing justice and benevolent rule, the whole of these will be more obedient to your authority and will be more complaisant towards whatever you desire of them. So strive to the best of your ability to achieve what I have delineated for you under this heading, and let your esteem for it be great; for the only wealth which endures forever is that which is expended in furtherance of God's just dues.\(^{360}\)

\(^{359}\) Following the preference of Rosenthal, op. cit., II, 146 and n. 766, for \textit{qablaka} rather than the text's \textit{qibalaka}.

\(^{360}\) On the ruler's or governor's relations with his officials and tax collectors, a constant preoccupation of the writers of Mirrors for Princes, see Bosworth, op. cit., 28–9.
Acknowledge the gratitude of those who show thanks and recompense them appropriately for it. Beware lest this present world and its deceptions make you forget due fear for the next world, so that you treat lightly your obligations in this connection; because this insouciance will inevitably breed neglectfulness, and neglectfulness will lead to ruin. Let all your work be undertaken for God and have its being in Him, and hope only for reward. Indeed, it is He who has lavished on you His beneficence in this present world and has shown His grace to you. Accordingly, make yourself secure by showing proper gratitude; trust in Him, and He will increase your share of His goodness and benevolence. God rewards people according to the measure of their gratitude [to Him] and according to the conduct of those who act righteously; He has judged rightfully in regard to the good things which He has brought and the good fortune and exalted status which He has conferred.

Do not treat any sinful deed [dhanb] lightly; do not incline towards the envious person; do not show mercy towards the evildoer; do not give presents to an ungrateful person; do not hold culpable relations with [or: treat gently] an enemy; do not give credence to a slanderer; do not trust a treacherous person; do not make friends with an evil-liver; do not follow after someone who will lead you into error; do not give praise to a hypocrite; do not treat any man with contempt; do not send away empty-handed a destitute beggar; do not deign to bandy words with a foolish person; do not pay attention to a buffoon; do not go back on your promises; do not show respect for overweening pride; do not undertake anything while in a state of anger; do not go forth exhibiting haughtiness; do not walk along showing an unseemly hilarity [or: displaying arrogance]; do not commit an act of stupidity; do not fall short in your pursuit of the next life; do not pass the days in an
unthankful manner; do not avert your eyes from someone who is behaving tyrannically, either from respect for him or out of fear; and do not seek the rewards of the next world by means of this present life.

Make a habit of consulting the scholars of the religious law [fuqahā'] as much as possible, and when exercising your will, show forbearance [ḥilm]. Learn from people with experience of the world and from people with intelligence, judgment and wisdom. Do not allow into your counsels contemptible and stingy people, and never pay heed to their words, for they will do you more harm than good. There is nothing more likely to bring to disaster any course of action regarding your subjects which you may embark upon than avarice. For know that if you are avaricious, you will want to grab everything and give nothing. If you behave thus, your rule will not go right for very long. Your subjects will only have confidence in your benevolence in as much as you refrain from arbitrary exactions on their wealth and avoid tyrannizing over them, and your subordinates will only remain sincerely devoted to your interests as long as you give them adequate allowances and good pay. Therefore shun avarice, and know that avariciousness was the first act of rebellion raised by man against his Lord, and that the abode of the rebel against God is that of abasement and disgrace, according to what God says [in His Book]; "Those who are protected from niggardliness of soul, they are the ones who prosper." So be really generous. Grant to all the Muslims a share and allotment from the revenue of your captured plunder, and

---

363. Following the 'abām\textsuperscript{a}n\textsuperscript{b}, of Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, loc. cit., instead of the text's 'iyān\textsuperscript{a}. Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 370, has 'itāb\textsuperscript{a}n, "in finding fault," which is favored in the Addenda et emendanda, p. DCCLXX.

364. The ensemble of qualities which made up ḥilm—restraint, moderation, conciliatoriness, statecraft, magnanimity, etc.—were regarded by the early Arabs as the highest attributes for the successful leader; see Bosworth, op. cit., 28, and EI\textsuperscript{2} s.v. (Pellat).

365. Qur'ān, LIX, 9, LXIV, 16.

366. Following the reading preferred in the Addenda et emendanda, p. DCCLXX.
be sure that liberality is one of the most meritorious acts of which God's creatures are capable. Account it as one of your virtues, and regard it with constant favor in your work and practice.

Maintain close supervision of the affairs of your army, the soldiers' pay registers and the government departments concerned with military matters. See that they have adequate salaries and be generous in their living allowances; by this means, God will take away their neediness. Their happy condition will become a source of strength for you, and their hearts will increase by means of it in sincerity and contentedness, in obedience to you and attachment to your cause. It is sufficient felicitousness for a ruler that his army and his subjects should find compassion in his equitable conduct, his protection, his exercise of justice, his concern for people, his solicitude, his benevolent works and his open-handedness. Avoid the unpleasantness of either of the two ways of erring on the sides of harshness or leniency by being conscious of the merits of the other alternative and by always acting in accordance with it. You will then, God willing, achieve worldly success, spiritual merit and personal happiness.

Know that the judge's office [qaḍā'] enjoys in God's sight an importance exceeding all others. This is because it is God's balance, by means of which the affairs on earth are regulated. When justice prevails in the judge's office and in judicial procedure, the subjects' welfare is assured, the highways are kept safe, those who have been wronged are given just recompense, people receive their due rights, people's ways of life become pleasant and rightful obedience is freely vouchsafed. God gives provision for happiness and preservation of life, religion is firmly maintained, the sunna and the religious law are put into practice and, on the basis of their effectiveness, truth and justice are successfully achieved in the judge's office.

367. Following the reading preferred in the Addenda et emendanda, p. DCCLXX.
Be zealous in carrying on God’s work and refrain from corrupt behavior; be assiduous in applying the obligatory legal penalties for offences; never be overhasty in doing things; avoid becoming vexed and disturbed in your mind, and be content with a [moderate] share. In this fashion, your successfulness will be undisturbed and your good fortune firmly established. Profit by your past experience; concentrate your thoughts while you are silent, and then when you speak be cogent and to the point. Be fair to the plaintiff; pause when you are in doubt, but exert yourself in bringing forward relevant evidence. Do not let partiality, claims to protection or fear of anyone’s blame sway you in any dealings with one of your subjects. Instead, act with patience and deliberation; keep your eyes open and watch carefully; consider, reflect and ponder over things; adopt an attitude of humility towards your Lord and of clemency towards all your subjects. Make the pursuit of righteousness the dominating principle of your personal conduct and do not hasten to spill blood, for God regards bloodshed all the more seriously when it is spilt with violence and injustice.

Look carefully into this matter of the land-tax, which the subjects have the obligation to pay. God has made this a source of strength and might for Islam, and a means of support and protection for His people; but He has made it a source of chagrin and vexation for His enemies and the enemies of the Muslims, and for the unbelievers in treaty relationship with the Muslims a source of abasement.

368. Keller in his translation of Ibn Abi Ṭāhir, 46, tr. 21, interprets the q.s.m. of his text and that of Tabari here as qism, “begnüge dich mit dem Teile”; Rosenthal, The Muqaddimah, II, 149, interprets it as qasam, “be satisfied with an oath.”
369. From what follows, kharāj here seems to have the wide definition so as to include the jizyah, normally interpreted as “poll-tax,” concerning the common confusion of terminology here, see Bosworth, op. cit., 37, n. 2.
370. Ahl al-kufr min mu’āhadatihim, i.e., the “protected peoples” or Dhimmis.
and humiliation. Apportion it amongst the taxpayers with justice and fairness, and with equal treatment and universal applicability for all. Do not remove any part of the obligation to pay land-tax from any noble person just because of his nobility; nor from any rich person on account of his richness; nor from any of your secretaries or personal retainers. Do not require from anyone more than he can bear, and do not exact an amount which is in excess of the normal rate. Impose taxation on all the people in an equitable manner, for that is more likely to attach them to your interests and more certain to make the masses contented.

Know that, by your appointment as governor, you have been placed as a custodian of valuables, a watchman and a shepherd; the people in your sphere of administrative jurisdiction are only called “your flock” [ra’iyyataka] because you are their shepherd [rā’ihim] and their overseer. Take from them that which they hand over to you from their surplus income and means of subsistence, and expend it on things which will ensure their continued material well-being and welfare and which will provide for their burdens. Within the provinces under your control, appoint over the people officials of clear foresight and judgment, men who are well-tested and experienced in provincial government and who know when to show severity and when to show restraint [or: who know how to exercise statesmanship, siyāsah, and moderation]. Pay them adequate salaries, for this is one of the inescapable obligations laid upon you when you took up your governorship and when it was entrusted to your charge. Let no one distract or deflect you from this, for if you choose consciously to follow this path, and fulfill faithfully the attendant obligations, you will gain for yourself additional grace and favor.

371. Dhull wa-şaghāra, echoing Qur’ān, IX, 29/30, a phrase whose exact interpretation has been much discussed by recent scholars; see the views of Cahen, M. Bravmann and M.J. Kister in Arabica, IX (1962), 76–9, X (1963), 94–5, XI (1964), 272–8.
from your Lord and a favorable reputation within your own province; you will secure as a protection sincere advisers from amongst your people, and you will be helped in following a policy of amelioration. As a consequence, well-being [or: charitable works] will abound in your land and prosperity will be general in your territories. The land under your rule will burgeon with fertility, the yield from the land-tax will increase and your income in kind will be proportionately expanded.373 By this means, you will be able to strengthen the bonds linking your army to you, and you will bring contentment to the masses by distributing your personal largesse to them. In following these courses your statesmanship will be acclaimed and your justice regarded with satisfaction, even by your enemies. In all your affairs you will be characterized by justice and might, and you will have the equipment and armaments of war. Strive zealously in this, and let nothing come before it; [if you do this,] the successful outcome of your affairs will receive due praise, if God wills.

In every district of your governorship, you should appoint a trusted observer [amin]374 who will keep you informed of the activities of your local officials and will write to you regularly about their way of life and doings, in such a way that you will be, as it were, an eyewitness of every official's complete activities within his sphere of responsibility. If you wish to instruct an official to adopt a certain course of action, have due regard for all the consequences which you expect to follow from that. If you consider it to be a safe and wholesome course of action, and hope to find in it a useful defensive measure, wise counsel or benefit, then put it into practice. But if you find the con-

373. Or: your own personal properties/your wealth in general will become extensive, wa-tawaffarat amwâluka.
trary, renounce it, and refer the matter to far-sighted and prudent experts in the question; then make proper provision for putting it into effect. For it often happens that a man examines a certain course of action in his policy and finds it agreeable, because of his personal inclinations, and this accordingly strengthens his resolve and gratifies him; but if he neglects to examine the consequences, it may lead to his destruction or ruin his whole policy.

Employ resolution in all that you purpose to do and, after obtaining God's help, set about it with vigor. Seek to discover by prayer your Lord's will in everything which you undertake. See that you finish the day's stint of work and never leave it to finish the next day. Instead, give it your personal attention, because the morrow always has its own affairs and events, which will divert you from the work left over from the previous day. You must realize that once a day is over, it carries away with it everything which was done during that day; so, when you put off the work belonging to it, you find yourself burdened with two days' work, and this will keep you occupied until you are able to turn aside from it. When you get through each day's work on the same day, you keep your mind and body fresh and at the same time you strengthen the fabric of your rule.375

Look to those of noble lineage and gentle birth, and then to those concerning whom you are certain376 of the sincerity of their intentions, of the genuineness of their love for you, of their open manifestation of good counsel and their warm devotion to your rule. [When you are sure of this,] take them into your personal service and act kindly towards them. Take care of the interests of those members of good families [ahl al-buyūtāt] who have fallen on hard

375. This injunction to get through each day's work and not let unsolved problems pile up, is an echo of the injunction attributed to the Caliph 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb in a letter to the governor of Baṣrāh, Abū Mūsā al-'Ash'ārī, concerning the judge's duties; see R.B. Serjeant, "The Caliph 'Umar's letters to Abū Mūsā al-'Ash'ārī and Mu'āwiya," ISS, XXIX (1984), 69.

376. Following the reading of the Addenda et emendanda, p. DCCLXXI.
times; shoulder their burdens and improve their condition, so that they do not, in their distressed state, feel the touch of misfortune so keenly.

Devote yourself to looking after the affairs of the poor and destitute, those who are unable to bring their complaints of ill-treatment to you personally, and those of wretched estate who do not know how to set about claiming their rights. Ask about these people as discreetly as possible, appoint as agents, in this work of seeking out such oppressed persons, reliable people from among your subjects, and give them orders to raise before you their needs and conditions, in order that you may examine them and bring such relief as God may provide for their predicaments. Turn your attention to those who have suffered injuries and to their orphans and widows, and provide them with allowances from the state treasury, following the example of the Commander of the Faithful, may God exalt him, in showing compassion for them and in giving them financial subventions, so that God may thereby bring some alleviation into their daily lives and may by means of it bring you the spiritual food of His blessing and an increase in His favor. Give pensions from the state treasury to the blind, and give to those who know the Qur’ān text by heart or the greater part of it higher allowances than to others. Set up hospices where sick Muslims can find shelter, and appoint custodians for these places who will treat the patients with kindness and physicians who will cure their illnesses. Comply with their desires, provided that this does not lead to the state treasury being thereby squandered.

Know that people, even if they are given their due rights and the greater part of their desires, will not be satisfied with these and their minds will not be at peace unless they are able to present their needs to their rulers, in the hope of getting more attention and kinder treatment from them. The man who investigates closely the people’s affairs often becomes wearied by all the things which come before him, and the trouble and hardship which he undergoes in chasing them up often completely occupy his mind and
thoughts. The person who seeks after justice, and who recognizes his material advantages in this present life and the superiority of the reward which he will enjoy in the next one, is not like the person who sets his face towards that which will bring him closer to God and through it seeks His mercy.37

Allow people access to your person as much as possible, and show your face to them as often as you can. Order your guards to treat them peaceably; be humble towards them, and show your face of approval to them. When questioning them or speaking with them, be gentle, and grant them a share of your goodness and beneficence. Moreover, when you give, give in a generous and open-hearted manner, seeking to do a good action and to secure a future reward, and not so as to embarrass the recipient or remind him of it [in the hope of a gift or favor in return]; for a gift bestowed according to the first fashion will be regarded as a profitable transaction, if God wills.

Take careful note of everything which you observe in this present world, and consider the examples of your predecessors, the rulers and leaders of past centuries, and of nations [that have] now disappeared from the earth. Then in your affairs hold fast to God's command; keep yourself in the orbit of His love; let your actions be guided by His religious law and the examples laid down by His prophet and the successors, and maintain the supremacy of His faith and His Book. Avoid anything which departs from that or which contradicts it or which arouses God's ire. Be cognizant of the amount of taxation which your officials collect, and of that which they expend of it; do not amass unlawful wealth and do not spend wealth prodigally.

Spend a lot of time with the learned scholars ['ulamā']; seek their advice, and frequent their company. Your desire

377. I.e., the first person deserves a greater reward because he is seeking to enforce God's will, here on earth, and is not just seeking his personal salvation in isolation from the needs of this present world.

378. Following the reading of the Addenda et emendenda, p. DCCLXXI.
should be that of following the established practices of the faith and of putting them into action, and that of preferring [before all else] the noble and lofty aspects of affairs. The noblest person among all those who join your circle and act as your confidants should be the person who, when he discerns a fault in you, is not held back by awe of you from privately pointing out to you the defect and from telling you about the shortcoming which lies in that defect. Such persons as these are the sincerest of your intimates and supporters in giving disinterested advice.

Keep an eye on the officials at your court and on your secretaries. Allot to each of them a fixed time each day when they can bring you their official correspondence and any documents requiring the affixing of the ruler’s mark, and can acquaint you of the officials’ various requirements and of all the affairs of your provinces and your subjects. Then devote all your faculties—ears, eyes, understanding and intellect—to the affairs of that sort which they set before you; reflect and pore over it repeatedly. Finally, put into effect those courses which seem to you to be in accordance with good judgment and justice, and seek to know God’s will in them; but where they seem to be opposed to these criteria, put them off for further consideration and more enquiries.

Do not remind your subjects or anyone else, to whom you have granted a favor, about it [in expectation of a gift in return]; accept nothing from anyone except faithfulness, honest dealing and assistance to the Commander of the Faithful’s interests; do not grant any favor except on this basis.

Strive to understand this epistle of mine to you, study it at length, and always use it as a guide for your actions. In all your undertakings, ask God for help and seek to know His will, for God is with every good work of righteousness.

379. *Mu’amarah*, originally a financial term, sometimes with the modern meaning of “surcharge,” but one which became generalized for any file or inventory of documents requiring the ruler’s or governor’s signature; see Bosworth, op. cit., 126.
and with those who follow after it. Let your most important conduct and your best desire be what is pleasing to God and what brings order to His faith, strength and steadfastness to His people, and justice and righteousness both for the protected peoples and the community of the Muslims [al-dhimma wa-al-milla].

I myself will ask God to favor you with His aid, His help towards success, His right guidance and His safe keeping. Also, [I will ask Him] to grant you His favor and mercy through a bestowal of all His grace and generosity, so that He will make you the most fortunate of all your peers and contemporaries, the richest in possessions and the most elevated in reputation and power. Finally, [I will ask Him] to destroy your enemies, those who rise up against you and those who act wrongfully against you; to bring you prosperity from your subjects; and to keep Satan and his evil promptings away from you. As a result of this, your position will be exalted in power and might and successfulness; indeed, He is always near, always ready to answer.380

It is mentioned that when Tahir gave this charge to his son 'Abdallah, people struggled amongst themselves (to get a copy), wrote it out and studied it repeatedly. Its fame spread until it reached al-Ma'mün. He ordered a copy to be brought, and it was read out to him. He exclaimed after this, "Abū al-Ṭayyib has not mentioned anything of the matters concerning the faith, the present world, the conduct of public affairs, judgment, statecraft, the improvement of the realm and of the subjects, the safeguarding of the Muslim community, obedience to

the Caliphs and maintenance of the caliphate, without in fact dealing with them thoroughly, making recommendations about them and giving instructions [for their execution]. Al-Ma’mūn ordered that it should be copied out and sent to all the governors in the various districts ‘Abdallāh then set out to take up his official appointment; he modelled his conduct on that recommended in the epistle, followed its injunctions and acted in accordance with what he had been enjoined to do.

In this year, ‘Abdallāh b. Tāhir placed Ishaq b. Ibrahim (al-Mus‘abī) in charge of the two bridges and appointed Ishaq as his representative in the offices which his father Tāhir had [previously] made ‘Abdallāh himself his representative—the command of the guard at Baghdad and the collection of the tax revenues from there. This was at the time when he set off for Raqqah in order to combat Naṣr b. Shabath.

In this year, ‘Ubaydallāh b. al-Ḥasan, governor of the two Holy Cities, led the pilgrimage.

381. Supplying, with the text of Ibn Abī Tayfūr, 54, fīhī.
384. The old and new bridges over the Tigris at Baghdad, the former dating back to Sāsānīd times and the latter to al-Mansūr; see Le Strange, Baghdad, 60, 91–3; Lassner, Topography, 101, 277.
385. See Bosworth, op. cit., 45–6.
386. Khalīfah, Ta’rikh, II, 769; Azdī, 362.
The Events of the Year

207
(MAY 27, 822–MAY 15, 823)

The events taking place during this year included the rebellion of 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥimār b. 'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Umar b. 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib in the district of the 'Akk in the Yemen, summoning people in the name of The One Well-pleasing [to God] from the House of Muḥammad.

The Rebellion of 'Abd al-Rahmān

The reason for his rebellion was that the tax officials in the Yemen had behaved in an oppressive manner, so the local people gave their allegiance to this 'Abd al-Rahmān. When news of this reached al-Ma'mūn, he sent against him Dīnār b. 'Abdallāh with a powerful army, and sent with him a written promise guaranteeing 'Abd al-Rahmān's security. Dīnār b. 'Abdallāh arrived at the season of the pilgrimage and made the pilgrimage

387. The Banū 'Akk were an old-established South Arabian tribe, dwelling to the north of Zabid, according to Hamdānī; see EI² s.v. (W. Caskel). Five years before this, in 202 (817), the two tribes of 'Akk and A'shar had risen in revolt against al-Ma'mūn's governor in the Yemen, Ḥamdawayh b. 'Alī b. 'Isā b. Māḥān; see Geddes, 105–6.
himself. When he had accomplished this, he went on to the Yemen until he made contact with 'Abd al-Rahmān. He sent to him the guarantee of security from al-Ma'mūn; 'Abd al-Rahmān accepted this, coming into Dinār’s presence and clapping hands with him. Dinār went back with 'Abd al-Rahmān to al-Ma'mūn. At this point al-Ma'mūn forbade the Tālibids to enter his presence and ordered them to start wearing black garments. This was on Thursday, the twenty-ninth of Dhū al-Qa'dah [April 15, 823].

In this year, the death of Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn took place.

The Death of Tāhir b. al-Husayn

It is related from Muṭahhar b. Tāhir that the death of Dhū al-Yaminayn was the result of a fever and high temperature which attacked him and that he was found dead in his bed. It is also related that his two paternal uncles, ‘Ali b. Muṣ‘ab and the latter’s brother Aḥmad b. Muṣ‘ab, went to visit him in his sickness. They asked the servant how he was, at the point when the servant was performing the dawn worship. The servant replied that Tāhir was sleeping and had not yet awakened. ‘Ali and Aḥmad accordingly waited for a while, but when the dawn had unfolded itself fully and there was still no sign of any movement on Tāhir’s part at this time when he normally used to rise for the worship, they became disquieted about this and told the servant to wake him up. The latter replied, “I daren’t

---

388. Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 381 [with the date the twenty-eighth of Dhū al-Qa’dah]; Geddes, 106–7. The date the twenty-ninth of Dhū al-Qa’dah was actually a Wednesday.

389. The historical reports on Tāhir’s death show considerable divergences; see Barthold, Turkestan, 206–9; Rothstein, 161; Sourdé, “Les circonstances de la mort de Tāhir Ier,” 66–9; Bosworth, in Cambridge history of Iran, IV, 95.

390. This son of Tāhir is given the kunyah or patronymic of Abū Muḥammad in Ibn Abī Tāhir, 129, tr. 59.

391. Various explanations are given in the sources for Tāhir’s sobriquet of “the man with two right hands;” see Goldziher, “Ueber Dualtitel,” WZKM, XIII (1899), 324; Bosworth, op. cit., 92.

392. It had been this forebear, Muṣ‘ab b. Ruzayq al-Khuza‘i, and his brother Tālhah, who had founded the family’s fortunes by their rôle in the ‘Abbāsid revolution; see Bosworth, “The Tāhirids and Arabic culture,” 47–8; M. Kaabi, “Les origines Tāhirides dans la da’wa ‘abbāside,” Arabica, XIX (1972), 158–9.
do that." But they told him to knock at the door on their behalf so that they might enter. Then they went in and found him wrapped in a coverlet which he had tucked underneath himself and with which he had covered himself securely from head to feet. They touched him, but he did not move at all; so they uncovered his face and found him dead. They had no idea exactly when he had died, and none of his servants was aware of his time of death. They questioned the servant about what had happened to him and about last thing which he (the servant) had been aware of from him. He recounted that Tahir had performed the sunset and the final night worships, and then had wrapped himself up in his coverlet. The servant related that he had heard Tahir utter a few words in Persian, "dar marg niz mardi wayadh," meaning, "manly fortitude is necessary even in death."393

[1064] It is related from Kulthum b. Thabit b. Abi Sa‘d, whose patronymic was Abū Sa‘d,395 that he said: I was in charge of the intelligence and postal service (barid) in Khurasan, and the place where I usually sat each Friday was at the foot of the pulpit. In the year 207 (822/823), two years after Tahir b. al-Husayn had become governor, I was present at the Friday worship. Tahir ascended the pulpit, and then delivered the sermon (khutbah). When he came to mentioning the Caliph, he refrained from praying for him, and merely said, "O God, secure the welfare of the community of Muhammad as you have secured it for those who are your close supporters (awliya‘aka), and relieve them of the crushing burden of those who would oppress and band together against them by repairing the disorder of affairs, preventing the shedding of blood and restoring harmonious relations between people." Kulthum went on to relate: I said to myself, "I am going to be the first to be killed, for I cannot con-

393. The text has utruq lanā‘, Ibn Abī Tahir, 130, has, alternatively, tarriq lanā‘, "clear the way for us."
395. In Ibn Abī Tahir, 117, tr. 53, Kulthum is given the nisbah or gentilic of al-Nakha‘i and described as a mawlaw of Muḥammad b. Ḥmrān of Fūtaq (a village of the Marw oasis, see Yaqtū, Mu‘jam, IV, 279), who obtained for Kulthum the office of Ṣāhib al-Barid of Khurasan.
ceal this news.” Hence I went away, performed the ablutions prescribed before death, put on the waistcloth of those about to die and a robe, and threw a cloak over myself. I took off my official ‘Abbāsid black clothing, and wrote to al-Ma’mūn.

He continued: When Ṭāhir had performed the afternoon worship, he sent for me, but at that point he had some sort of attack in his eyelids and the interior corner of his eye, and fell down dead. He continued: Ṭalḥah b. Ṭāhir went forth and shouted, “Bring him back, bring him back!” —I having left—so they brought me back. He asked me, “Have you written a report about what happened [that is, about Ṭāhir’s act of rebelliousness]?” I retorted that I had. Then he said, “Write a message about his death,” and gave me five hundred thousand [dirhams] and two hundred sets of clothes. I then wrote a report about Ṭāhir’s death and Ṭalḥah’s assumption of command over the army.

He continued: There reached al-Ma’mūn the dispatch bag (kharīṭah) containing the letter announcing Ṭāhir’s renunciation of obedience in the morning. He summoned Ibn Abī Khalīd and told him, “Set out, and bring Ṭāhir back to me, just as you said you would and just as you guaranteed.” Ibn Abī Khalīd replied, “Let me stay here just this one night.” Al-Ma’-mūn swore, “Nay, upon my life, you shall only spend the night on the back of a mount!” Ibn Abī Khalīd kept on imploring him to relent, until al-Ma’mūn at last gave him permission to remain for one night. He continued: By night, the dispatch bag arrived bringing news of Ṭāhir’s death. Al-Ma’mūn summoned Ibn Abī Khalīd and told him, “Ṭāhir is dead; whom do you think [should be his successor]?” Ibn Abī Khalīd replied, “His son Ṭalḥah.” The Caliph said, “You have spoken correctly. Write out a diploma investing him with the governorship.” So he wrote it out. Ṭalḥah remained governor in Khurasan during al-Ma’mūn’s caliphate for seven years after Ṭāhir’s death, and then he himself died; al-Ma’mūn thereupon appointed ‘Abdal-lāh governor in Khurasan.396 The latter was at that time in

396. Ya’qūbi, Ta’rikh II, 557; ‘Uyūn, 364—5; Barthold, Turkestan, 208; Bosworth, in Cambridge history of Iran, IV, 98.
The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

charge of the military operations against Babāḵ. He established his base at Dinawar and sent out armies from there. The news of Talḥah's death reached al-Ma'mūn; he thereupon sent Yahyā b. Aktham with a message of condolences on his brother's death and hailing him with his appointment as governor of Khurasan, and he placed 'Alī b. Ḥishām in charge of the war against Bābak.

It is mentioned from al-'Abbās that he was present at one of al-Ma'mūn's sessions when the latter had just received the announcement of Tāḥir's death, and the Caliph exclaimed, "O [my] two hands and mouth! Praise to be God, who has sent Tāḥir on [to the next life] and kept us back!"

An account different from the one above has been mentioned in regard to Talḥah's appointment as governor of Khurasan after his father Tāḥir. According to what this account says, when Tāḥir died—this event taking place in Jumādā I (September–October 822)—the army rose up in an émeute and plundered some of his treasuries. The eunuch Sallām al-Abrash assumed leadership of them; he issued an order, and they were given six months' pay allowance. Al-Ma'mūn then entrusted Tāḥir's governorship to Talḥah, as the deputy of 'Abdallah b. Tāḥir. The point here was that, according to the people who give this variant account, al-Ma'mūn appointed 'Abdallah as governor after Tāḥir's death over the whole of Tāḥir's former area of responsibility. 'Abdallah was at that moment stationed at Raqqah engaged in the war with Naṣr b. Shabath. Al-Ma'mūn added Syria to his responsibilities, and sent him an investiture diploma for Khurasan and his father's (other) administrative...
responsibilities. 'Abdallāh then sent his brother Ṭalhah to Khurasan,402 and appointed as his deputy in the City of Peace Ishaq b. Ibrāhīm.403 Ṭalhah wrote to al-Ma'mūn in his brother's name. Al-Ma'mūn sent Ahmad b. Abī Khālid to Khurasan in order to take over Ṭalhah's responsibilities. Ahmad led an expedition into Transoxiana; he conquered Ushrūsanah and captured Kāwūs b. Khārākhuruh404 and his son al-Faḍl, and sent them both to al-Ma'mūn. Ṭalhah gave Ibn Abī Khalīd three million dirhams plus moveable objects excluding gold and silver ('urūq) amounting to one million [dirhams], and gave Ibrāhīm b. al-'Abbās, Ahmad b. Abī Khālid's secretary, five hundred thousand dirhams.405

In this year, prices rose high in Baghdad, Baṣrah and Kūfah, until the price of a ḥārūnī qafīz of wheat rose to forty dirhams and the price of a muljām qafīz of wheat to fifty.406

In this year, Mūsā b. Ḥafṣ was appointed governor of Ṭabaristān, Rūyān and Dunbāwand.407

In this year, Abū ʿĪsā b. al-Rashīd led the pilgrimage.408

---

402. Cf. above, and Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 131, tr. 60.
403. Ibid., 35, tr. 16. The accounts of Ṭāhir's death are particularly divergent over chronology; it may be that an interval of several weeks took place between Ṭāhir's act of rebelliousness and his actual death, cf. Sourdel, "Les circonstances de la mort de Ṭāhir I"., 68–9.
404. The father Khārākhuruh (for this Iranian name, see F. Justi, Iranisches Namenbuch, 170) had submitted to al-Faḍl b. Yaḥyā al-Barmakī in 178 (794), see Ṣabārī, III, 631; Kāwūs's other son Haydār was to enter 'Abbāsid service as the famous general al-Afšin, on whom see EI² s.v. (Barthold–Gibb).
406. Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 134, tr. 61; Azdī, 362; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kamaīl, VI, 384. For these measures of capacity, see Bosworth, "Abū 'Abdallāh al-Khwārazmī on the technical terms of the secretary's art," 148–50.
407. Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kamaīl, VI, 385; Rabino di Borgomale, "Les préfets du Califat au Ṭabaristān," 262. Rūyān was the westernmost district of Ṭabaristān, see Le Strange, Lands, 373–4, and Barthold, An historical geography of Iran, 233–4; and Dunbāwand was the highest peak of the Elburz chain, see Le Strange, ibid., 371, Schwarz, 755 ff., and EI² s.v. Damāwand (Streck).
Among the events taking place during this year was al-Hasan b. al-Husayn b. Mus'ab's move from Khurasan to Kirmān, where he then defied the government, and Ahmad b. Abī Khālid's expedition against him until he seized him and brought him to al-Ma'mūn, who then pardoned him.409

In this year, in Muharram (May–June 823), al-Ma'mūn appointed Muhammad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Makhzūmī as judge of 'Askar al-Mahdī (of Ruṣāfah).

In this year, the judge Muhammad b. Samā'ah asked to be relieved of his office; he was accordingly released from it and Ismā'īl b. Ḥammād b. Abī Ḥanīfah appointed in his stead.410

In this year, Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān was dismissed from the office of judge after he had only just been invested

409. Op. cit., VI, 386. The Tāhirīd al-Hasan b. al-Ḥusayn was the uncle of 'Abdallāh b. Ṭāḥir, and subsequently acted as deputy governor for the latter in Ṭabaristān; see Sa'id Nafisi, Ta'rīkh-i khāndān-i Ṭāhirī, I, 29–30, citing Ṣaḥīr al-Dīn Mar'ashi, Ta'rīkh-i Ṭabaristān u Rūyān u Māzandarān.

with it, in the same year, in Rabi’ I (July–August 823), and Bishr b. al-Walid al-Kindi was appointed to it. A certain poet has said:

O monarch, who proclaims the unity of his Lord, your judge Bishr b. al-Walid is an ass!

He rejects the legal testimony of the person who holds the faith of what the Book has spoken about and what the historical traditions have brought,

And he considers as a reliable legal witness the person who says that he is a shaykh who encompasses with his body the regions of the world [that is, a universal sage].

In Sha’ban (December 823–January 824), Mūsā b. Muhammad al-Makhlū’ (the son of the deposed Caliph al-ʾAmin) died, and in Dhu al-Qa’dah (March–April 824), al-Faḍl b. al-Rabi’ died.

In this year, Šāliḥ b. al-Rashīd led the pilgrimage.

---

412. Ibid. Mūsā had been his father al-ʾAmin’s choice as his first heir; see Abbott, 230–1.
Among the events taking place during this year was 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir's exertion of pressure on (or: his surrounding of) Naṣr b. Shabath, driving him into a tight corner so that he had to seek a guarantee of safety.\(^4\) It is mentioned from Ja'far b. Muḥammad al-'Āmirī that he said: Al-Ma'mūn said to Thūmāmah (b. Ashras), "Can't you point out to me a man from the people of the Jazirah with intelligence, eloquence and knowledge, who can transmit a message from me, which I will dispatch him with, to Naṣr b. Shabath?" He replied, "Certainly, O Commander of the Faithful, [there is] a certain man from the Banū 'Āmir called Ja'far b. Muḥammad." Al-Ma'mūn said, "Bring him to me!" Ja'far continued: So Thūmāmah summoned me and brought me into the Caliph's presence. He spoke to me at great length, and then commanded me to deliver these words to Naṣr b. Shabath. Ja'far continued: So I went to Naṣr, who was at that moment at Kafār 'Azūn in the neighborhood of

\(^4\) Uyūn, 365. For Naṣr's final efforts and surrender, see Vasiliev, Byzance et les Arabes, I, 91, and cf. Shaban, 52.
The Events of the Year 209

Sarūj, and passed on to him al-Ma'mūn's message. He showed himself submissive, but laid down certain conditions, including that he should not be required to step on any of the Caliph's carpets (as a sign of supplication and submission).

Ja'far continued: I went back to al-Ma'mūn and gave him the reply. He answered, "By God, I'll never agree to these stipulations of his, even if I reach the point of having to sell my shirt in order to persuade him to step on my carpet! What's the matter with him, shrinking from us in fear?"

Ja'far continued: I said, "Because of his offences and all that he has perpetrated up till now." Al-Ma'mūn replied, "Do you imagine that he has committed greater offences, in my sight, than al-Fadl b. al-Rabi' and 'Isa b. Abi Khālid? Do you know what al-Fadl did to me? He appropriated my commanders, my troops, my weapons and everything which my father had bequeathed to me, and went off with them to Muḥammad [al-ʿAmin], leaving me alone and isolated at Marw! He betrayed me, and he turned my brother against me until those events involving him took place as they did. That struck me more harshly than anything else! Do you know what 'Isa b. Abi Khālid did to me? He drove my representative out of my own city and the city of my forefathers, went off with my receipts from the land-tax and my revenues from the cultivators of the conquered lands, razed my houses to the ground, set up Ibrāhim as Caliph in place of me and hailed him with my rightful title!"

Ja'far continued: I said, "O Commander of the Faithful, will you allow me to speak, so that I may say something apposite?" He replied, "Speak on!" I said, "Al-Fadl b. al-Rabi' was your foster-brother and your close associate (mawlā); the status of his forebears was the same as your, and the status of your forebears the same as his; you can make a claim on him in vari-

---

415. The village of Kafar 'Azūn is mentioned later in accounts of Byzantine-Arab warfare in this neighborhood, see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, IV, 470, and E. Honigmann, Die Ostgrenze des byzantinischen Reiches, 108; Sarūj was a town of the Jazirah to the west of Ḥarrān and Edessa, see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, III, 216–17, and Le Strange, Lands, 108.

416. Conjectural restoration of the text here by the editor.
ous ways, all of which connect you with him. As for 'Isa b. Abi Khālid, he is a man who comes from the supporters of your dynasty [the 'Abbāsids]; his precedence [sābiqah]417 and the precedence of his forebears, all this constitutes a claim on him through that. Whereas this fellow [Naṣr] has never had any share of power on the basis of which he might achieve eminence, nor have any of his forebears; these last merely came from the troops of the Umayyads.” Al-Ma’mun answered, “If what you say is indeed the case, what about all the rancor and ire which is involved? I shall never leave him alone until he steps on my carpet.”

Ja’far continued: I went back to Naṣr and told him all that. He continued: He shouted loudly for his horses, and they wheeled around. Then he said, “Shame on him! He has not the strength to subdue four hundred frogs on his own doorstep [literally: under his own wing]”—he was referring to the Zuṭṭ—“so can he overcome the assembled cohorts of swift horses of the Arabs?”418.

Naṣr b. Shabath Seeks a Guarantee of Safety

It is mentioned that when ‘Abdallāh b. Tāhir brought his full force to bear on Naṣr in battle and constricted him, and when his request for a guarantee of safety came (to ‘Abdallāh), the latter granted it and then moved out of his military camp to Raqqah in the year 209 (824/5). Naṣr now went to ‘Abdallāh b. Tāhir.419 Previous to this, after ‘Abdallāh had defeated Naṣr’s armies, al-Ma’mūn had written a letter to Naṣr summoning him to obedience and the abandonment of his rebellion. However, Naṣr had rejected this. ‘Abdallāh himself then wrote to Naṣr. The text of al-Ma’mūn’s letter to Naṣr—indited by ‘Amr b. Mas’adah—was as follows:

417. The repeated use here of the term sābiqah obviously echoes its importance in earliest Islam in regard to pre-eminence and a preferential rôle in the new ummah or Islamic community.
418. Ibn Abi Tahir, 141–3, tr. 64–5.
O Naṣr b. Shabath, you know about obedience to authority, the mightiness of its shade and the sweet smell of its pasturage; and [on the other hand] the regretfulness and deprivation which result from rejecting this obedience. Even though God may grant you a long respite, He only grants a lengthy period of enjoyment of life in the case of a person whom He wishes to make a publicly-known proof, so that God's warning examples may strike home to the people concerned, according to the degree of their persistence [in such courses] and their merit-ing [eventual retribution]. I have deemed it good to give you due warning and to open your eyes, because I hope that what I am writing to you may have an effect on you. For truth is indeed truth, and falsity is falsity, and speech can only be judged according to the times and places of its enunciation [makhārijīhī] and by those who are concerned with it [that is, have uttered it]. None of the Commander of the Faithful's governors has treated you in a manner more beneficial to your material wealth, your faith and your own person, nor has anyone been more solicitous of drawing you back and rescuing you from your errors than myself.

O Naṣr, by virtue of what first or last reason, or by what means or by what power, have you rebelled against the Commander of the Faithful? Do you seize his property and arrogate to yourself the authority which God has conferred on him, excluding him from it, and expect to remain in a state of security, with peace of mind, quietness, peaceableness and calm? By Him who knows both what is hidden and what is open, if you do not return to obedience, submitting fully to it, you will certainly experience the unpleasantness of retribution, and I shall certainly then concentrate my attention on you before everything else; for if the horns of Satan are not cut off, they are a source of strife and great corruption in the earth. Moreover, I shall certainly, with the supporters of the royal power [or: of the dynasty] who are in my forces, press down on the backs of the necks of the dregs of your followers, those who have
come to you in a confused band from the near and distant corners of the lands, with their scum and worst elements, those thieves and robbers who have rallied to your side and those whom their land has spewed forth or whose tribe has expelled them because of their bad reputation within it. He who has delivered a warning is excused [from any of its consequences]! Farewell!\(^{420}\)

According to what has been mentioned, ʿAbdallāh b. Ṭāhir remained engaged in fighting Naṣr b. Shabath for five years, until Naṣr sought a guarantee of safety. ʿAbdallāh then wrote to al-Maʿmūn informing him that he had driven Naṣr into a tight corner and was tightening the screws on him, that he had killed the leaders in his entourage and that Naṣr had sought refuge in a guarantee of safety and had asked for this. Al-Maʿmūn ordered ʿAbdallāh to write a letter to Naṣr promising this guarantee. So he wrote our a guarantee of safety for him, with the following text:

Vigorous exertion in the cause of what is right is God's decisive proof and one which is linked with success, and conducting one's cause with justice is a call to God with which is connected strength. The one who continually strives for what is right and who conducts his cause with justice is always seeking to open the gates of succor and always calling for the means of firm control, until God gives the victory—and He is the best of those who give victory—and establishes people in firm control—and He is the best of those who establish people in firm control. With regard to the course which you have been following, you must inevitably fall into one of three classes: [that of] the one who seeks religion; [that of] the one who desires the present world; or [that of] the one who rushes forward recklessly, seeking dominance through tyrannical behavior.

Now if you are following the way of religion in your

\(^{420}\) Ibn Abi Ṭāhir, 137–8, tr. 63.
conduct, then make this clear to the Commander of the Faithful, who will [immediately] seize the opportunity to accept this, if it is really genuine; for by my life, his supreme intention and farthest aim is to incline towards what is right, whenever he inclines [towards something], and to incline away, with what is just, whenever he inclines away [that is, to make affirmative or negative decisions, according to what is right or just, in their appropriate places]. If you are aiming to follow the way of the present world, then inform the Commander of the Faithful about your aim and about the state of affairs under which you claim an entitlement to it. If you establish a deserving claim to it and he is able to grant that, then he will do it for you; for by my life, he does not permit any person to be debarred from what he justly deserves, however great this may be. But if you are rushing forward through life recklessly, then God will relieve the Commander of the Faithful of the burden of you and will speedily bring that about, just as He speedily disposed of the burden of other people who followed the same way as you, who were stronger in resources, with more numerous armies, and extensively endowed with manpower, numbers and support than you; He drove them towards the places where those who have been found wanting are left prostrated, and He brought down on them the calamities merited by those behaving tyrannically. The Commander of the Faithful seals his letter with the declaration of faith that there is no god but God, the Unique One who is without associate, and that Muhammad is His servant and messenger. His guarantee to you, according to his religion and his protection, is the pardoning of your previous misdeeds and earlier crimes and your being established in the positions of power and exaltedness which you merit, if you come forward and respond [to his invitation], if God wills. Farewell!  

When Naṣr b. Shabath went forth to 'Abdallāh b. Ṭāhir with the guarantee of safety, he ('Abdallāh) pulled down and destroyed Kaysūm.\(^{422}\)

In this year, al-Ma'mūn appointed Sadaqah b. 'Ali, known as Zurayq,\(^{423}\) as governor of Armenia and Azerbaijan, with responsibility for the war against Bābak; Sadaqah invited Aḥmad b. al-Junayd b. Farzandi al-Iskāfi to take charge of the actual military operations against Bābak. Aḥmad b. al-Junayd b. Farzandi returned to Baghdad and then came back to (fight) the Khurramiyah, but Bābak took him captive. The Caliph then appointed Ibrāhīm b. al-Layth b. al-Faḍl al-Tujibī\(^{424}\) over Azerbaijan.\(^{425}\)

[1073]

In this year, Sāliḥ b. al-'Abbās b. Muhammad b. 'Ali (b. 'Abdallāh b. al-'Abbās), the governor of Mecca, led the pilgrimage.\(^{426}\)

In this year, there died Michael son of George, emperor of Byzantium, who had reigned for nine years. The Byzantines appointed as ruler over themselves Theophilus son of Michael.\(^{427}\)

---

\(^{422}\) Ya'qūbi, Ta'rikh, II, 560; Azdi, 366; Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, VI, 390; Rothstein, 163. Kaysūm lay in the upper Euphrates region, to the southwest of Adiyaman, and is the modern Keysun, Greek Kaisou; see Le Strange, Lands, 123; Honigmann, 62.


\(^{424}\) Editor's conjecture for this nisbah, written without dots; but we do not otherwise know of the presence of members of Tujib of Kindah in Azerbaijan; Dr. Hinds accordingly suggests the nisbah al-Yahmadi (a subdivision of the Azd) as a conceivable reading. Cf. also Azdi, 366.

\(^{425}\) Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, VI, 390.

\(^{426}\) Khalīfah, Ta'rikh, II, 772; Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, loc. cit.

\(^{427}\) As with Tabari's previous recording of the death of Leo V four years too early (above, 45), Tabari is some five years premature here; Michael II, founder of the Amorian line of emperors, actually died in 829, when his son Theophilus succeeded him. See Vasiliev, Byzance et les Arabes, I, 272, 280-1; Anastos, in Cambridge medieval history. IV. The Byzantine empire, I, 100-2.
The
Events of the Year

210
(April 24, 825—April 12, 826)

Among the events taking place during this year was the arrival at Baghdad of Naṣr b. Shabath, whom ʿAbdallāh b. Tāhir sent to al-Maʿmūn. He entered the city on Monday, the seventh of Șafar, 21028 (May 30, 825); he was lodged in the City of Abū Jaʿfar (the Round City), with guards appointed to watch over him.229

In this year, al-Maʿmūn gained the upper hand over Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. ʿAbd al-Wahhāb b. Ibrāhīm al-Imām, who was known as Ibn ʿAʾishah,430 Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm al-İfrīqi, Mālik b. Shāhī,431 Faraj al-Baghwārī432 and their confederates who had been active in securing allegiance to Ibrāhīm b. al-

228. Actually a Tuesday.
229. Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 143, tr. 65.
230. Yaʿqūbī, Taʾrīkh, II, 558–9, gives his full nasab, or lineage, back to al-ʿAbbās through eight generations.
231. Ibid., II, 559, adds Mālik’s nisbah as al-Nīffārī.
232. Reading uncertain, and Samʿānī in his Kitāb al-Ansāb does not mention such a nisbah; perhaps we should read al-Baghwārī, see ibid. [Hyderabad], II, 273–6.
The person who provided al-Ma'mūn with information about them and about what they were plotting was 'Imrān al-Qatrābulli. According to what is mentioned, al-Ma'mūn sent officers to arrest them on Saturday, the fifth of Šafar, 210 (May 28, 825). Al-Ma'mūn ordered Ibrāhim Ibn al-'A'ishah to be left (pinioned) in the sun for three days at the gateway of his (al-Ma'mūn's) palace; on Tuesday he had him flogged and then jailed him in the Maṭbaq (or: Muṭbaq) prison. Then he had Mālik b. Shāhi and his confederates flogged. They wrote down for al-Ma'mūn the names of all those—commanders, troops and other persons—who had entered into the conspiracy with them. Al-Ma'mūn did not, however, make a move towards any of those who had been delated, since he was not sure that the conspirators were not accusing innocent persons. The conspirators had agreed among themselves that they would cut the bridge when the troops had gone forth to meet Naṣr b. Shabath. But they were delated and then arrested. After this, Naṣr b. Shabath entered Baghdad alone, none of the troops being sent to escort him. First of all, he was lodged with Ishaq b. Ibrāhim, and subsequently transferred to the city of Abū Ja'far.

Ibrāhim al-Mahdi Is Arrested

In this year, during the night of Sunday [the night of Saturday-Sunday], the sixteenth of Rabi' II (August 5–6, 825), Ibrāhim b. al-Mahdi was arrested, veiled and dressed like a woman and in the company of two women. A black negro guard stopped
him during the night and demanded, "Who are you, and where are you going at this hour?" According to what is mentioned, Ibrāhīm offered him a ruby ring of high value from his own finger, if he would let them pass and cease questioning them. When the guard looked at the ring, he became suspicious about them and said to himself, "This ring belongs to a man of high social status." Hence, he took them along to the commander of the guard post, and the latter ordered them to unveil their faces. Ibrāhīm refused, but the commander pulled it away, and Ibrāhīm's beard was revealed. He took him to the commandant of the bridge, who recognised him and took him to al-Ma'mūn's gate. The Caliph was informed, and ordered him to be kept in the palace. On the Sunday morning, he was set down in al-Ma'mūn's palace so that the Hāshimites, the commanders and the troops might gaze on him. They put the veil which he had been wearing round his neck and the mantle in which he had been wrapped across his breast, so that people might see him and know in what guise he had been taken. When it was Thursday, al-Ma'mūn had him transferred to Ahmad b. Abi Khālid's house and had him imprisoned in his custody. Then al-Ma'mūn had him brought forth to accompany himself when he went to visit al-Ḥasan b. Sahl at Wāsīt. People said that al-Ḥasan spoke to the Caliph about him, and al-Ma'mūn showed his favor towards Ibrāhīm, released him and sent him back to Ahmad b. Abi Khālid. Along with Ibrāhīm, al-Ma'mūn sent Ibn Yahyā b. Mu'ādh and Khālid b. Yazīd b. Mazyad to watch over him, except that he was allowed plenty of living space there, having his mother and family with him; he used to ride to al-Ma'mūn's palace with these (two) persons guarding him as an escort.

In this year, al-Ma'mūn had Ibn 'Ā'ishah killed and gibbeted.

439. One might have here, with the same meaning, the lectio facilior of fa-jadhabahu.
441. Governor of Kūfah and then of Armenia, and member of an Arab family prominent under the early 'Abbāsids; from his family there later sprang the Yazidi line of Shirwān-Shāhs, see Crone, 169–70; V. Minorsky, A history of Sharvān and Darband, 22 ff., 116–17.
Al-Ma'mūn Has Ibn 'Ā'ishah Killed

The reason for this was that al-Ma'mūn consigned to prison Ibn 'Ā'ishah, Muḥammad b. Ḫirām al-Ḫirīqī, two men from the city mobsters called Abū Mīṣmār and 'Ammār respectively, Faraj al-Baghwārī, Mālik b. Shāhī and also a group of those who had conspired with them to give allegiance to Ḫirām b. al-Mahdī, after they had been flogged, with the exception of 'Ammār, who was given a guarantee of immunity because he had denounced the plans of the group in the Maṭbaq prison. One of the prisoners in the Maṭbaq reported that the prisoners intended to stir up a riot and bore a way through the walls of the jail. The day before, they had barricaded the door of the prison from the inside and had prevented anyone from getting access in to them. When night fell and people heard the commotion they were making, the news reached al-Ma'mūn. He rode there in person immediately, had these four men brought forth and had them beheaded while pinioned. Ibn 'Ā'ishah hurled savage insults at al-Ma'mūn. Next morning, their corpses were gibbet on the lower bridge. On the Wednesday morning, Ḫirām Ibn al-'A'ishah's body was taken down; it was en-shrouded, prayers were said over it and it was buried in the cemetery of Quraysh. Ibn al-Ḫirīqī's body was taken down and buried in the cemetery of al-Khayzūrān, but the rest were left there."

It is mentioned that when Ḫirām b. al-Mahdī was captured, he was taken along to the palace of Abū Iṣḥāq b. al-Rashīd [the later Caliph al-Mu'tasim] at a time when Abū Iṣḥāq himself was with al-Ma'mūn. So Ḫirām was borne along, mounted behind Faraj al-Turki. When he was brought into al-Ma'mūn's presence, the latter said to him, "So we meet again, O Ḫirām!" Ḫirām said, "O Commander of the Faithful, the

443. On the upper West Side of the city, according to al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādī, see Le Strange, Baghdad, 158, 193–4, and Lassner, Topography, 111, 285–6, who suggests that the name was also used for the cemetery of al-Khayzūrān on the East Side, see ibid., 114, 287.

444. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 178–9, 206, tr. 80–1, 94; Yaʾqūbī, Taʾrīkh, II, 558–9; Masʿūdī, Murūj, VII, 78 = ed. Pellat, § 2763; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 391–2. For the whole episode of Ibn 'Ā'ishah, see Barbier de Meynard, 251–3; Levy, A Baghdad chronicle, 95.
kinsman to whom it falls to exact vengeance [wali al-tha’r] is the one who is made to judge in respect of [the nature of] the retaliation, but forgiveness is nearer to piety. God has set you above every sinner, just as He has placed every sinner below you. If you punish, then it is only in accordance with your right; but if you grant pardon, then it comes from your own graciousness.” Al-Ma’mūn replied, “Nay, I pardon you, O Ibrāhīm!” Then Ibrāhīm glorified God and fell down in prostration. It is said that Ibrāhīm wrote these words to al-Ma’mūn while he was still in hiding, and al-Ma’mūn made a note in the margin of his copy to the effect that “power drives away anger; contrition implies repentance; and between the two is God’s forgiveness, and this is the greatest thing we can ask of Him.”

Ibrāhīm recited, praising al-Ma’mūn:

O best of those after the Messenger [of God] whom a Yamani she-camel conveys gently along
towards him who is in despair or who is hopeful of bounty!

And [O] most pious of those who worship God with godly fear
and in earnestness, and most eloquent one of those who
proclaim clearly-manifest truth!

The honey of the mountain tops, so long as men give you obe-
dience; but if you are aroused [by opposition],
then you are the colocynth, mingled with deadly poison!

445. Qur’an, II, 238.
446. The exact meaning of this difficult passage is not certain, but the gen-
eral idea seems to be that the person who neglects his obligations lays himself
open to the vicissitudes of fate. The text of Ibn Abi Tāhir, 184, has al-rajā’,
“hope,” for al-shaqā’, “wretchedness,” and Barbier de Meynard and Pavet de
Courteille translate this passage in Mas‘ūdī [see next note] as “L’homme . . .
plein d’une confiance aveugle dans les moyens de révolte qui s’offrent à lui, se
livre tout entier aux vicissitudes de la destinée.”
448. Ibn Abi Tāhir, 184, tr. 83; Ya’qūbī, Ta’rīkh II, 558; Azdi, 369.
449. An alternative reading for the text’s ‘ayn”, “in earnestness, in reality,”
might be ghayb”, “without seeing Him directly.”
The ever-wakeful one, the one who remains watchful;
he who remains alert during the periods of sleep of the
slumbering night does not have to fear any foe!

People's hearts are filled with awe of you,
and you continue protecting them with a compassionate
heart.

May my father, my mother and their sons be your ransom,
against all calamities and vicissitudes which may arise!

How pleasant is the place in which you have set me down as a
homeland,
and how sweet is its herbage for the one seeking pasture!
[that is, how pleasant is life for the subjects in your land].

You have become established as an exponent of [literally: brother to] righteous deeds and godly fear,
and a tender father to the humble, destitute person

May my life be your ransom! For my excuses go astray,
and I take refuge from you in the bountifulness of ample beneficence,

In hope of your grace; for bountiful actions are an innate qual-
ity [of yours],
which have elevated your character [literally: building] to
a lofty place.

For you have lavished outstandingly generous deeds on such a
scale
that the widest of hearts [literally: souls] are too narrow to
be able to bestow its like,

And you have pardoned a person [that is, himself] with a par-
don such as never before been known for such a deed
and [for which] no intercessor has ever pleaded before you
previously,
Were it not that loftiness of character recoils from vengeance after your strong arms have seized a humiliated and abased one.

Then you have shown compassion on children, like the sand-grouse's young, and on the lamentations of a woman past her youth and not yet married, [with a sound] like the [release of an] archer's bow.450

You have inclined to me with affection, out of a bond of kinship, just as the bone of one limping from a broken limb heals together again after being broken for a second time.

God knows what I am saying, for it is indeed the solemnest oath which a true believer, who inclines in worship, can make,

[That] I never became a rebel against you, even when resources and allurements of the erring ones dragged me along, without retaining the inner intention of remaining obedient,

Until when the cords of my wretched state were suspended, near to death, over the dark abyss of destruction, a confused and anguished one,

I did not know that a crime like mine could be forgiven, so I halted there in order to ascertain what mode of death was to strike me down.

The piety of the Imâm, the one mighty yet full of humility, has given back life to me, after it had gone.

450. Barbier de Meynard, 259, translates, “d'une jeune fille gémissante que la douleur avait courbée comme un arc,” but the comparison of lamentation with the twanging sound made by bows is not infrequent in ancient Arabic poetry.
May He who has appointed you to the position of rulership grant you life for the longest possible period, and may He strike your enemy with an incisive blade in the vein of the heart!

How many benefits from you, which my heart [literally: soul] has been unable to recount [or: did not mention] to me when I saw myself disappointed in my desires,

Have you conferred on me as an act of pardon to me and as an act of grace, hence I have given thanks to one who offers favors for the noblest of doers,

Except that it was a small thing when you granted it to me, but it is a great deal as far as I was concerned, which will never be lost.

If you are generous to me over it [the act of pardoning], well, such liberality is only fitting for you; and if you withhold it, well, you are the most just of those who withhold [benefits].

The one who allotted noble characteristics gathered them all up in the loins of Adam for the seventh Imām [that is, for al-Ma'mūn, the seventh 'Abbāsid Caliph].

The One who controls people's affairs has gathered together hearts around you, and your cloak has gathered together all goodness which brings [men] together.

451. Following the reading al-fadā'il of Ibn Abī Tāhir, the Kitāb al-Aghānī, Azdí and Ibn al-Athīr rather than Tabārī's al-khilāfa, the former one being in fact indicated in the editor's n. i as preferable.

452. Three of these last verses are given in Ibn Abī Tāhir, 204, tr. 93, and, apparently from there, in Azdí, 371, and four are given in Mas'ūdi, Murūj, VII, 64 = ed. Pellat, § 2751.
The Events of the Year 210

It is mentioned that, when İbrahim recited this ode to al-Ma‘mûn, the latter exclaimed, “I can only say what Joseph said to his brothers,” \[1081\] “There is no reproach upon you today; God will forgive you, and He is the most merciful of those showing mercy.”

In this year, in the month of Ramadan (December 825–January 826), al-Ma‘mûn consummated his marriage with Bûrân, the daughter of al-Hasan b. Sahl.

**Al-Ma‘mûn’s Marriage with Bûrân**

It is mentioned that when al-Ma‘mûn proceeded to Fam al-Šîlî to al-Hasan b. Sahl’s military encampment, he took with him İbrahim b. al-Mahdî. Setting off for the ceremony there for the consummation of his marriage with Bûrân, al-Ma‘mûn left Baghdad in a skiff (zawraq), \[455\] and sailed until he anchored at al-Hasan’s gate. Al-‘Abbâs b. al-Ma‘mûn had preceded his father, travelling on a mount, and al-Hasan met him outside his military encampment in a place which had been specially chosen for him on the banks of the Tigris where a pavilion had been erected for him. When al-‘Abbâs saw him, he bent his leg (over the saddle) in order to dismount, but al-Hasan adjured him not to do so. Then when he had straightened it, al-Hasan lifted his own leg in order to dismount, but al-‘Abbâs exclaimed, “By the Commander of the Faithful’s rights, don’t get down!” whereupon al-Hasan embraced him while still mounted. Then he ordered that al-‘Abbâs’s riding beast should be given precedence before him, and the two of them entered al-Hasan’s house together. Al-Ma‘mûn arrived at the time of the evening worship, this being in Ramadan 210 (December

---

453. Qur‘ân, XII, 92.
454. Ibn Abi Ṭâhir, 186–8, tr. 84–5, giving twenty-nine verses of the poem, as opposed to Tabari’s twenty-seven, and with three of them further repeated, see the previous note; Isfahân, Aghâni, IX, 60, giving seventeen verses; Mas‘ûdi, Murûj, loc. cit.; ‘Uyûn, 366–7; Ibn al-Athîr, al-Kâmîl, IV, 392–5; Barbier de Meynard, 257–60.
825—January 826). He, al-Hasan and al-‘Abbās broke their fast, while Dinār b. ‘Abdallāh was still standing [in attendance on them], until they had finished the meal and had washed their hands. Al-Ma’mūn then called for some wine; a golden goblet was brought in and the wine poured into it. Al-Ma’mūn drank from it, and then held out his hand with the goblet containing wine to al-Hasan. Al-Hasan held back from it, since he had never drunk wine before then. Dinār b. ‘Abdallāh made a discreet sign to al-Hasan, and al-Hasan said to the Caliph, "O Commander of the Faithful, I am drinking it with your permission and at your command!" Al-Ma’mūn told him, "If this were not my command, I would not hold out my hand to you!" So al-Hasan took the goblet and drank from it.456

On the second night, he brought together [in marriage] Muhammad b. al-Hasan b. Sahl and al-‘Abbāsah, daughter of al-Faḍl Dhū al-Ri‘āsatayn.457 On the third night, he consummated his marriage with Burīn, who had with her [during the preceding preparations and festivities] Ḥamdūnāh,458 Umm Ja‘far459 and her grandmother. When al-Ma’mūn sat down with her, her grandmother scattered over her a thousand pearls which were on a golden platter. Al-Ma’mūn ordered them to be collected up and asked her how many pearls there were. She replied, "A thousand." He ordered them to be counted, and ten were missing. He said, "Whoever has taken them must give them back." They said, "[It was] Husayn Zujlah."460 He commanded him to return them, but Husayn protested, "O Commander of the Faithful, the pearls were only scattered so that we might take them [or: were not the pearls scattered just so that we might take them?1] Al-Ma’mūn insisted, "Give them back, and I will give you their equivalent." So Husayn returned them. Al-Ma’-

456. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 206–7, tr. 94.
460. Keller, Ibn Abī Tāhir, tr. 95, vocalizes Zujlah.
mūn placed all the pearls together in the vessel, as they had originally been, and they were placed in her bosom. He said, "This is your wedding present, and now, ask me for any of your requests." However, she remained silent. Her grandmother said to her, "Speak to your lord and ask him for your requests, since he has commanded you to do so." Hence she asked him to show his favor to Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdi. He replied, "I grant this." She also asked for Umm Ja’far to go on the pilgrimage, and this he granted also. Al-Ma’mūn consummated his union with her that night, and a candle of ambergris, weighing forty mānns (3.25 kg.), in a golden vessel, was lit. Al-Ma’mūn criticized them for that, saying that it was an act of extravagance.

The next morning, he sent for Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdi, and he appeared walking from the banks of the Tigris, wearing a fur-lined robe made from cloth with a silk thread warp (mubaṭṭanah mulḥam) and with a turban round his head, until he entered (the Caliph’s abode). When the curtain was removed from before al-Ma’mūn, Ibrāhīm threw himself on the ground. Al-Ma’mūn cried out, "O my uncle, do not worry any more!" So Ibrāhīm came forward, greeted him in the fashion appropriate to caliphs, kissed his hand and recited his (own) poetry. Al-Ma’mūn called for robes of honor and presented him with a second robe; he summoned a mount for him and girded him with a sword. Ibrāhīm then went out, greeted the assembled people and was escorted back to his place.

It is mentioned that al-Ma’mūn stayed with al-Ḥasan b. Sahl for seventeen days, and all the requirements, each day, for the Caliph and for the whole of his retinue, were taken care of (by

---

461. Abbott, 235, notes that al-Ma’mūn may have discouraged his stepmother from revisiting the scenes in the Hijaz of her philanthropic activities of previous years.
462. This was a special heirloom of the royal harem, formerly the property of the wives of the Umayyad Caliphs ‘Abd al-Malik and ‘Hishām; see Abbott, 12, 234.
464. Cf. R. Dozy, Supplément aux dictionnaires arabes, II, 522a. Mulḥam cloth was a speciality of Marw.
465. Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 209, tr. 95.
al-Hasan's munificence). Al-Hasan also presented robes of honor to the commanders, according to their ranks, gave them mounts and rewarded them with presents. The total sum expended on them was fifty million dirhams. The narrator says: When he was about to depart, al-Ma'mun ordered Ghassân b. 'Abbâd (al-Hasan's cousin) to hand over to al-Hasan ten million (dirhams) from the taxation of Fârs, and he granted Silh to him as an assignment of land. This sum was brought to him on the spot, and was laid out (or: was counted out) in Ghassân b. 'Abbâd's presence. Al-Hasan then sat down and divided it up among his commanders, his companions, his retinue and his servants. When al-Ma'mun departed, al-Hasan accompanied him (for the first part of his journey) and then returned to Fam al-Sîlh.

It is mentioned from Ahmad b. al-Hasan b. Sahî, who said that his family used to talk about how al-Hasan b. Sahî wrote out pieces of paper with the names of his estates on them and scattered them among his commanders and among the Hashimites, and whoever got hold of one of these pieces of paper with the name of an estate written on it, sent (to there) and took possession of it.

It is mentioned from Abû al-Hasan 'Alî b. al-Ḥusayn b. 'Abd al-A'la al-Katîb, who said that al-Hasan b. Sahî spoke to him one day about various things relating to Umm Ja'far, and described the weightiness of her intelligence and understanding. Then al-Hasan said: Al-Ma'mun questioned her one day at Fam al-Sîlh, when he came to visit us, regarding how much the expenditure on Bûrân's festivities had amounted to, and he questioned Ḥamdûnâh bt. Ghâdiḍ about the amount which she had spent on that affair. The narrator (al-Hasan b. Sahî) continued: Ḥamdûnâh replied, "I spent twenty-five million [dirhams]!"

The narrator continued: Umm Ja'far then exclaimed, "You
The Events of the Year 210

didn’t do anything at all! I spent between thirty-five and thirty-seven million dirhams!” The narrator continued: We prepared for al-Ma’mūn two candles of ambergris. He continued: Al-Ma’mūn consummated his marriage with Būrān by night, and the two candles were lit in his presence. But they smoked badly, so that he said, “Take them away, the smoke is bothering us, and bring ordinary [wax] candles.” The narrator continued: That day, Umm Ja’far gave her as a wedding present Silh. He continued: This was how Silh reverted to my possession. I had owned it previously. Then one day, Ḥumayd al-Ṭūsī came into my presence and recited to me four verses of poetry in which he eulogized Dhū al-Ri’āsatayn (al-Ḥasan’s brother al-Faḍl b. Sahl). I said to him, “We will pass on the verses to Dhū al-Ri’āsatayn on your behalf, and I myself will make you a grant of Silh as an interim measure until you get your full reward directly from him.” Thus I made him a grant of Silh. Then al-Ma’mūn gave it to Umm Ja’far, and she gave it as a wedding present to Būrān.

‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn relates that al-Ḥasan b. Sahl used not to have the curtains taken away from round him, nor were the candles removed from his presence, until the sun rose and he could distinguish it clearly when he looked at it. Also, he was superstitious and believed in omens (kāna mutaṭayyiran). He used to like people to say to him, when someone came into his presence, “We have left happiness and enjoyment behind;” and he used to dislike being told about a funeral bier or someone’s death.

The narrator (‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn) continued: I went into his presence one day, and someone had told him that ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn (the narrator) had sent his son al-Ḥasan to the Qur’ān school that day. He continued: He expressed his felicitations to me, and I went away and found in my house a gift of twenty

470. I.e., we are awe-stricken and feel completely at his mercy.
471. The most natural referent of the pronoun would be al-Ḥasan b. Sahl, mentioned immediately previously by name; Keller, however, takes it in Ibn Abī Ṭāhir’s text—as ambiguous as Ṭābarī’s—as referring to the Caliph al-Ma’mūn, and this seems the more suitable inference in the general context.
thousand dirhams for [my son] al-Hasan and a draft for twenty thousand more. He continued: He had already given me as a present an estate from his own lands at Basrah valued at fifty thousand dinars, but [subsequently] Bughā al-Kabir deprive me of it and added it to his own lands.

It is mentioned from Abū Ḥassān al-Ziyādī that he said that when al-Ma’mūn visited al-Hasan b. Sahl, he stayed with him for several days after the consummation of his marriage with Būrān. The total time which he spent on his stay and on the journey, both the outward journey and the return amounted to forty days, and he re-entered Baghdad on Thursday, the eighteenth of Shawwāl (210 [February 1, 826]). It is mentioned from Muḥammad b. Mūsā al-Khwārazmī that he stated that al-Ma’mūn set out for Fam al-Silh to visit al-Hasan b. Sahl on the eighth of Ramadān, (210 [December 23, 825]) and journeyed back from Fam al-Silh on the twentieth of Shawwāl, 210 (February 3, 826).

In this year, Ḥumayd b. ‘Abd al-Ḥamīd (al-Tusi) perished on the day of the breaking of the fast (on the first of Shawwāl [January 15, 826]). His slave girl ‘Adhal recited:

[1086] He who set out on the morning of the day of the breaking of the fast with a light heart,

at a time when we had no envious feelings towards him,

God be praised!

472. The Turkish slave commander who played a great rôle in politics and military affairs during the middle years of the third/ninth century; see EI² s.v. (Sourdel).

473. Ibn Abi Ṭāhir, 211, tr. 96.

474. A judge by profession who was later involved in the mīḥnah (see below, 210, 211), and who was also a significant historical source for Ibn Abi Ṭāhir; see Keller, II, Intro., pp. XIV–XVII.

475. The famous mathematician and astronomer, who in his youth worked in al-Ma’mūn’s research and translation center, the Bayt al-Hikmah, see EI² s.v. al-Khwarazmi, Abū Dja’far Muḥammad b. Mūsā [J. Vernet], but he was also a historian and a source for Ibn Abi Ṭāhir, see Keller, loc. cit.

476. The reading adopted here of the eighteenth of Shawwāl follows the text of Ibn Abi Ṭāhir, 212, against Ta’bari’s text with the eleventh of Shawwāl (baqiyat against khalat); as Keller points out, tr. 96, n.1, the date of the eighteenth of Shawwāl gives a period of forty days from the departure date of the eighth of Ramadān. Ya’qūbī, Ta’rikh, II, 559, simply mentions al-Ma’mūn’s total absence as being forty days.
Or else he was waiting for his master at the time of the breaking of the fast, while our master was in fact already laid in his sepulchre in the earth.

In this year, 'Abdallah b. Tahir conquered Egypt and 'Ubaydallah b. al-Sari b. al-Ḥakam⁴⁷七 sought a guarantee of security under his protection.

'Abdallāh b. Ṭāhir Goes Forth from Raqqah to Egypt; Ibn al-Sari Goes Out to Him under a Guarantee of Security

It is mentioned that when 'Abdallah b. Ṭāhir had finished with the campaign against Naṣr b. Shabath al-'Uqaylı and had sent him on to al-Ma'mūn, letters from al-Ma'mūn reached him at Baghdad ordering him to march to Egypt. Ahmad b. Muḥammad b. Makhlad⁴⁷⁸ related to me that he was at that time in Egypt and that when 'Abdallah b. Ṭāhir drew near to it and was only one stage’s journey away, he sent out one of his commanders in order to reconnoitre for a good place in which his army could encamp. Ibn al-Sari had dug a defensive trench round it (the capital Fustat).⁴⁷⁹ The latter got news about 'Abdallāh’s commander’s reconnaissance to the close vicinity of the capital, hence he marched out with a force of supporters who had flocked to his standard against the commander whom 'Abdallāh b. Ṭāhir had deputed to find a camping-place for his army. Ibn al-Sari’s army and 'Abdallāh’s commander and his accompanying force, which was only a small one, made battle

---

⁴⁷⁷. 'Ubaydallāh had been šāhib al-ṣurṭah in Egypt since 205 (820/1) under his brother Abū Naṣr and then himself governor in Sha'bān 206 (January 822), resisting attempts by al-Ma’mūn to replace him; see Kindī, 173-4; Ibn Taḡribirdī, al-Numūm al-zāhīrah, II, 178, 181 ff.

⁴⁷⁸. Presumably a member of the family of secretaries and viziers, of Christian origin, who served the caliphs in the second half of the century; see Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 309 ff., 316 ff.; EF s.v. Ibn al-Makhlad [id.].

⁴⁷⁹. From Kindī, 180, it appears that 'Abdallāh b. Ṭāhir encamped at Bilbays on entering Egypt and then moved to Zufaytā some twenty miles north of Fustat (modern Zifta), whilst 'Ubaydallāh fortified himself within Fustat by building the ditch and rampart (khandaq) further referred to in ibid., 174.
contact. 'Abdallāh’s commander and his troops wheeled away in an evasive action, and he sent a dispatch by mounted messenger to 'Abdallāh informing him about what he had been doing and about Ibn al-Sari’s actions. 'Abdallāh mounted his foot soldiers on mules, two men on each mule, with all their arms and equipment. They led the horses along by the side of the mules and travelled as speedily as possible till they caught up with 'Abdallāh’s commander and Ibn al-Sari. 'Abdallāh and his troops only had to make a single charge and Ibn al-Sari and his forces were routed. Most of Ibn al-Sari’s forces fell successively into the ditch, and more of them perished in the trench by their bodies falling one on top of another than were killed by the swords of the opposing army. Ibn al-Sari himself fled; he retired into Fustāṭ and closed the gate, with himself, his followers and the resident population all inside it. 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir besieged him, but Ibn al-Sari did not continue fighting back against him after this; in the end, he came forth to 'Abdallāh under a guarantee of safety.

It is mentioned from Ibn Dhi al-Qalamayn480 (the son of 'Ali b. Abi Sa‘īd, cousin of al-Faḍl b. Sahl), who stated that when 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir came to the capital of Egypt and Ibn al-Sari barred him from entry, Ibn al-Sari sent him a thousand male and female slaves, each slave boy having with him a thousand dinārs in a silken purse; these he sent by night. The narrator continued: However, 'Abdallāh sent all these back to him and wrote, "If I were able to accept your present by day, then I would certainly accept it by night, but ‘Nay, it is you who rejoice in your gift. Return to them; indeed, we shall come to them with hosts which they will have no power to withstand and we shall certainly expel them from it abased and in a state of humiliation"481 The narrator continued: At that point, Ibn al-Sari sought a guarantee of security from 'Abdallāh and went forth to him.482

480. For suggestions on the meaning of this honorific, see Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 202–3.
481. Qur’an, XXVII, 36–7.
482. In Abi Tahir, 148–9, tr. 67–8; Ya‘qubi, Ta’rikh, II, 560–1; Kindi, 180–3, giving the date of ‘Ubaydallāh b. al-Sari’s submission to 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir as in
Ahmad b. Ḥafs b. ʿUmar mentioned from Abū al-Samrā, who said: We set out with the amīr ʿAbdallāh b. Ṭāhir, travelling in the direction of Egypt. When we were at a point between Ramlah and Damascus, a tribesman suddenly appeared before us. He turned out to be an old man, of obvious intelligence and piety (baqiyyah), mounted on a greyish-colored camel. He greeted us, and we returned the greeting. Abū al-Samrā continued: I was with Ishaq b. Ibrāhim al-Rafigī and Ishaq b. Abī Ribʿī, and we were accompanying the amīr in his journey. It happened that on that particular day we had more spirited mounts than he, and we were wearing finer-quality clothes. He continued: The tribesman started peering intently at our faces. He continued: I therefore said, “O shaykh, you are eyeing us very persistently; have you recognized something, or is there something of which you disapprove?” He replied, “No, by God, I never knew you before today, and I have not discerned in you any evil characteristic which I should condemn; but I possess a very keen ability of knowing people’s character and fates through physiognomy (firdsah), and am able to discern a great deal about them.” He continued: I then pointed out Ishaq b. Abī Ribʿī to him and said, “What can you say about this man?” He thereupon recited:

I see a secretary, whose skill in the secretary’s art is clearly to be discerned,

and with his training in Iraq shining forth.

The movements which he makes amply bear witness to the fact that he is knowledgeable and far-sighted about the assessment of the land-tax.


483. This is the meaning which this word acquired from the traditional interpretation of the phrase ʿūlā baqiyyah in Qur’ān, XI, 118/116; see Lane, Arabic–English lexicon, Part I, 238c.

484. On this skill, see EI² s.v. [T. Fahd].

485. The complexity of the administrative and fiscal system of the Sawād of Iraq made it the training ground par excellence for secretaries.
Then he looked at Ishāq b. Ibrāhīm al-Rāfiqī and recited:

Many a person who outwardly manifests piety does not reveal externally his inner character,
loves presents [that is, he is corrupt] and acts deceitfully with men.

I discern in him cowardliness, avarice and a personal character which tells one about him that he is indeed a vizier.

Then he looked at me and began to recite:

This man is one of the amīr's boon companions and confidants, from whose intimacy the amīr derives joy.

I recognise him as a transmitter of poetry and the religious sciences,
and also at times a boon companion and storyteller at nocturnal literary sessions.

Then he looked at the amīr and began to recite:

This one is the amīr, the bounty of whose hands is hoped for; among all those I have ever seen, there is none like him.

He wears a cloak of seemliness and dignity,
and has a face which bears the good tidings of the attainment of success.

Through him, Islam has been made secure from the outset; through him, goodness has flourished and evil has withered away.

Is not `Abdallāh b. Tāhir
indeed a father to us, a benefit for us as well as being an amīr?

He continued to relate: All this made an extremely favorable impression on `Abdallāh. The shaykh's words delighted him,
so he ordered that he should be given five hundred dinārs and that he should accompany him.486

It is mentioned from al-Hasan b. Yaḥyā al-Fihrī, who said: We met al-Buṭayn, the poet of Ḥims,487 while we were accompanying ʿAbdallāh b. Ṭāhir, at a spot between Salamiyyah488 and Ḥims. He halted in the roadway and recited to ʿAbdallāh b. Ṭāhir:

A twofold welcome and greetings
to the son of the munificent one, Ṭāhir b. al-Ḥusayn!

A twofold welcome and greetings
to the son of the man with two noble characteristics [ghur-ratayn] in the two missions [daʿwatayn]!489

A twofold welcome to the one whose palm is a sea [of bounty] when it overflows like the foaming waters over the two sides of a well!

Al-Maʿmūn, may God strengthen him, does not have to worry as long as he has the two of you [Ṭāhir and ʿAbdallāh] remaining in his service.

You are a West, and he is an East, established there against whatever breach may occur from the two sides [of the empire].

It is only right, since the two of you are from a long time back the descendants of Ruzayq,490 Muṣʿab and Ḥusayn,

488. A town to the northeast of Ḥims; see Yaqūt, Muʿjam, III, 240–1; Le Strange, Palestine under the Moslems, 510, 528; R. Dussaud, Topographie historique de la Syrie antique et médiévale, 272–3; EI s.v. Salamiya [Kramers].
489. I.e., the ʿAbbāsid revolution and the movement to place al-Maʿmūn on the throne, sometimes referred to by contemporaries as al-daʿwah al-thāniyah; cf. on the latter, Daniel, 177–80.
490. Both Ṭabarī's text and that of Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, loc. cit., have, wrongly,
That you should both reach the peak of glory which you have in fact reached
and that you should attain a position of superiority over the two heavy creations [men and jinn].

‘Abdallāh said, “Who are you, may your mother be bereft of you?” He replied, “I am al-Butāyn, the poet of Ḥimṣ.” ‘Abdallāh said, “Ride with us, lad, and reflect how many lines of verse you have just recited.” He replied, “Seven.” So ‘Abdallāh ordered that he should be given seven thousand dirhams or seven hundred dinārs. Al-Butāyn journeyed with ‘Abdallāh all the way to Egypt and Alexandria, until the time when a drainage outlet (makhraj) opened up in the ground and swallowed him and his mount, and he died in it at Alexandria.

In this year, ‘Abdallāh b. Tāhir captured Alexandria—according to other reports, in the year 211 (826/7)—and expelled from it the Andalusians who had taken the city over.

The Activities of ‘Abdallāh and the Andalusians

Several of the people of Egypt related to me that some ships approached on the Mediterranean (Bahr al-Rūm) from the direction of Andalus, containing a large number of men, at the time when the local people were distracted from their approach by the insurrection of al-Jarawi and Ibn al-Sari. Finally, they an-

Zurayq. The ancestor Ruzayq had been a mawla of the Umayyad governor of Sistān Ṭalḥah b. ‘Abdallāh al-Khuza‘i; see Bosworth, “The Tāhirids and Arabic culture,” 47; Kaabi, 148–51.
491. See Bosworth, op. cit., 60–1.
493. These Andalusian corsairs and adventurers included considerable elements from the rebels expelled from the suburb of Cordova in 202 (818) by the Umayyad amir, al-Ḥakam I, the so-called al-Rabādiyyūn; see E. Lévi-Provençal, Histoire de l’Espagne musulmane, I, 165–73.
choored their ships at Alexandria, their leader at that time being a man called Abū Ḥafṣ (‘Umar b. Ḥafṣ al-Ballūṭī), and they remained there till ‘Abdallāh b. Ṭāhir entered Egypt.⁴⁹⁵

Yūnus b. ‘Abd al-A’lā told me: A young man—he meant ‘Abdallāh b. Ṭāhir—came to us from the direction of the east at a time when our whole world had been plunged into strife; various usurpers had seized power in every part of the land, and had terrorized the people; but he set the world to rights, brought peace and security to the innocent and struck fear into the evil-minded, and the subjects flocked to him tendering their obedience. Then he continued: ‘Abdallāh b. Wahb related to us from ‘Abdallāh b. Lahi’ah, who said (I do not know whether he carried the transmission back to an earlier generation or not; we have not found [it] in any of the books which we have read): God has an army in the east, and none of His creation has rebelled against Him without His having sent this army against them and His having wrought vengeance on them by means of it (or some other form of words with this meaning).

When ‘Abdallāh b. Ṭāhir b. al-Husayn entered Egypt, he sent a message to the Andalusian there and to those who had joined up with them, announcing that he was going to attack them unless they submitted. They (that is, the authorities on events in Egypt) related to me that the Andalusians agreed to submit, and sought a guarantee of safe-conduct from him, on condition that they were to depart from Alexandria to some other region of the land of Rūm (the Byzantine territories) which was not part of the lands of Islam. ‘Abdallāh granted them a guarantee on this condition, hence they set sail from Alexandria and landed on one of the islands in the (Mediterranean) Sea called Crete. They established a colony and settled there, and there are the remains of their progeny on that island to this day.⁴⁹⁶

---

⁴⁹⁵ Ya’qūbi, Ta’rikh, II, 541–2, Kindi, 158, 161–5, 169–70, and Severus, IV, 429 ff., give the circumstances of the Andalusians’ seizure of the city from the Banū Mudjlīj and the Lakhm in 199 [814/15].

⁴⁹⁶ Ya’qūbi, Ta’rikh, II, 560–1; Kindi, 183–4 (both placing ‘Abdallāh’s recovery of Alexandria in the early part of 212 [summer 827]), Severus, IV, 435 ff.,
In this year, the people of Qumm threw off their allegiance to the ruling authority and withheld payment of the land-tax.

*The People of Qumm Throw off the Ruling Authority*

It is mentioned that the reason for their renunciation of it was that they considered the burden of the land-tax imposed on them as being excessively high. The tax required amounted to two million dirhams. Al-Ma'mūn had reduced the people of Rayy's assessment when he had entered the city on his journey from Khurasan to Iraq by the amount which I mentioned previously. Hence the people of Qumm were eager for al-Ma'mūn to lighten their burden and decrease their taxation just as he had done for the people of Rayy. They made petition to him, requesting a reduction in taxation and complaining of its heaviness upon them. But al-Ma'mūn refused to grant their request. Thereupon they withheld payment of taxes, so al-Ma'mūn sent against them 'Ali b. Hishām and then reinforced him with 'Ujayf b. 'Anbasah. One of Humayd's commanders called Muhammad b. Yūsuf b. 'Abd al-Qādir came from Khurasan, and al-Ma'mūn wrote to him to head towards Qumm and attack its people in concert with 'Ali b. Hishām. 'Ali fought with them and gained a victory over them, killing Yahyā b. 'Imrān and razing the town walls of Qumm. He imposed on them a tax assessment of seven million dirhams, after they had (previously) complained of two millions.

In this year, Shahriyār, the son of Sharwin, died. His son Sābūr took his place, but Māzyār b. Qārin disputed the succes-

---


497. Reading uncertain here, and equally so in the death notice [year 236 [850/1]] of this commander in Tabari, III, 1407 [where he is given the nisbah of al-Marwazi].

498. Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 399; Shaban, 55. Al-Ma'mūn's destruction of the town walls is noted in Ḥasan b. Muḥammad Qummi, Ta'rikh-i Qum, 35, 163, 189-90.
The Events of the Year 210

sion with him, and captured and killed him. The mountain re-
gion [the inland parts of Ṭabaristān] now passed into the hands
of Māzyār b. Qārin.499

In this year, Šāliḥ b. al-ʿAbbās b. Muḥammad, the governor of
Mecca at that time, led the pilgrimage.500

499. Ibn al-Athīr, al-Ḳāmil, VI, 401; El¹ s.v. Māzyār (Minorsky); El² s.v.
Kārinids (Rekaya).
500. Khalīfah, Taʾrikh, II, 773; Azdi, 372.
The Events of the Year

211

(April 13, 826—April 1, 827)

Among the events taking place during this year was 'Ubaydallah b. al-Sari's journeying forth to 'Abdallah b. Tahir under a guarantee of safe-conduct and 'Abdallah b. Tahir's entering Egypt. It is said that this (actually) took place in the year 210 (825/6). A certain authority mentions that Ibn al-Sari went forth to 'Abdallah b. Tahir on Saturday, the twenty-fourth of Safar 211501 (June 5, 826),503 was brought to Baghdad on the twenty-third of Rajab, 211 (October 29, 826) and lodged in the City of Abū Ja'far.503 'Abdallah b. Tahir remained in Egypt as

501. Actually a Monday.
502. Keller, Ibn Abi Tahir, tr. 68, n.1, points out that, from mentions elsewhere (e.g., text 145, tr. 66) of this author's concern with Egyptian events in 210, the date of 'Ubaydallah's going forth to 'Abdallah must have been on Saturday, the twenty-sixth of Rajab, 210 (November 12, 825—but this was actually a Sunday). Ṭabarī's ms. O has Rajab, and the preferable date 210 of mss. C and O was rejected by the editor as wrong. But Kindī, 182, in a detailed account of events, with several circumstantial dates, has Safar 211 as the date for 'Ubaydallah's formal acceptance of the amān.
503. Ya'qubi, Ta'rikh, II, 561, says that 'Abdallah appointed 'Ubaydallah over upper Egypt for two months before sending him to Baghdad.
governor of the province and over the whole (ṣā'īr) of Syria and the Jazirah. It is mentioned from Tāhir b. Khālid b. Nizār al-Ghassāni, who said that al-Ma'mūn wrote to 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir when the latter was in Egypt at the time of his conquest of the province, and at the foot of one of his letters (were the words):

You are my brother and my friend (mawlāyā),
and the one for whose benefits I give thanks.

Whatever thing you may love,
I will show my desire for it eternally.

While whatever thing you may dislike,
I shall find it displeasing.

You have God's word for this,
you have God's word, you have God's word!

Al-Ma'mūn Tests 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir

It is mentioned from 'Atā', the official charged with hearing complaints (ṣāḥib al-mazālim) for 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir, who related that one of al-Ma'mūn's brothers spoke to al-Ma'mūn thus, "O Commander of the Faithful, 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir has an inclination towards the progeny of Abū Ṭalib, just as his father had before him." He continued: Al-Ma'mūn pushed this suggestion aside and gave it no credence. Then the brother came back and repeated the same allegation. So al-Ma'mūn sent a man secretly to 'Abdallāh instructing him, "Go forth to Egypt in the guise of one of the Qur'ān reciters and ascetics, and summon a group of the great men of state there to the alle-

504. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 149, tr. 68; Azdi, 368, 373; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 402.
505. Concerning this function, see H.F. Amedroz, "The mazālim jurisdiction in the Ahkām Sultaniyya of Mawardi," JRAS (1911), 635–74; Levy, The social structure of Islam, 348–51; EI² s.v. Mazālim (J.S. Nielsen).
506. al-qurra', also in Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 402; Ibn Abī Tāhir, 146, tr. 66, and 'Uyūn, 369, have al-ghuzāt, "frontier warriors for the faith."
giance of al-Qāsim b. Ibrāhim b. Ṭabāṭabā (al-Rassi), recounting his virtues, his learning and his merits. After that, get in touch with one of ‘Abdallāh b. Ṣāhir’s confidants and then go to ‘Abdallāh himself, summoning him and making attractive to him the giving of allegiance to the ‘Alid. Ferret out in a manner which dispels doubt about his innermost intentions, and report back to me what you hear from him.”

He continued to relate: The man did what al-Ma’mūn had told and instructed him to do. He summoned to allegiance a group of the leading men and notables, and then he sat down one day at ‘Abdallāh b. Ṣāhir’s gate, at a moment when the latter had ridden to visit ‘Ubaydallāh b. al-Šari after he had made peace with him and granted him a guarantee of security. When ‘Abdallāh returned, the man rose up before him and brought out of his sleeve a paper, and handed it to him. ‘Abdallāh took it in his hand. ‘Abdallāh had hardly gone in, when the chamberlain came out to the man and escorted him inside, where he found ‘Abdallāh seated on his carpet with nothing else between it and the ground, with his legs stretched out and his boots still on. ‘Abdallāh said to him, “I have understood what is in your paper, the whole of what you have said—so out with what you really mean!” The man said, “Do I have your guarantee of safety and the protection of God in regard to you?” He replied, “Certainly.”

He related: He then revealed to ‘Abdallāh his intention, and summoned him to give allegiance to al-Qāsim, telling him all about his merits, his learning and his ascetic way of life. ‘Abdallāh asked him, “Will you give me a fair hearing?” He replied that he would. ‘Abdallāh then asked him, “Is gratitude to God incumbent on all His servants?” He agreed that it was. ‘Abdallāh further asked, “Is gratitude incumbent on one person to another in return for beneficence, favors and acts of kindness?” He agreed that it was. ‘Abdallāh said, “Yet you come to me, when I am in this exalted position which you see, with my seal effica-

---

507. Brother of the Hasanid Ibn Ṭabāṭabā whose revolt in Kūfah in 199 (815) was managed by Abū al-Šarāyā, see above, 13 ff., and founder of the Rassid line of Zaydi Imāms in the Yemen, died in 246 (860), see EI s.v. Rassids (A.S. Tritton).
cious in the East as in the West, and my command obeyed and my word accepted in the lands between? I have only to turn to my right or left, or to look behind me or before me, and I see manifestations of acts of liberality from a man who has heaped them upon me, favor with which he has laid a seal on my neck, and unsolicited, clear beneficence [literally: a white, shining hand, *yad lā'ihah baydā*'] which he bestowed upon me from the outset of graciousness and nobility of character! And you now invite me to display ingratitude for favor and for this beneficence, and you say, 'Betray the one who was the first and the last mover in all this, and bend your efforts to sever the vital cord of his neck and shed his blood!'? Do you yourself think that, even if you were to invite me directly into the Garden of Paradise, so that I could see it before my very eyes, as I know Paradise to be, God would like me to betray him, display ingratitude for his beneficence and favors, and break my oath of allegiance to him?"

The man remained silent. Then 'Abdallāh said to him, "Moreover, I have heard all about your activities, and by God, I am only afraid for your life. So depart from this land, for if the supreme ruling authority gets to hear about your doings—and I cannot give you a guarantee of security concerning that—you will bring down disaster on both yourself and others." [1096]

Thus when the man had despaired of achieving anything of his intentions, he came to al-Ma'mūn and told him the whole story. The Caliph rejoiced greatly and exclaimed, "That man is the tender shoot nurtured by my own hand, the intimate companion from my process of upbringing and the sprig of my fertilization and grafting!" He never divulged anything of this to anyone, and 'Abdallāh only knew about it after al-Ma'mūn's death.508

It is mentioned from (or: concerning, *'an*) 'Abdallāh b. Ṭāhir that, while he was besieging 'Ubaydallāh b. al-Sārī in Egypt, he recited these verses:

She shed copious tears in the morning,
   when she saw how near was the moment of my departure,

And I exchanged by richly-embroidered sash
 for a gleaming Yemeni sword,

And spent a long time in journeying
   both in the mornings and the evening [that is, in perpetual travelling].

She considered it foolish, in that
   I was weary and without rest,

[But I said to her,] Cut short your dalliance with me, for I am setting out on the road in search of my fortune.

I am one of al-Ma'mūn's servants,
   in the shadow of [his] protective wing.

If God one day grants success,
   then the attainment of my place of refreshment and repose will be near;

But if it be destruction, then proclaim with lamentation and cries,

"A slain one has found his last resting-place in Egypt,"
   and leave off your complaining and querulousness.\footnote{Ibn Abi Tahir, 148, tr. 67.}

It is mentioned from 'Abdallāh b. Āḥmad b. Yūsuf that his father\footnote{Āḥmad b. Yūsuf was a secretary and confidant of al-Ma'mūn, occupying in effect the position of vizier after the death in 211 (827) of Āḥmad b. Abī Khālid; see Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 225–31.} wrote to 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir at the point when 'Ubaydallāh b. al-Sāri submitted to him congratulating him on that success (in the following words):
I have heard the news, may God strengthen the amir, of the victory which God has granted you and Ibn al-Sari’s submission to you. So praise be to God, who upholds the cause of His faith, who strengthens the secular power of His Caliph appointed over His servants, and who humbles the one who deviates from His way and His rightful due and who throws off obedience to Him! We implore God to strengthen him with acts of favor and to assist him in conquering the lands of polytheism. Praise be to God for the authority which he has given to you, since you departed from your specified purpose! Indeed, we and all our dependents remind ourselves with pride of your conduct in engaging in battle and granting peace, and we show immense wonder at the qualities bestowed on him ‘[Abdallāh] by God of severity and leniency in their appropriate places. We do not know of any ruler over a body of soldiers or subjects who acts so equitably between them as you do, nor of anyone who grants forgiveness, to persons who have caused harm or shown rancor towards him, from a position of superior strength as you do. How rarely do we see a nobly-descended person who does not give up control of his affairs, that is, throw away his own personal talent or potential, relying rather upon what his forefathers have passed on to him! And the one who is given good fortune, material sufficiency, ruling authority and governmental power does not simply cleave to what has fallen to his share in abundant quantity, so that he falls short in being able to cope with what is before him. Furthermore, we do

511. This seems to be the sense, and Keller, Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, tr. 68, adopts a similar interpretation of the parallel passage in this author, “was er dir erwiesen hat.”

512. *Lam yukhlih*, following the sense of *akhlada ila al-ard*, “he clung to the ground,” in Qur’ān, VII, 175/176.


514. This seems to be the sense of a difficult passage with tortuous syntax, whose general meaning depends largely on the interpretation of the phrase *lam yulqi bi-yadihi*, here translated as “does not cast away by his own hand,” following Dozy, II, 547a.
not know any person exercising power who deserves success on account of his good conduct and his restraining of the arbitrary conduct of his retainers as you do. Nor does any one of our dependants consider it appropriate that he should prefer before you anyone whom he would like to have in the face of affliction or some calamitous happening. So may God's beneficence and His augmentation of favor reward you, and may God grant you this favor which He has brought together for you, by keeping firm hold of that by means of which the bond with your Imam and master and the master of all the Muslims will be completely strengthened for you. May He also grant you and us perpetuation of life! For you yourself well know that you have never ceased to be, in our eyes and in those of our dependents, in an honored status, assured of primacy and magnified in our sight. God has bestowed on you an increase of glory and honor in the eyes of the high and the low, so that they focus all their personal hopes on you and regard you as their bulwark against the adverse events and vicissitudes which come upon them. I hope that God will guide you to those things which He loves, just as His benefits and favor have helped you to success. Indeed, you have comported yourself well in achieving the protection of Divine favor; for it has not led you into arrogance and presumption, and you have only grown in humility and self-abasement. So praise be to God for what He has secured for you, has conferred on you of benefits and has entrusted to you! Farewell.\footnote{Ibn Abi Tahir, 150-1, tr. 68-9.}

In this year, 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn arrived in the City of Peace from the western lands,\footnote{Kindi, 184, says that 'Abdallāh sailed down the Nile from Fustāṭ, en route for Iraq, on the twenty-fifth Rajab, 212 [October 20, 827].} and al-'Abbās b. al-Ma'mūn,\footnote{Claimant to the caliphate after his father's death in 218 [833] and especially during the rebellion of 223 [838] against his uncle al-Mu'tasim; see Ṭabarî, III, 1249-50, 1257-68, tr. E. Marin, The reign of al-Muṭāsim (833-842), 71, 76-85.} Abū Ishaq al-Mu'tasim and the rest of the men of
state came out to meet him. He brought with him the rebels who had previously seized control over Syria, such as Ibn al-Sarî, Ibn Abî Jamal and Ibn Abî al-Šaqr.\footnote{Ibn Abî Tâhir, \textit{149}, tr. 68; Azdi, 378; \textit{Uyûn}, 370; Ibn al-Athîr, \textit{al-Kâmîl}, VI, 406.}

\footnote{Ibn Abî Tâhir, \textit{149}, tr. 68; Azdi, 378; \textit{Uyûn}, 370; Ibn al-Athîr, \textit{al-Kâmîl}, VI, 406.}

(In this year,) Mûsâ b. Hâfs died, and Muḥammad b. Mûsâ took over the governorship of Ťabarîstân in his father's stead.\footnote{Ibn Abî Tâhir, \textit{149}, tr. 68; Azdi, 378; \textit{Uyûn}, 370; Ibn al-Athîr, \textit{al-Kâmîl}, VI, 406.}

(In this year,) Ĥâjîb b. Șâlih became governor of India, but Bîshr b. Dâwûd [al-Muhallabî] defeated him in battle and he retreated to Kîrmân.\footnote{Ibn al-Athîr, \textit{al-Kâmîl}, loc. cit.; Ya'qûbî, \textit{Ta'rikh}, II, 557, records that Ĥâjîb b. Șâlih was originally sent out by al-Ma'mûn to quell the rebellious Bîshr.}

In this year, al-Ma'mûn ordered a herald to proclaim, "No protection for anyone who mentions the name of Mu'awiyah favorably or who accords him superiority over any one of the Messenger of God's Companions."\footnote{Mas'ûdi, \textit{Murnj}, VII, 90–1 = ed. Pellat, § 2776; \textit{Uyûn}, loc. cit.; Ibn al-Athîr, \textit{al-Kâmîl}, loc. cit.; Goldziher, \textit{Muhammedanische Studien}, II, 46–7, Eng. tr. II, 54; Pellat, "Le culte de Mu'awiya au IIIe siècle," \textit{SI}, VI [1956], 55. According to Mas'ûdi, \textit{Murnj}, VII, 93 = ed. Pellat, § 2776, cf. Sourdel, "La politique religieuse du calife 'abbâside al-Ma'mûn," 39, the Caliph was dissuaded from this course on the grounds that it would cause discontent among the people.}

In this year, al-Ma'mûn ordered a herald to proclaim, "No protection for anyone who mentions the name of Mu'awiyah favorably or who accords him superiority over any one of the Messenger of God's Companions."\footnote{Mas'ûdi, \textit{Murnj}, VII, 90–1 = ed. Pellat, § 2776; \textit{Uyûn}, loc. cit.; Ibn al-Athîr, \textit{al-Kâmîl}, loc. cit.; Goldziher, \textit{Muhammedanische Studien}, II, 46–7, Eng. tr. II, 54; Pellat, "Le culte de Mu'awiya au IIIe siècle," \textit{SI}, VI [1956], 55. According to Mas'ûdi, \textit{Murnj}, VII, 93 = ed. Pellat, § 2776, cf. Sourdel, "La politique religieuse du calife 'abbâside al-Ma'mûn," 39, the Caliph was dissuaded from this course on the grounds that it would cause discontent among the people.}


In this year, the poet Abû al-'Atâhiyah died.\footnote{Khalifah, \textit{Ta'rikh}, II, 774; Azdi, loc. cit.; Ibn al-Athîr, \textit{al-Kâmîl}, loc. cit.}

\footnote{Khalifah, \textit{Ta'rikh}, II, 774; Azdi, loc. cit.; Ibn al-Athîr, \textit{al-Kâmîl}, loc. cit.}
Among the events taking place during this year was al-Ma'mūn's dispatching Muhammad b. Ḥumayd al-Ṭūsī via the Mosul Road to campaign against Bābak, and his reinforcing Muhammad b. Ḥumayd for this purpose. Muhammad b. Ḥumayd seized Ya'qūb b. Murrah and other rebels like him in Azerbaijan and sent them back to al-Ma'mūn.525

In this year, Ahmad b. Muḥammad al-'Umārī, known as the Red-eyed One, rebelled in the Yemen.526

In this year, al-Ma'mūn appointed as governor in the Yemen Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Ḥamīd, known as Abū al-Rāzī.527

In this year, al-Ma'mūn proclaimed the doctrine of the

---

524. Son of Ḥumayd b. 'Abd al-Ḥamīd, and a poet as well as a soldier, cf. Sezgin, GAS, II, 583.
525. Ya’qūbī, Ta’rīkh, II, 564 ff., with a very detailed account of events in Arrān, Azerbaijan and Armenia and the war against Bābak; Azdi, 378 ff., with a detailed account of events in the region of Mosul; ‘Uyun, 373; Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, VI, 407; Shahan, 56-9.
526. Ya’qūbī, Ta’rīkh, II, 561-2; Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, VI, 408.
createdness of the Qurʾān and the pre-eminence (tafdil) of ʿAlī b. Abi Ṭālib, saying that he was the best of mankind after the Messenger of God. This was in the month of Rabīʾ I (June 827).528

In this year, ʿAbdallāh b. ʿUbaydallāh b. al-ʿAbbās b. Muḥammad led the pilgrimage.529

---

Among the events taking place during this year was the renunciation of allegiance by 'Abd al-Salām (or: al-Sallām) and Ibn Jalis in Egypt with a throng of Qaysis and Yamanis and their rebellion there.530

In this year, Ṭalḥah b. Ṭahir died in Khurasan.531

In this year, al-Ma‘mūn appointed his brother Abū Ishāq as governor of Syria and Egypt, and his son al-‘Abbās b. al-Ma‘mūn over the Jazīrah, the frontier regions and the defensive fortresses (al-thughūr wa-al-‘awāsim),532 and he ordered five hundred thousand dinārs to be given to each of them and to


531. Ibn Abī Ṭahir, 173–4, tr. 78, with a much fuller account; ‘Uyun, 371; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 409; Rothstein, 162; Bosworth, in Cambridge history of Iran, IV, 98.

532. I.e., the much fought-over frontier zone of northern Syria and the Jazīrah separating the Dār al-Islām from Byzantium; see Vasiliev, Byzance et les Arabes, I, 94 ff.; El2 s.v. al-‘Awāsim (Canard).
The Events of the Year 212

‘Abdallāh b. Ṭāhir. It is said that he had never before divided out a sum of money of this magnitude in a single day.\textsuperscript{533}

In this year, he appointed Ghassān b. ‘Abbād as governor of Sind.

\textit{Al-Ma’mūn Appoints Ghassān b. ‘Abbād Governor over Sind}

According to the reports which have reached me, the reason for that was that Bishr b. Dāwūd b. Yazīd [al-Muhallabī]\textsuperscript{534} rebelled against al-Ma’mūn. He levied the land-tax, but did not forward any of it to al-Ma’mūn. It is mentioned that al-Ma’mūn said to his courtiers one day, “Tell me about Ghassān b. ‘Abbād, for I want him for an important office;” he had, in fact, already decided to appoint him governor of Sind because of the rebelliousness of Bishr b. Dāwūd. Those present spoke and went on at great length in Ghassān’s praise. Then al-Ma’mūn looked towards Ahmad b. Yūsuf, who remained silent, and said to him, “What do you say, O Ahmad?” The latter replied, “O Commander of the Faithful, here is a man whose virtues are more numerous than his bad qualities. He is not sent\textsuperscript{535} to any class of people without his rendering justice to them. Whatever fears you may have regarding him, he will never embark on any affair which needs excusing [or: from which he has to exculpate himself],\textsuperscript{536} for he has divided up his days into days of beneficence [\textit{al-fadl}] [or possibly: he has divided up his time in the service of al-Faḍl (b. Sahl)], and for every person he allots a special time [for approaching him with petitions or complaints]. When you examine his conduct, you do not know which of his personal modes of conduct is the more remarkable—that


\textsuperscript{534} Son of the former governor of Sind Dāwūd, and great-great-great-grandson of the famous Umayyad general al-Muhallab b. Abī Ṣufrah.

\textsuperscript{535} Interpreting the consonant ductus here as \textit{lā yuṣrūfa bihi}, as seems allowable by n. g.

\textsuperscript{536} The text given here by the editor is very conjectural, hence the present translation must be equally so; furthermore, there is a variant text in Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 238, tr. 109.
which his intelligence directs him towards, or that which he
acquires through his education." Al-Ma'mūn said, "You have
eulogized him, despite your personally unfavorable opinion of
him." Ahmad b. Yūsuf replied, "[That is] because he is, in re-
gard to what I have just stated, like what the poet has said:

May it be sufficient thanks for what you have bestowed on me
that I have praised you in regard to both friends and ene-
mies.537

He related: Al-Ma'mūn was delighted at his words and found
his learning and wit impressive.538

In this year, 'Abdallah b. 'Ubaydallah b. al-'Abbās b. Muḥam-
mad led the pilgrimage.539

537. Reading here, with ibid., 239, and the Addenda et emendanda, p.
DCCLXXII, 'udātī.

538. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 238–9, tr. 108–9, adding a second verse; Ya'qūbī,

The
Events of the Year

214
(MARCH 11, 829—FEBRUARY 27, 830)

Among the events taking place in this year was the killing of Muhammad b. Ḥumayd al-Ṭūsī by Bābak at Hashtādsar on Saturday the twenty-fifth of Rabi’ I (June 2, 829); Bābak scattered Muhammad’s army and killed a large number of his troops. ⁵⁴⁰

In this year, Abū al-Rāzī was killed in Yemen. ⁵⁴³

In this year, ‘Umayr b. al-Walid al-Badhghisi, financial administrator (‘āmil) in Egypt for Abū Ishāq b. al-Rashīd, was

---

⁵⁴⁰ Literally, “the eighty peaks,” apparently this lay in northern Azerbaijan, in the mountainous region south of the Araxes, where lay also Babak’s headquarters of al-Badhdh; see Schwarz, 970–1.

⁵⁴¹ Actually a Wednesday.

⁵⁴² ‘Uyūn, 373–4, and Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 412–13, with a much more detailed account of these events; Vasiliev, op. cit., I, 92–3.

⁵⁴³ Ya’qūbī, Ta’rikh, II, 561–2, with a detailed account of how Abū al-Rāzī captured the rebel al-‘Umari but was himself subsequently killed by Ibrāhīm b. Abi Ja’far al-Himyari, called al-Manākī, who seized power in the Yemen; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 415.
killed in the Ḥawf in the month of Rabi‘ I (May-June 829). Abū Ishāq marched into Egypt and brought it into submission. He seized ‘Abd al-Salām and Ibn Jalīs and executed them, while al-Ma‘mūn had Ibn al-Jarawī beaten and then sent him back to Egypt.

In this year, Bilāl al-Ḍabābi al-Shārī (the Khārijite) came out in revolt. Al-Ma‘mūn set off for al-‘Alth, and then returned to Baghdad, and sent (instead) his son ‘Abbās, together with a body of commanders, including ‘Alī b. Hīshām, ‘Ujayf (b. ‘Anbasah) and Ḥārūn b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid. Ḥārūn then killed Bilāl.

In this year, ‘Abdallāh b. Ṭāhir set out for Dinawar. Al-Ma‘mūn dispatched to him Ishāq b. Ibrāhīm (al-Muṣ‘abī) and Yahyā b. Akṭham, who offered him the choice between Khurasan on the one hand, and Jībīl, Armenia, Azerbaijan and the conduct of the war against Bābak on the other; ‘Abdallāh chose Khurasan, and set off towards it.

In this year, Ja‘far b. Dāwūd al-Qummi became active (that is, became rebellious), but ‘Aziz the freedman of ‘Abdallāh b. Ṭāhir seized him; Ja‘far had fled from Egypt, but was now sent back to there.
In this year, al-Ma‘mūn appointed ‘Ali b. Hishām as governor of Jabal, Qumm, Iṣfahān and Azerbaijan.\textsuperscript{554}

In this year, Ishāq b. al-‘Abbās b. Muḥammad led the pilgrimage.\textsuperscript{555}

\textsuperscript{554} Ibid.
Among the events taking place during this year was al-Ma'mūn's setting out from the City of Peace to raid the Byzantines, this being, reportedly, on Saturday, the twenty-seventh of Muḥarram [March 26, 830]. Other reports say that he travelled from Shammāsiyyah to Baradān on Thursday, after the noon worship, the twenty-fourth of Muḥarram, 215 (March 23, 830). When al-Ma'mūn departed from the City of Peace, he appointed as his deputy over it Ishaq b. Ibrahim b. Muṣ'ab, who was further entrusted with the Sawād, Ḥulwān and the districts of the Tigris. When al-Ma'mūn arrived at Takrit, 559

---

556. The quarter of East Baghdad northeast of Ruṣāfah; see Le Strange, Baghdad, 199–216.
557. A town lying just to the north of Baghdad, which gave its name to the Baradān Gate leading out of Shammāsiyyah; see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, I, 375–6; Le Strange, Lands, 32.
558. Actually a Wednesday.
559. A town on the Tigris above Sāmarrā; see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, II, 38–9; Le Strange, Lands, 57; Barthold, A historical geography of Iran, 205–6; EI 1 s.v. (Kramers).
Muḥammad b. 'Ali b. Mūsā b. Ja'far b. Muḥammad b. 'Ali b. al-Ḥusayn b. ‘Ali b. Abī Ṭālib (the son of the Imām ‘Ali al-Ridā) arrived from Madīnah in Ṣafar, during the night of Friday (Thursday-Friday night), in the same year, and met the Caliph there. Al-Ma'mūn bestowed gifts on him, and ordered him to consummate his union with his (al-Ma'mūn's) daughter Umm al-Fadl, whom he had (previously) given in marriage to Muḥammad b. 'Ali. She was brought into his presence in the house of Abī Ḥamīd b. Yūsuf, which was situated on the banks of the Tigris. Muḥammad b. 'Ali remained there. When the time of the pilgrimage came round, he set off with his household and family back to Mecca; then he went on to his house at Madīnah, and remained there.560

After this, al-Ma'mūn took the road for Mosul until he got as far as Manbij,561 and then went on to Dābīq,562 to Antioch and to Maṣṣīṣah.563 Then he set off from there for Tarsus,564 and then into the land of the Byzantines in the middle of Jumādā I (July 10, 830), while al-'Abbās b. al-Ma'mūn set out from Ma'latyah.565 Al-Ma'mūn next besieged a fortress called Qurrah,566 until he captured it by storm and ordered the fortress to be destroyed, this being on Sunday, the twenty-sixth of Jumādā I (July 21, 830).567 Previous to this, he had conquered a fortress called Mājdīdah,568 but had spared its occupants. It is said that when al-Ma'mūn halted before Qurrah and then attacked

561. A town on the Euphrates above Raqqah where there was a bridge of boats; see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, V, 205–7; Le Strange, Lands, 107; id., Palestine, 501–2; Canard, 87–8; El1 s.v. Manbīdīj [Honigmann].
562. A town in northern Syria on the road from Manbij to Antioch; see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, II, 416–17; Le Strange, Palestine, 426, 503; El1 s.v. [Sourdel].
563. A town in Cilicia, classical Mopsuestia; see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, V, 144–5; Le Strange, Lands, 130–2; id., Palestine, 505–6; El1 s.v. Mīṣīsī [Honigmann].
564. The town, famed since classical times, in Cilicia; see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, IV, 28–9; Le Strange, Lands, 132–4; El1 s.v. Tārsūs [F. Buhl].
565. A frontier fortress near the course of the upper Euphrates, classical Melitene; see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, V, 192–3; Le Strange, Lands, 120; Honigmann, 58–9, 72 ff.; El1 s.v. [Honigmann—S. Farrogh].
566. A fortress in Cappadocia, Greek Koron; see Vasiliev, Byzance et les Arabes, I, 101–2; Honigmann, 45.
567. Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 263, tr. 119.
568. A fortress in Cappadocia; see Vasiliev, op. cit., I, 101; Honigmann, 46.
its defending garrison, they sought a guarantee of security. Al-
Ma’amun granted this to them, and he then sent Ashinās to the
fortress of Sundus,569 and Ashinās brought back to the Caliph
its commander. He further sent ‘Ujayf and Ja’far al-Khayyāt to
the commander of the fortress of Sinān,570 and the latter hark-
ened to the Caliph and gave his obedience.571

In this year, Abu Ishaq b. al-Rashid returned from Egypt. He
met up with al-Ma’amun before the latter reached Mosul, and
Manuel572 and his (al-Ma’mun’s) son ‘Abbās met up with him at
Ra’s al-‘Ayn.573

In this year, after leaving the land of the Byzantines, al-Ma’-
mun set off for Damascus.574

In this year, ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Ubaydallāh b. al-‘Abbās b. Muḥam-
mad led the pilgrimage.575

569. The Greek Soanda, perhaps the modern Turkish town of Nevşehir, ac-
cording to Vasiliev, op. cit., I, 102.
570. A fortress which probably lay near Heracleia and Tyana; see ibid., I, 103.
571. Azdi, 399; ‘Uyūn, 374; Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, VI, 417. For the whole
campaign, see Vasiliev, op. cit., I, 94–103, 287–8, 370, 391–2.
572. Byzantine patricius who had fled to the Muslims in the reign of the Em-
peror Michael II; see Canard, in Cambridge medieval history. IV. The Byzan-
tine empire, I, 709–10.
573. Ibn Abī Tahir, 264, tr. 120, with a much fuller account; Ibn al-Athir, al-
Kāmil, VI, 418; Vasiliev, op. cit., I, 288, 392.
575. Khalīfah, Ta’rikh (Damascus), II, 778; Azdi, 405; Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil,
loc. cit.
The events taking place during this year included al-Ma'mūn's return to the land of the Byzantines.

*Al-Ma'mūn's Return to the Land of the Byzantines*

There are varying reports about this. It is said, the reason for it was that al-Ma'mūn received reports about the king of Byzantium's slaughter of people of Tarsus and Maṣṣīṣah—according to what has been mentioned, amounting to sixteen hundred in all. 576 When he got this news, he set off on an expedition till he entered the land of the Byzantines on Monday, the nineteenth of Jumādā I of this year 577 (July 4, 831), and he remained there till the middle of Sha'bān (September 26 or 27). But it is also said that the reason for it was that Theophilus son of Michael wrote to al-Ma'mūn and put his own name first in his letter

---

577. Actually a Tuesday.
When the letter reached al-Ma'mūn, he did not read it, and set off for the land of the Byzantines. The envoys of Theophilus, son of Michael, met him at Adana, and Theophilus sent along to al-Ma'mūn five hundred Muslim captives. When al-Ma'mūn entered the Byzantine lands, he halted before Antīghūṭ and besieged it, and its garrison marched out to him after securing peace terms (without fighting). Al-Ma'mūn then proceeded to Heraclia and its garrison marched out to him after securing peace terms. He sent off his brother Abū Ishāq, who captured thirty fortresses and subterranean strongholds and storehouses (matmūrah), and he sent off from Tuwanah Yahyā b. Aktham, who raided, killed, burned, seized and enslaved captives, and then returned to the main body of the army. Al-Ma'mūn next set off towards Kaysūm, and remained there for two or three days and then turned back to Damascus.

In this year, 'Abdūs al-Fihri rose in rebellion, and he and his partisans attacked Abū Ishāq's tax officials and killed several of them, this being in Sha'bān (September-October 831). Al-Ma'mūn set out from Damascus for Egypt on Wednesday, the fifteenth of Dhu al-Hijjah (January 23, 832).

In this year, al-Afšīn arrived from Barqah, on his way back from there, and remained in Egypt.

---

578. A fortress in Cappadocia; see Vasiliev, op. cit., I, 111-12; Honigmann, 46.
579. Arabic Hiraqlah, modern Eregli, a town in the Taurus region; see Yaqūt, Mu'jam, V, 398-9; Vasiliev, op. cit., I, 110, El² s.v. Eregli (J.H. Mordmann-Taeschner).
580. Pl. matmūrāt, subterranean grottoes or emplacements, placed by Le Strange, Lands, 138, in the region of Malacopia, Arabic Malaqubiyah; see also Vasiliev, op. cit., I, 112; Honigmann, loc. cit., El² s.v. Matalmūrā (Pellat).
581. The town in Cilicia, classical Tyana; see Yaqūt, Mu'jam, IV, 45-6; Le Strange, Palestine, 547; id., Lands, 139.
582. Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 264-5, tr. 120; Ya'qūbī, Ta'rikh, II, 567-8; Azdi, loc. cit.; 'Uyun, 374-5; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 419. For this campaign, see Canard, in Cambridge medieval history. IV. The Byzantine empire, I, 710; Vasiliev, op. cit., I, 109-14, 419, 428-9, 371, 409.
583. Actually a Tuesday.
584. Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 265, tr. 120; Kindī, 192; Azdi, 406; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 419.
585. The port in modern Cyrenaica; see El² s.v. Barka (J. Despois).
586. According to Ya'qūbī, Ta'rikh, II, 568, he had been suppressing a re-
The Events of the Year 216

In this year, al-Ma'mūn wrote to Ishāq b. Ibrāhīm (al-Mūs'abī) ordering him to oblige the troops to pronounce the takbīr\(^{587}\) when they performed the worship. So they first put this into practice in the mosque of the City (of Peace) and at Ruṣāfah on Friday, the sixteenth of Ramaḍān of this year (October 27, 832), at the moment when they had completed the worship; they all remained standing and pronounced the takbīr three times. Subsequently, they followed this procedure at every prescribed session of the worship.\(^{588}\)

In this year, al-Ma'mūn became angry with 'Ālī b. Hishām; he sent 'Ujayf b. 'Anbasah and Ahmād b. Hishām to him, and ordered the confiscation of his property and weapons.\(^{589}\)

In this year, Umm Ja'far (Zubaydah, mother of al-Amin) died at Baghdad in Jumādā I (June–July 831).\(^{590}\)

In this year, Ghassān b. 'Abbād arrived from Sind, after Bishr b. Dāwūd al-Muhallabi had come to him seeking a guarantee of security. Ghassān restored order in Sind, and appointed as chief financial officer (ista'mala) there 'Imrān b. Mūsā al-Barmaki.\(^{591}\)

A poet said:

The gleam of battle is in Ghassān's sword,

and a deadly fate lies in two edges of its point.

When he brings it along to the land of Sind,

Bishr shows his submission [literally: lets himself be led]

to him,
Swearing that he will never again, while ever any worshipper makes the pilgrimage in duty to God
and hurls his pebbles from the two [sic] piles of stones [actually, three piles, in the rajm of Satan at Minā],

Act treacherously, throwing off allegiance to rulers and suddenly attacking
troops which seek refuge in his nobility [dhurwatayhi, literally, "his two peaks"].

Ghassān then came back to al-Ma'mūn.
(In this year,) Ja'far b. Dāwūd al-Qummi fled to Qumm and threw off his allegiance there.592

In this year, there was an excessively cold spell.
In this year, according to what some people say, Sulaymān b. 'Abdallāh b. Sulaymān b. 'Āli b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abbās led the pilgrimage, but according to what others assert, it was 'Abdallāh b. 'Ubaydallāh b. al-'Abbās b. Muḥammad b. 'Āli b. 'Abdallāh b. al-'Abbās who led the pilgrimage this year; al-Ma'mūn had appointed him governor of the Yemen and had given him the governorship of all the regions which he would pass through till he reached the Yemen. Accordingly 'Abdallāh b. 'Ubaydallāh left Damascus and came to Baghdad; he led the people in the worship there on the day of the breaking of the fast (the first of Shawwāl [November 11, 831]), and then set off from Baghdad on Monday the second of Dhū al-Qa'dah (December 11, 831) and performed the rites of the pilgrimage for the people.593

592. Ibid.
593. Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 266, tr. 120, giving 'Abdallāh b. 'Ubaydallāh b. al-'Abbās as leader of the pilgrimage, and Monday, the first of Dhū al-Qa'dah (actually a Sunday) as the date of his departure from Baghdad, Khalīfah, Ta'rikh, II, 779, also naming him; Azdī, 407, naming Sulaymān; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, loc. cit.
The

Events of the Year

217

(FEBRUARY 7, 832—JANUARY 26, 833)

The events taking place during this year included al-Afšin’s victory at Bimā, a place in the land of Egypt. Its people came forth under a guarantee of security granted on al-Ma’mūn’s authority. The proclamation announcing its capture was read out on the twenty-eighth of Rabi’ II (June 2, 832).594

In this year, al-Ma’mūn came to Egypt during Muharram (February–March 832). ‘Abdūs al-Fihrī was brought before him and executed, and then he returned to Syria.595

594. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 267, tr. 120; Ya’qūbī, Ta’rīkh, II, 569; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 421. This is presumably al-Afšin’s quelling of a rebellion of the Copts at Basharūd in the Lower Delta, described by Kindī, 192, and Severus, IV, 486–502. Yaqūt, Mu’jam, I, 534, however, describes Bimā as a place on the borders of Upper Egypt and the lands of the infidels. See also Vasiliev, Byzance et les Arabes, I, 114–15.

595. Ya’qūbī, Ta’rīkh, loc. cit., giving the exact dates for al-Ma’mūn’s stay of forty-seven days in Egypt as being from the tenth of Muharram to the twenty-sixth of Safar, 217; Kindī, loc. cit., making it forty-nine days; Masʿūdī, Murnīj, VII, 94 = ed. Pellat, § 2778; ‘Uyūn, 376; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, loc. cit. ‘Abdūs was leader of the Coptic revolt.
In this year, al-Ma’mun had the two sons of Hishâm, ‘Ali and Ḥusayn,596 killed at Adana597 in Jumādā I (June–July 832).

Al-Ma’mun Has ‘Ali Killed

The reason for this was because reports reached al-Ma’mun about ‘All’s tyrannical conduct with the people within the governorship entrusted to him by al-Ma’mun—the regions of Jibal—including his killing of people and his seizure of property. ‘Ujayf was therefore sent against him. ‘Ali hoped to fall upon him suddenly and then join up with Bābak, but ‘Ujayf got hold of him and sent him back to al-Ma’mun. The Caliph ordered him to be decapitated. Ibn al-Jalil was in charge of ‘Ali’s execution and Muḥammad b. Yūsuf, his brother’s (‘Ali’s) son,598 was in charge of al-Husayn’s decapitation at Adana on Wednesday, the sixteenth of Jumādā I (June 19, 832). ‘All b. Hishām’s head was sent (first) to Baghdad and Khurasan, where it was paraded in the streets; then it was sent back to Syria and the Jazīrah, where it was publicly paraded in district after district. After this, it was brought to Damascus during Dhū al-Hijjah (December 832–January 833), and then it was sent to Egypt, where it was finally thrown into the Nile (or: the sea, al-bahr).599

It is mentioned that, when al-Ma’mun had ‘Ali b. Hishām executed, he ordered a paper to be written out and hung from his head so that the people might read it. He had the following words written:

In the past, the Commander of the Faithful summoned ‘Ali b. Hishām among the group of Khurasanians whom he summoned to give support and to establish his rightful claims during the time of the deposed one [al-Amin]. ‘Ali

---

596. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 267, tr. 121, gives their nisbah or gentilic of al-Marwazi.
597. The modern capital of Cilicia; see Yāqūt, Mu’tjam, I, 133; Le Strange, Lands, 131; El s.v. [R. Anhegger].
598. I.e., Abū Sa’id Muḥammad b. Yūsuf al-Marwazi, often mentioned in the pages of Tabari.
599. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 267–8, tr. 121; Ya’qūbī, Ta’rīkh, II, 570–1, mentioning that ‘Ali’s head was finally sent to Barqah and then hurled by catapult into the sea; Ibn al-Athir, al-Kāmil, loc. cit.
was one of those who responded, answered the call speedily and gave help enthusiastically. Hence, the Commander of the Faithful acknowledged this to his credit and took him into his service as his protégé, thinking that 'Ali was filled with the fear of God and obedience to Him, and would be whole-heartedly devoted to the interests of the Commander of the Faithful in any administrative office if it were entrusted to him, displaying praiseworthy conduct and incorruptibility in regard to the mode of gain. The Commander of the Faithful heaped favors on him from the outset, and conferred on him the governorship of prestigious provinces, and showered on him munificent gifts, regarding whose value the Commander of the Faithful ordered an enquiry; he found that they amounted to more than fifty million dirhams. Yet 'Ali stretched out his hand into treachery and reckless wastefulness in regard to the office which the Caliph had asked him to watch over in a trustworthy manner. The Caliph therefore removed him from office and banished him from his presence to a remote spot. But then 'Ali besought the Commander of the Faithful to overlook his misdeeds, so the latter vouchsafed to him his forgiveness for them, and appointed him as governor of Jibāl, Azerbaijan and the districts of Armenia, and gave him responsibility for carrying on the war against God's enemies the Khurramiyyah on condition that he did not revert to his former misdeeds. Yet he returned to his old ways more violently than before by his preferring dinārs and dirhams to actions pleasing to God and to His religion; he behaved tyrannically and oppressed the subject population, and he shed prohibited blood. So the Commander of the Faithful sent 'Ujayf b. 'Anbasah with full responsibility to deal with his affair and with a call to restore the situation which 'Ali had brought about. 'Ali attacked 'Ujayf and tried to kill him, but God gave 'Ujayf strength because of his pure-hearted devotion in service to the Commander of the Faithful, so that he was able to ward him off. If 'Ali had been able successfully to wreak what he intended on 'Ujayf, there would have arisen a situation which could not have been put right or reversed.
However, when God desires a matter, it is as good as done. When the Commander of the Faithful put into effect God’s decree concerning ‘Ali b. Hishâm, he realized that he ought not to punish ‘Ali’s offspring for his offences, so he ordered that the same sums as had been paid during ‘Ali’s lifetime to his children, his family, all those in their household and those to whom he used to give allowances, should continue to be paid out to them. If it had not been that ‘Ali b. Hishâm intended the gravest onslaught on ‘Ujayf, he would merely have been counted amongst those of al-Ma’-mûn’s army who had rebelled and acted treacherously like Ísâ b. Mansûr⁶⁰⁰ and his ilk.⁶⁰¹ Farewell!⁶⁰²

In this year, al-Ma’-mûn invaded the Byzantine lands, and halted before and besieged Lu’lu’ah⁶⁰³ for a hundred days. Then he withdrew from there and left as his deputy for the siege ‘Ujayf, but the people of Lu’lu’ah outwitted ‘Ujayf and captured him, so that he remained a prisoner in their hands for eight days until they set him free. [The Emperor] Theophilus⁶⁰⁴ advanced on Lu’lu’ah and surrounded ‘Ujayf; but al-Ma’-mûn dispatched further troops to Lu’lu’ah, and Theophilus fell back before making any contact with the Muslim army. So the people of Lu’lu’ah marched forth to ‘Ujayf under a guarantee of security.⁶⁰⁵

---

600. Presumably Ísâ b. Mansûr al-Râfî‘î, governor of Egypt in 216 [831] and again in 229 [843], see Kindî, 189–93, 196.
601. I.e., and possibly would have been pardoned.
603. The Greek Loulon, on the ancient site of Faustinopolis, a fortress whose site is marked today by Ulu Kişla northwest of Adana; see Vasiliev, op. cit., I, 116–17; Honigmann, 44–5.
604. The second ruler of the Amorian line, who reigned 829–42; see Vasiliev, History of the Byzantine empire, I, 276.
The Events of the Year 217

The Ruler of Byzantium Asks for Peace

In this year, the ruler of Byzantium, Theophilus, wrote to al-Ma'mūn asking for peace. He put his own name first in his letter, and al-F.s. the vizier of Theophilus brought the letter, seeking peace and offering a tribute (literally: a ransom). The actual text of Theophilus's letter to al-Ma'mūn was as follows:

It seems more sensible that the two opposing sides should come together over their respective shares [of good fortune] than adopt courses injurious to themselves. You are not the sort of person who would relinquish such a share which you possess for yourself in favor of a share which might pass to another person. You already know this well enough without my having to tell you. I have written to you inviting you to make a peace agreement and as one desirous of the advantage of a truce in military operations, so that you may remove the burdens of war from upon us and so that we may be to each other friends and a band of associates, in addition to the accruing of benefits and widened scope for trading through commercial outlets, the release of those who have been carried off into captivity and the security of the highways and heartlands of the realms. If you reject this [peace offer], I shall not bamboozle you [literally: creep up on you secretly in an ambush], nor shall I speak to you in an ingratiating, misleading manner; but I shall penetrate into the innermost recesses of your land, take over against you its barriers and scatter its cavalry and infantry alike. And if I do this, it will only be after setting forth a valid excuse [for adopting this course of action] and after setting up between us the standard of decisive argument. Farewell!

607. For this cryptic name, Canard, in Vasiliev, op. cit., I, 289 n. 1, suggests a deformation of Syncellus, originally perhaps written “al-S.q.l.”
608. A proverbial saying, see Maydāni, tr. II, 913.
609. Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 284, tr. 128–9.
Al-Ma'mūn wrote back to him as follows:

There has reached me your letter, in which you ask for a truce in the fighting and call for the making of a mutual peace treaty. In your letter also, you mingle soft words with harsh ones in that you are seeking to achieve conciliation [with me] in regard to the opening-up of commercial outlets, the achieving of advantageous dealings, the release of captives and the cessation of killing and fighting. If it were not that what I am working towards involves proceeding with deliberation and seizing a favorable opportunity through turning things over in the mind, and were it not that I do not formulate any opinion [ra'y] on a future contingency except on a basis of an informed opinion taking into account the welfare of the community [istislah] as to what I prefer in regard to its outcome,610 I should make the answer to your letter [the dispatch of] cavalry horses bearing steadfast, courageous and keen-sighted riders, who would contend with you over your destruction [thuklikum], to seek God's favor by spilling your blood and to make light, as a means of obtaining nearness to God, of the suffering which they will have endured from your military might. Then I should provide them with reinforcements and send them a sufficiency of matériel and military equipment. They are more eager to go forward to the watering-places of death than you are to preserve yourselves from the fearful threat of their onslaught upon you. They have the promise of one of the two best things:611 a speedy victory or a glorious return [to God as martyrs in battle]. But I consider that I should proffer you a warning, with which God establishes clearly for you the decisive proof [of Islam], involving the summoning of you and your supporters to knowledge of the divine unity and the divine law of the religion of the hanifs.612 If you refuse [to accept

610. This passage of the letter seems to echo legal terminology.
611. Cf. Qur'ān, IX, 52.
612. al-Shari'ah al-hanifiyah, i.e., the religion of the hanifs or pre-Islamic monotheist seekers after righteousness, regarded as proto-Muslims, so that al-din al-hanifi/al-shari'ah al-hanifiyah = Islam; see EI² s.v. Hanif [Watt].
The Events of the Year 217

this offer], then you can hand over tribute [literally: a ransom] which will entail the obligation of protection \([dhimmah]\) and make incumbent a respite [from further warfare]. But if you choose not to make that [payment or ransom], then you will clearly experience face-to-face our [martial] qualities to an extent which will make any effort [on my part] of eloquent speaking and an exhaustive attempt at description superfluous. Peace be upon him who follows the divine guidance!\(^{613}\)

In this year, al-Ma'amūn went to Salaghūs\(^{614}\).

In this year, 'Ali b. 'Isā al-Qummī sent along Ja'far b. Dāwūd al-Qummī, and Abū Ishāq b. al-Rashīd had him executed.\(^{615}\)

In this year, Sulaymān b. 'Abdallāh b. Sulaymān b. 'Ali led the pilgrimage.\(^{616}\)

\(^{613}\) Ibn Abī Tāhir, 285, tr. 129, Ya'qūbi, Taʾrikh, II, 568; Vasiliev, op. cit., I, 118–21, 289–91; Canard, in Cambridge medieval history. IV. The Byzantine empire, I, loc. cit.; Shaban, 56, 61.

\(^{614}\) 'Uyūn, 375; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 422. Salaghūs was a fortress beyond Tarsus; see Yāqūt, Muʾjam, II, 238; Le Strange, Palestine, 528.

\(^{615}\) Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, loc. cit.

\(^{616}\) Khalīfah, Taʾrikh, II, 780; Azdi, 411; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, loc. cit.
The events taking place during this year included al-Ma'mūn's journeying from Salaghūs to Raqqah and his executing there Ibn Ukht al-Dārī.

In this year, he ordered the clearing of the population from Rāfiqah so that he might quarter his personal entourage (hasham) there; but the people there raised an outcry, so al-Ma'mūn allowed them to stay.617

In this year, al-Ma'mūn sent his son al-'Abbās to the Byzantine lands and ordered him to encamp at Ṭuwānāh and to embark on a building program there. He had already dispatched thither workmen and detachments of regularly-paid troops (furūd).618 He set to work on this building program, and con-

---

617. Azdi, 412. Rāfiqah was the new garrison town just outside Raqqah (hence its name, "the companion") built by al-Manṣūr on the pattern of the Round City at Baghdad; see Yaqūt, Mu'jam, III, 15; Le Strange, Lands, 100–1; Canard, Ḥamḍānides, 90–1. The two places are sometimes referred to by the geographers as "the two Raqqahs."

618. For this sense of fard, pl. furūd, see Lane, 2374b.
The Events of the Year 218

constructed it to occupy a mile square. He made its wall three farsakhs (eighteen km) in circumference, with four gates, each gate having a fortified tower. Al-Ma'mūn's dispatch of his son al-'Abbās for this purpose was on the first of Jumāda (I [May 25, 833]). He also wrote to his brother Abū Iṣḥāq b. al-Rashid to the effect that he had made a levy on the armies of Damascus, Ḥims, Urdunn and Filaṣṭīn of four thousand men, with the pay allocations of one hundred dirhams for each cavalryman and forty dirhams for each infantryman. He further made a levy on the troops of Egypt, and he wrote to al-'Abbās about the numbers of troops which he had levied from (the armies of) Qinnasrin and the Jazīrah, and to Iṣḥāq b. Ibrāhīm (al-Muš-ʿabī) about those levied from the army of Baghdad, these last amounting to two thousand men. Some of them marched off till they reached Ṭuwānāh and encamped there with al-'Abbās.

The Interrogation of the Judges and Traditionists

In this year, al-Ma'mūn wrote to Iṣḥāq b. Ibrāhīm that he should interrogate the judges and traditionists, and he ordered a group of them to be sent to him at Raqqah. This was the first letter which he issued on this topic, and the text of his letter to Iṣḥāq was as follows:

God has made incumbent upon the imāms and caliphs of the Muslims that they should be zealous in establishing

619. The Arab mile [mil] has been variously estimated, but was probably just over two thousand yards, and three of these made up a farsakh [six km]. The wall three farsakhs in circumference must accordingly have been an outer wall, and not that of the madīnah itself; at all events, these operations must have been on an enormous scale.

620. Mas'ūdī, Murūj, VII, 94 = ed. Pellat, § 2778; Azdī, 412.


God's religion, which He has asked them to guard faithfully; in the heritage of prophethood of which He has made them inheritors; in the tradition of knowledge which He has entrusted to their keeping; in acting justly with the government of their subjects; and in being diligent in obeying God's will in their conduct towards those subjects. Now the Commander of the Faithful asks God to direct him to firmness and resolution in the right way, and to just actions in the exercise of political authority over his people which God, with His compassion and grace, has entrusted to him.624

The Commander of the Faithful has realized that the broad mass and the overwhelming concentration of the base elements of the ordinary people625 and the lower strata of the commonalty are those who, in all the regions and far horizons of the world, have no farsightedness, or vision, or faculty of reasoning by means of such evidential proofs as God approves along the right way which He provides, or faculty of seeking illumination by means of the light of knowledge and God's decisive proofs. [These persons are] a people sunk in ignorance and in blindness about God, plunged into error regarding the true nature of His religion and His unity and faith in Him; [they are] too far off the right track from His clear marks for guidance and the obligation of following in His way; [they are] a people who fall short of being able to grasp the reality of God as He should be recognized, to acknowledge Him exactly as He should be acknowledged and to distinguish between Him and His creation.636 This is because of the feebleness of their judg-

624. The Caliph, while avoiding the claims to infallibility and immaculate-ness (‘ismah) of the Shi‘i Imāms, nevertheless claims a high status for himself as bearer of the Prophet’s charge to guide his people; see Sourdel, op. cit., 44.

625. Hashw al-ra‘iyyah. F. Steppat sees here a possible influence from the terminology of one Middle Persian wisdom text, as known from its later Arabic version, and more generally a strand in al-Ma‘mūn’s religious policy here deriving from earlier Persian imperial governmental attitudes; see “From ‘abd Ardasīr to al-Ma‘mūn: a Persian element in the policy of the Miḥna,” in Studia arabica et islamica, Festschrift for Ihsān ‘Abbās, 43–4.

636. Here the Caliph’s contempt for the intellectual powers and judgment of the masses of his subjects distances him from the Sunni veneration for the
ment, the deficiency of their intellects and their lack of fa-
cility in reflecting upon things and calling them to mind;
all this arises from the fact that they consider as perfectly
equal God Himself and the Qur'ān which He has revealed;
they have agreed with one voice and have asserted une-
quivocally that it is eternal and primordial, not created nor
originated nor invented in any way by God. Yet God has
said in the clear and unambiguous parts of His Book,
which He has set forth as a healing for what there is [of an-
guish] in people's breasts and as an act of mercy and guid-
ance for the believers, "Indeed, we have made it an Arabic
Qur'ān."627 Now everything which God made He must
have created. He has also said, "Praise be to God who has
created the heavens and earth and has made the darkness
and the light."628 He has further said, "In this way, We re-
count to you some of the stories of the past."629 and He
gives the information that this is an account of events
which He brought into existence subsequently to those
events happening, and with it He followed up the begin-
ings of the events. He has also said, "Alif, lām, rā'. A
book, whose miraculous signs have been clearly set forth
and then made distinct, from One wise and well-in-
formed."630 Now everything which has been clearly set
forth and made distinct must necessarily have an agent
who brings these actions to pass; God is the One who has
clearly set forth His Book and made it distinct, and He is
its creator and originator.

Furthermore, those are the people who dispute about
vain and useless things and then invite others to adopt
their views.631 They consider themselves adherents of the
sunnah, whereas in every section of the Book of God there

627. Qur'ān, XLIII, 2/3.
628. Qur'ān, VI, 1.
629. Qur'ān, XX, 99.
631. I.e., those who should give instruction and provide a lead for the masses are themselves purveyors of false teaching.
is an account related by Him which invalidates their words and gives the lie to their claims, turning their sayings and their call to adopt their professed beliefs back on themselves. Despite all this, they go on to make an outward show of being people of the divine truth, the [real] religion and the community of Muslims, and assert that all others are people of false beliefs, infidelity and schism. They raise themselves up importunately against the people with these assertions, and thereby deliberately lead astray the ignorant, to the point that a group of adherents of the false way, who display submissiveness to someone other than God and who lead an ascetic life—but for another cause and not the true faith—have inclined towards agreement with them and accordance with their evil opinions, thereby acquiring for themselves glory in their eyes and securing for themselves leadership and a reputation for probity amongst them. These people have forsaken the divine truth for their own delusions and have adopted for themselves a supporter for their error to the exclusion of God. Thus their testimony had been accepted because they [the ignorant ones or the people of the false way] have declared them [those who claim to be the people of truth] to be veracious witnesses, and the prescriptions of the Book have been put into effect through them [those who claim to be the people of truth], despite the suspect nature of their religion, the corruptness of their honor and the depraved nature of their intentions and their faith.

That has been their ultimate aim, to which they have urged others and which they have sought after in their own course of action and in their mendaciousness towards their Lord, even though the solemn covenant of the Book has been laid upon them, that they should not say anything against God except what is true, and even though they have studied intently its contents. These are the people whom “God has made deaf and has blinded their eyes. Do they not consider the Qur‘ān, or are there locks on their hearts?”

The Events of the Year 218

The Commander of the Faithful considers that these people are the worst of the Muslim community and the chief ones in error, the ones who are defective in their belief in the divine unity and who have an imperfect share in the faith. They are vessels of ignorance, banners [or: milestones, a′lām] of mendaciousness and the tongue of Iblis, who speaks through his companions and strikes terror into the hearts of his adversaries, the people of God’s own religion. They are the ones most fittingly considered as suspect in their truthfulness, whose witness is to be discarded and whose words and deeds are alike to be mistrusted. For there can be no good works except after sure faith, and no sure faith except after fully apprehending the true nature of Islam and a sincere profession of faith in the divine unity. Whoever is too blind to perceive his own right course and his share of faith in God and in His unity has, in other respects in regard to his conduct and endeavors to bear witness to the faith, become even more blind and even more errant from the right road.

By the life of the Commander of the Faithful! The person who most properly deserves to be branded as a liar in his utterances and as a forger of false testimony is the one who utters lies against God and His divine revelation and who does not recognize God as He really is. Indeed, the person who most appropriately deserves to be rejected when he bears witness about what God ordains and about His religion is the one who rejects God’s testimony to His Book and who makes slanderous statements about God’s truth through his vain lying.

Therefore, summon together all the judges in your sphere of jurisdiction and read out to them this letter from the Commander of the Faithful to you. Begin by testing them out concerning what they say and by finding out from them their beliefs about God’s creating and originating the Qur’ān in time. Inform them too that the Commander of the Faithful will not seek the assistance in any of his administrative tasks of anyone whose religion, whose sincerity of faith in God’s unity and whose own religious beliefs are not deemed trustworthy, nor will he
place any reliance on such a man in the responsibilities laid on him by God and in the affairs of his subjects which have been entrusted to him. Then when they have publicly declared that [the Qur’an is created] and have shown full agreement with the Commander of the Faithful concerning it, and are on the road of right guidance and salvation, order them to interrogate closely the legal witnesses within their sphere of jurisdiction and to question them about their knowledge of the Qur’an; then [they are] no longer to recognize the validity of the testimony of those failing to affirm or hold the view that the Qur’an was created and originated in time, and [they are] to prevent the admission and countersigning of such testimony in the judge’s own court. Write back to the Commander of the Faithful what you learn from the judges over the people within your administrative province as to the results of their enquiries and their ordering these processes to be set in motion. Then keep a close oversight of them and search out what they have been doing, to such a point that God’s decrees are only put into execution on the testimony of people clear-sighted in religion and wholly sincere in belief in the divine unity. Write to the Commander of the Faithful about what happens in regard to all this, if God wills.

He wrote this in Rabi‘ I 218 (March–April 833).  633

Al-Ma’mūn wrote to Ishaq b. Ibrahim about sending (to him) seven persons, including Muhammad b. Sa’d, 634 the secretary of al-Waqidi; 635 Abū Muslim, the one charged with the task of writing down dictated information [mustamli] from Yazid b. Hārūn; 636 Yahyā b. Ma’in; 637 Abū Khaythamah Zuhayr b. Harb; 638

---

634. The historian and traditionist, died in 230 [845]; see EI2 s.v. Ibn Sa’d [J.W. Fück]; Sezgin, GAS, I, 300–1.
635. The historian Muhammad b. ‘Umar, died in 207 [823]; see EI1 s.v. [J. Horovitz]; Sezgin, GAS, I, 294–7.
636. Qur’an commentator and traditionist, died in 206 [821]; see ibid., I, 40.
637. Traditionist, died in 233 [847]; see ibid., I, 106–7.
638. Traditionist, died in 234 [848]; see ibid., I, 107.
The Events of the Year 218

Ismāʿīl b. Dāwūd; Ismāʿīl b. Abī Masʿūd; and Ṭahlab b. (Ibrāhīm) al-Dawraqī. These seven persons were sent to him (at Raqqah), and he put them to the test (imtahanahum) and interrogated them about the creation of the Qurʾān. They all replied to him that the Qurʾān was created. Hence he dispatched them to the City of Peace, and Ishaq b. Ibrāhīm summoned them together at his house. He announced publicly their opinion and their judgement to a gathering of experts in the religious law (fuqahāʾ) and senior traditionists, and they affirmed exactly what the seven persons had replied to al-Maʿmūn. So Ishaq let them go. What Ishaq b. Ibrāhīm did in this matter was by the command of al-Maʿmūn.

After this, al-Maʿmūn wrote to Ishaq b. Ibrāhīm as follows:

That which God has a right to expect from His representatives [or: caliphs, khulafāʾ] on earth and from those entrusted by Him with authority over His servants, upon whom He has been pleased to lay the setting up of His religion and upon whom He has laid the burden of caring for His creatures, the putting into effect of His ordinance and His laws (sunanīhi), and the conscious imitation of His justice among His creation, is that they should exert themselves earnestly for God; render Him sincere service in that which He has asked them to keep safe and has laid upon them; make Him known through that excellence of learning which He has entrusted to them and the knowledge which He has placed within them; guide back to Him the one who has turned aside from Him and bring back the one who has turned his back from His command; trace out for their subjects the way of salvation for them; draw their attention to the limits of their faith and the way to their heavenly success and protection from sin; and reveal to them those of their affairs which are hidden from them and those which are dubious and obscure by means of what will remove doubt from them and bring back illumi-

639. Traditionist, died in 246 (860); see ibid., I, 112.
640. See above, 198.
641. Ibn Abī Tāhīr, 343-4, tr. 155-6; Patton, 64-5.
nation and clear knowledge to them all. [God also claims from them as of right] that they should bring this about by guiding the subjects aright and giving them clear vision, since this involves all the different kinds of their actions and systematically gathers together their shares of fortune in this present life and in the next. They [God's representatives, the caliphs] should reflect how God is the one who holds himself ready to question them about what they have been made responsible for, and to reward them for what they have done in advance and have laid up with Him. The Commander of the Faithful's way to success comes through God alone, and his sufficiency is in God, who is all-sufficient for him.

Among those things which the Commander of the Faithful has made plain to himself by reflection, and has studied intently by his thinking so that the great danger attending it has become obvious, as well as the seriousness of the corruption and harm which will rebound on religion, are the sayings which the Muslims are passing round among themselves about the Qur'an, which God has established as an exemplar for them and an enduring legacy to them of the Messenger of God and His chosen one, Muhammad. [Another thing is] the confusedness of opinion about the Qur'an in the minds of many people, to the point that it has seemed good to them and attractive to their intellects that it is not created. They thereby lay themselves open to the risk of rejecting God's creative power, by which He is distinguished from His creation and remains apart in His splendor in the bringing into existence of all things by means of His wisdom and their being originated by His power, and in His priority in time over them by reason of His primordial existence, whose beginning cannot be attained and whose extent cannot be comprehended. Everything apart from Him is a created object from His creation and a new thing which He has brought into existence. [They hold this erroneous view about the uncreatedness of the Qur'an] even though the Qur'an itself speaks about God's creating power, sets forth its proof and decisively confutes all difference of opinion about it.
These people] talk just like the Christians when they claim that Jesus son of Mary was not created, because he was the Word of God. But God says, "Indeed, We have made it an Arabic Qur'an," meaning, "We have created it," just as He also says, "And He made from him his spouse, that he might dwell with her." He also says, "We have made the night a garment and have made the daylight as a means of sustenance," and, "We have made every living thing from water." Thus God places the Qur'an and these created things, which He mentions with the indications of the act of making, on an equal footing, and He gives the information that He alone is the one who made it, saying, "Indeed, it is a glorious Qur'an, [recorded] on a preserved tablet." Now He says that on the supposition that the tablet encompasses the Qur'an, and only something which is created can be encompassed by something else. He likewise says to His prophet, "Do not move your tongue in it in order to get through it quickly," and also, "No new reminder comes to them from their Lord." He further says, "Who does greater wrong than the one who forges a lie against God or accounts His miraculous signs false?" He speaks too about a group of people whom He blames for their mendacity, in that they have said, "God has not sent down anything to a human being." Then, by the tongue of His messenger, He brands...
them as liars, and says to His messenger, "Say, who has sent down the Book which Moses brought?" Hence God calls the Qur‘ān a collection to be recited, a reminder, and item of faith, a light, a right guidance, a blessed thing, a composition in Arabic and a story. For He says, "We shall narrate to you the finest of stories, in that We have revealed to you by inspiration this Qur‘ān." He also says, "Say, indeed, if men and jinn agree together to produce a Qur‘ān like this one, they will not be able to produce its like." He says additionally, "Say, bring forth ten sūras like it which have been invented," and, "Falsehood does not come to it either from before or from behind it."

In this way, God places [at least putatively] something before it and after it, and indicates that it is finite and created. But by their utterances concerning the Qur‘ān, these ignorant people have enlarged the breach in their religion and the defect in their truthworthiness; they have made the way easy for the enemy of Islam, and have confessed perversion of the Qur‘ānic text and heresy against their own hearts; they have made known and described God’s work of creation and His action by that form of description which belongs to God alone and have compared Him with it, whereas it is only His creation that is the fitting subject of comparison. The Commander of the Faithful does not consider that the person professing this doctrine has any share in the true religion, nor any part in the real faith and the certainty of revealed truth. Nor does he consider that he should regard any of them as suitable for an office of confidence like that of trusted depository, person in good legal standing, legal witness, person veracious in speech or report, or one involving the exercise of any aspect of authority over the subjects. Moreover, even if any of them is outwardly known for his equitable behavior and is

653. Ibid.
657. Qur‘ān, XLI, 42.
recognised for his straightforwardness, as one who pursues a just course among the subjects, nevertheless, the branches must be traced back to their roots and must be classified among the categories of praise or blame according to these roots. A man who is ignorant in the matter of his religion, that which God has commanded him in regard to His divine unity, is even more sunk in ignorance in regard to other things, more blind in finding right guidance concerning other matters and more erring from the right road.

So read out the Commander of the Faithful's letter, and what he has instructed you in it, to Ja'far b. 'Isā and the judge 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ishāq, and question them both about their knowledge of the Qur'ān. Inform them that the Commander of the Faithful will not seek the aid, in any affairs of the Muslims, of anyone except those in whose sincerity of faith and belief in God's unity he has full trust, and that belief in God's unity cannot be imputed to anyone who does not affirm that the Qur'ān is created. If Ja'far b. 'Isā and 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ishāq profess the Commander of the Faithful's view in this regard, then command them both to test those who are in their courts for purposes of giving evidence about claimant's rights and to cite them to answer for their professions regarding the Qur'ān. If any of them will not profess that the Qur'ān is created, then the two of them are to declare that person's legal witness invalid and to refrain from pronouncing sentence on a basis of what he says, even though his probity of life be firmly established by his equity and straightforwardness. Do this with all the judges in the remainder of your sphere of administrative authority and watch over them with such a careful watch as God may by means of it cause an increase in the clear-sightedness of the clear-sighted person and may prevent the one in doubt from neglecting his religion. Then, if God wills, write to the Commander of the Faithful what you are doing in this matter.

658. Scholar of the Ḥanafi law school; see Watt, 286.
He continued to relate: Acting on these instructions, Ishāq b. Ibrāhīm summoned to his presence a number of the faqihs, judges (ḥukkām) and traditionists. These included Abū Ḥassān al-Ziyādī, Bishr b. al-Walid al-Kindī, ‘Ali b. Abī Muqāṭīl, al-Faḍl b. Ghānim, al-Dhayyāl b. al-Haytham, (al-Ḥasan b. Ḥammād) Sajjādah, (‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Umar) al-Qawārīrī, Ahmad b. Ḥanbal, Qutaybah (b. Sa‘īd), Sa‘dawayh al-Wāṣīṭī, ‘Alī b. al-Ja‘d, Ishāq b. Abī Isrā‘īl, Ibn al-Hirsh, Ibn ‘Ulayyah al-Akbar, Yahyā b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān al-‘Umārī and another shaykh from the progeny of ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb who was judge of Raqqah, Abū Naṣr al-Tammār, Abū Ma‘mar al-Qaṭī‘ī, Muḥammad b. Ḥātim b. Maymūn, Muḥammad b. Nūḥ al-Maḍrūb and Ibn al-Farrukhān. He further summoned another group, which included al-Nadr b. Shumayl, Ibn ‘Alī b. ‘Aṣim, Abū al-‘Awwām al-Bazzāz, Ibn Shujā‘ and ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Ishāq.660 All of these were brought into Ishāq’s presence en masse, and he read out to them twice this letter of al-Ma‘mūn’s until they comprehended it. Then he asked Bishr b. al-Walid,661 “What is your view about the Qur‘ān?” He replied, “I have acquainted the Commander of the Faithful with my views about this on more than one occasion.” Ishāq replied, “But this letter from the Commander of the Faithful is something new, as you can see.” Bishr retorted, “I say that the Qur‘ān is the word of God.” Ishāq said, “I didn’t ask you about this. Is it created?” Bishr responded, “God is the creator of everything.” Ishāq said, “Is not the Qur‘ān a thing?” Bishr replied, “It is a thing.” Ishāq said, “Then it must be created?” Bishr replied, “It is not a creator.” Ishāq said, “I didn’t ask you about this; is it created?” Bishr replied, “I cannot do better than what I have said to you, and I have already secured from the Caliph a promise that I do not have to speak about it; I have no views other than what I have told you.” Ishāq b. Ibrāhīm took up a document which lay before him and read it out and explained it to him. Then he went on to say, “Bear witness that there is no god but God, the One, the Solitary, before whom there was nothing and after whom

660. See concerning various of these figures, ibid., 70; Watt, 281, 286.
661. See ibid., 281; Sezgin, GAS, I, 438.
The Events of the Year 218

there shall be nothing, and whom nothing of His creation resembles in any meaning or sense whatsoever." Bishr retorted, "I bear witness to that, and I have been having people beaten for less than that ["alà dûnî hâdhâ]." Išhāq turned to the clerk and said, "Set down what he has said."

Then Išhāq said to 'Alī b. Muqātil "What do you say, O 'Alī?" 'Alī replied, "I have let the Commander of the Faithful hear my words about this on several occasions, and I have nothing to add to what he has already heard." Išhāq then put 'Alī to the test with the document, and 'Alī gave his assent to its contents. Then Išhāq said, "Is the Qurʾān created?" 'Alī replied, "The Qurʾān is the word of God." Išhāq said, "I didn't ask you about this." 'Alī responded, "It is the word of God, but if the Commander of the Faithful commands us with the doing of a thing, we hear and obey." Išhāq said to the clerk, "Set down his views." Then he said to al-Dhayyāl more or less what he had said to 'Alī b. Abī Muqātil, and al-Dhayyāl replied in the same vein.

Then Išhāq said to Abū Ħassān al-Ziyādī "What is your opinion?" He replied, "Ask about anything you like." Then Išhāq read out the document and explained it to him, and Abū Ħassān gave his assent to the contents. Then Išhāq said, "Any person who does not agree with these doctrines is an unbeliever," and asked him, "Is the Qurʾān itself created?" Abū Ħassān replied, "The Qurʾān is the word of God, and God is the creator of everything; all things apart from him are created. But the Commander of the Faithful is our Imām, and by means of him we have heard the whole sum of knowledge. He has heard what we have not heard, and he knows what we do not know. God has invested him with the rule over us; he upholds the pilgrimage and the worship for us, we hand over to him the poor-tax levied on our wealth, we fight at his side in the holy war and we recognize his imāmāte as a true one. So if he commands us, we obey his orders; if he forbids us from doing something, we desist; and if he calls upon us, we respond to him." Išhāq

[1123]

662. Judge and traditionist who died in 243 [857/8] and who is frequently quoted by Ibn Abī Ṭāhir (see concerning this, above, 158 n. 474); see Ibn al-Nadīm, Fihrist, tr. B. Dodge, I, 241–2.
said, "Is the Qur'an itself created?" In answer, Abū Ḥassān repeated his views as given above. Ishaq said, "This is the Commander of the Faithful's doctrine." Abū Ḥassān retorted, "But sometimes the Commander of the Faithful’s view is one concerning which he gives the people no explicit command and does not call upon them to adopt it. If, however, you tell me that the Commander of the Faithful has commanded you that I should say this, I will say whatever you command me to say, for you are a trustworthy person, one on whom reliance is to be placed regarding anything which you convey to me from him; hence if you convey to me any command from him about anything, I will hasten to do it." Ishaq said, "He has not given me the order to convey anything to you." 'Ali b. Abī Muqātil said, "The Commander of the Faithful's words may conceivably be like the variation in views amongst the Companions of the Messenger of God concerning the obligatory shares [farā'id] and inheritances, and he has not given any injunction to the people about them." Abū Ḥassān said to him, "I have no idea but to hear and obey; command me, and I shall obey his orders." Ishaq said, "The Commander of the Faithful has not commanded me to give you any orders, but only that I should put you to the test."

He then came back to Ahmad b. Ḥanbal and said to him, "What is your view concerning the Qur'an?" Ahmad replied, "It is the word of God." Ishaq said, "Is it created?" Ahmad retorted, "It is the word of God; I cannot add any more to these words." Ishaq then put him to the test with the contents of the document. When he came to the words "There is nothing like Him, and He is the hearing and seeing one," he held back from the phrase... whom nothing of His creation resembles in any meaning or sense whatsoever." Ibn al-Bakkā’ al-Asghar interrupted him and said, "May God grant you righteousness! It speaks of 'a hearing one' because of ears and 'a seeing one' be-

---

663. See J. Schacht, An introduction to Islamic law, 170 ff.; EI² s.v. Farā'id (T.W. Juynboll).
664. Spearhead of the conservative and traditionalist opposition to al-ampton’s religious policy here and founder of the subsequent Ḥanbali law school; see Patton, passim; Watt, index, EI² s.v. (H. Laoust).
cause of eyes!” Ishāq said to Aḥmad b. Ḥanbal, “What do the words ‘a hearing and seeing one’ mean?” Aḥmad replied, “God is even as He has described Himself.” Ishāq said, “But what does it mean?” Aḥmad responded, “I don’t know, He is even as He has described Himself.” Then Ishāq summoned them, one by one, and they all said that the Qur’ān was the word of God except for this group of people: Qutaybah, ‘Ubaydallāh b. Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan, Ibn ‘Ulayyah al-Akbar, Ibn al-Bakka’, ‘Abd al-Mun‘im b. Idris b. Bint Wahb b. Munabbih, al-Muẓaffar b. Murajjā, a blind man who was not a faqih and about whom nothing was known except that he had been introduced into there, the judge of Raqqah who was descended from ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb and Ibn al-Ḥmar. In regard to Ibn al-Bakka’ al-Akbar, he replied that the Qur’ān was something made (maj‘ūl) because of God’s words, “Indeed, we have made it [ja`alnahu] an Arabic Qur’ān,” and something originated (muhdath) because of His words, “No recently-originated [muhdath] warning has come to them from their Lord.” Ishāq said to him, “Is, then, what is made, created?” Ibn al-Bakka’ replied, “Yes.” Ishāq said, “So the Qur’ān is created?” Ibn al-Bakka’ replied, “I don’t say that it is created, but that it is something made.” Ishāq then wrote down what he had said.

When he had finished putting the members of the group to the test and had recorded their replies, Ibn al-Bakka’ al-Asghar broke in, saying, “May God grant you righteousness! These two judges are leading scholars, why don’t you order them [to affirm their views on the Qur’ān?”. He kept on urging this. Ishāq said to him, “These two men are the ones who held their position through the Commander of the Faithful’s nomination.” Ibn al-Bakka’ kept on, “Why don’t you order them to let us hear their views, so that we might pass these down directly from them?” Ishāq replied, “If you will serve as a witness before them, you will know their views, if God wills.” He wrote down the views of all the group one after the other, and these were sent to al-Ma‘mūn. The group remained there for nine

———
665. Qur’ān, XLIII, 2/3.  
666. Qur’ān, XXI, 2.  
days.\textsuperscript{668} Then Ishaq summoned them together again, the Caliph’s letter having arrived in answer to Ishaq b. Ibrāhīm’s communication regarding the affair. Its text was as follows:

In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate. There has reached the Commander of the Faithful your letter, comprising an answer to his letter sent to you about that doctrine which the ostentatious ones among the people of qiblah [the Muslims] and those among the people of the faith who seek a leadership for which they are not qualified, profess about the creation of the Qur’ān. The Commander of the Faithful also commanded you in that letter to put them to the test, investigate their various positions and set them down in their appropriate places. You mention summoning to your presence Ja’far b. ʿĪsā and ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. Ishaq on the arrival of the Commander of the Faithful’s letter, together with your summoning those who have been classed as experts on the religious law, who have been recognized as transmitters of tradition and who have set themselves up as competent to give judicial decisions in the City of Peace; [you mention] your reading the Commander of the Faithful’s letter out to the assembled group; [you mention] interrogating them about their religious convictions regarding the Qur’ān; [you mention] pointing out to them how they could best serve their own interests; [you mention] their agreement to reject anthropomorphism \textit{[tashbih]}\textsuperscript{669} and their differences of view concerning the Qur’ān. [You also mention] your giving orders to those of them who would not profess that the Qur’ān was created to refrain from transmitting traditions and from giving judicial decisions, whether in private or in public; and [you mention] your giving instructions to al-Sindi and to ʿAbbās, the Commander of the Faithful’s client, to the same effect as the instructions concerning them which you gave to the two judges, even the same

\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{668} Ibid., 74. 
\textsuperscript{669} See for this, also called \textit{tajsīm}, Watt, 246–9, 290, 295; \textit{EI} s.v. Tashbih (R. Strothmann).}
which the Commander of the Faithful prescribed to you, namely, the testing of the legal witnesses who attend their courts. [You also mention] the dispatch of letters to the judges in the outlying parts of the areas of your administrative jurisdiction, instructing them to come to you so that you might constrain them and test them according to what the Commander of the Faithful has defined; and [you mention] your listing at the end of your letter the names of those who were present and their professed doctrines.

The Commander of the Faithful has understood what you have recounted, and he gives God abundant praise, as indeed befits Him, and asks Him to grant a blessing upon His servant and His messenger Muḥammad, and he desires earnestly of God success in obeying Him and, through his mercifulness, effective aid to realize his good intentions. The Commander of the Faithful has also pondered over what you have written to him concerning the names of those whom you interrogated about the Qurʾān, the replies which you got back from each one of those persons in regard to it, and the explanations which you have given of their views.

As for what the deluded Bishr b. al-Walīd has said about rejecting anthropomorphic conceptions and as for what he has held back from in connection with the createdness of the Qurʾān, and also what he has claimed concerning his not having to speak about that and his having obtained an agreement to this effect from the Commander of the Faithful—he has lied about it and shown himself an unbeliever, and has uttered deceit and falsehood. For there has not passed between him and the Commander of the Faithful any agreement or exchange of views on this topic or on any other beyond his telling the Commander of the Faithful that he believed in the doctrine of exclusive devotion to God [ikhlāṣ]670 and profession of the Qurʾān’s createdness. So summon him before you and tell him what the Commander of the Faithful has just told you about this
matter; require him to answer about what he has said regarding the Qurʾān and ask him to recant his beliefs. For indeed, the Commander of the Faithful believes that you should ask someone who holds views like his to recant, since such views are unalloyed infidelity and sheer polytheism in the Commander of the Faithful's opinion. If he then repents of these views, proclaim his action publicly and leave him alone, but if he persists in his polytheism and refuses, in his unbelief and heresy, to admit that the Qurʾān is created, then have him decapitated and, if God wills, send his head along to the Commander of the Faithful. Do likewise with Ibrāhim b. al-Mahdī. Test him in the same terms as you tested Bishr, for he used to profess Bishr's views, and reports about him have reached the Commander of the Faithful. If he acknowledges that the Qurʾān is created, proclaim his action publicly and disclose it fully; but if not, then have him decapitated and, if God wills, send his head along to the Commander of the Faithful.

As for ʿAlī b. Abi Muqātil, say to him, "Are you not the person who said to the Commander of the Faithful, 'You are the one who declares what is permissible and what is not permissible,' and who spoke to him about what you have spoke to him about." The recollection of this cannot yet have left him. As for al-Dhayyāl b. al-Haytham, tell him that what should occupy his mind is the corn which he used to steal at Anbār and what he used to appropriate for himself in the city of the Commander of the Faithful Abū al-ʿAbbās [al-Saffāh], and that if he were a follower in the footsteps of his forefathers, walking in their ways and keeping to their identical tracks, he would certainly not go off into polytheism after having believed. As for Aḥmad b. Yazīd, known as Abū al-ʿAwwām, and his saying that he cannot answer well regarding the Qurʾān, tell him that he is a child in intellect, if not one in years, and an ignoramus, and that unless he sees his way to answer properly about the Qurʾān, he will certainly see his way to do it properly when

---

671. Following the reading of the Addenda et emendanda., p. DCCLXXII.
punishment befalls him; then if he still does not do it, there is the sword beyond that, if God wills. As for Ahmad b. Hanbal and what you write about him, tell him that the Commander of the Faithful has understood the significance of that view and his conduct regarding it, and from it he deduces as proven his ignorance and defective intelligence. As for al-Fadl b. Ghānim, tell him that what he did in Egypt and the riches which he amassed for himself in less than one year have not been hidden from the Commander of the Faithful, nor has the legal imbroglio over those doings which went on between him and al-Muṭṭalib b. 'Abdallāh;672 for one cannot but believe that a man who behaved as he did, and who showed himself as avid for dinārs and dirhams as he did, would barter his faith out of lust for money and out of a preference for deriving an immediate advantage from it. [Remind him,] moreover, that he is the one who said to 'Alī b. Hishām what he said and who opposed him in that in which he opposed him, and [remind him] what it was that caused him to abandon that doctrine and brought him over to another one. As for al-Ziyādī, tell him that he is alleging a connection with the first false claimant over lineage in Islam, in whose case the Messenger of God's ordinance was set aside;673 it is only fitting that he should behave as he does. [But Abū Ḥassān denied that he was a client of Ziyād (b. Abīhi),674 or indeed that he was anyone's client, and stated that he simply had a nisbah relating to Ziyād for some other reason.] As for the person known as Abū Naṣr al-Tammār, the Commander of the Faithful compares the insignificance of his intellect with the insignificance of his trade.675

As for al-Fadl b. al-Farrukhān, tell him that, through the doctrine which he professes on the Qurʿān, he has tried to appro-

672. Al-Fadl was appointed chief judge in Egypt by the governor al-Muṭṭalib b. 'Abdallāh al-Khuṭṭāṭ in 198 (813), but was dismissed after ten months in office; see Kindi, 422–3.
673. I.e., a connection with Ziyād b. Abīhi, who claimed to be a son of the Meccan leader Abū Sufyān by the notorious whore Sumayyah and whom the Caliph Muʿawiyah b. Abī Sufyān endeavored to adopt into the Umayyad family; see H. Lammens, Études sur le siècle des Omeyyades, 27–161; El 1 s.v. [Lammens].
674. I.e., that a forebear of his had been a client of Ziyād b. Abīhi.
675. Tammār = “seller of dates” (tamr).
priate the deposits which 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Iṣḥāq and others entrusted to him, waiting for a favorable moment when someone will ask him to act as a depository and hoping to add to what has already come into his hands; furthermore, there is no way of securing redress from him, because of the extended duration of the agreement and the prolongation of the period of its existence. But say to 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Iṣḥāq, “May God not recompense you with good for your giving strength to a man like this and your reposing trust in him, seeing that he is firmly bound up with polytheism and has completely thrown off belief in God’s unity.” As for Muḥammad b. Ḥātim, Ibn Nūḥ and the man known as Abū Ma’ām, tell them that they are too much occupied with devouring usury properly to grasp the concept of the divine unity and that, if the Commander of the Faithful had sought legal justification in combatting them for the sake of God and launching a holy war against them solely on the grounds of their taking usury and that which has been revealed in the Qur’ān regarding their likes, he would surely have found it lawful. How will it be with them now, when they have added polytheism to their practice of usury and have become just like the Christians? As for Ahmad b. Shujā’, tell him that you were in close contact with him only recently and extracted from him what he himself had confiscated as being licit of ‘Ali b. Hishām’s wealth, and [tell him] that he is one of those people whose religion is made up of dinārs and dirhams. As for Sa’dawayh al-Wāṣiṭī, say to him, “May God make vile a man whose ostentatious preparation of himself for transmitting traditions, his self-glorification by means of it and his avidity in seeking a leading position in that field have reached such a pitch that he looks forward to the coming of the mihnah and proclaims his desire to ingratiate himself with me through it. Let him be put to the test, and [if he assents to the createdness of the Qur’ān,] he may still teach traditions.

As for the person who is known as Sajjādah and his denial that he has ever heard the doctrine that the Qur’ān is created from any of the traditionists and faqīhs with whom he used to study, tell him that, in his concern to prepare datestones and his rubbing [his forehead] in order to make the callosity on his
forehead [sajjāda] look more imposing, and similarly in his care for the deposits which 'Ali b. Yaḥyā and others committed to his keeping, lies that which has diverted his attention from the idea of God’s unity and made him unmindful of it. Then ask him about what Yūsuf b. Abī Yūsuf and Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan used to say, if he really did have contact with them and attend their sessions for study. As for al-Qawārīrī, what shows up clearly his real beliefs, his evil conduct and the feebleness of his intellect and religion can be discerned in what has become open and notorious about his proclivities and his taking of bribes and presents offered to influence his decision favorably. It has also reached the Commander of the Faithful that he has taken upon himself responsibility for [the settling of] legal questions for Jaʿfar b. ‘Īsā al-Ḥasanī; so command Jaʿfar b. ‘Īsā to set him aside and no longer place any reliance on him or confidence in him. As for Yahyā b. ‘Abd al-Raḥmān al-‘Umāri, if he were genuinely from the progeny of ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, it is well-known how he would answer. As for Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan b. ‘Alī b. ‘Āṣim, if only he really did imitate his ancestors, he would not profess that spurious doctrine which has been related of him. He is still a child who needs instruction.

Now the Commander of the Faithful has also sent to you a certain person called Abū Musʿhir after the Commander of the Faithful had required him to answer in his testing about the Qurʾān. He mumbled indistinctly over it and kept on repeating himself in it, until the Commander of the Faithful ordered the sword to be brought out for him; then he made his profession in the manner of one worthy of censure. So require him to make his affirmation about it, and if he stands fast in it, proclaim it publicly and divulge it openly, if God wills. But those

676. Such a callosity when caused by repeated prostration [sujūd] was regarded as a sign of great piety, but could be fabricated by rubbing the forehead.

677. Muhammad was presumably either the descendant of the traditionist and author on the Prophet’s maghāzī, or raids, ‘Āṣim b. ‘Umar b. Qatādah, died in 120 [738] (see A.A. Duri, The rise of historical writing among the Arabs, 27, 34) or else of ‘Āṣim b. Bahdalah al-Asadi, Kūfān author of one of the seven canonical systems of Qurʾān reading, died in 127 or 128 [745] (see EI² s.v. [A. Jeffery]).
who refuse to abandon their polytheism, from amongst those whom you named to the Commander of the Faithful in your letter and whom the Commander of the Faithful has either mentioned to you or else has refrained from mentioning in this letter of his, and who will not profess that the Qur'ān is created, with the exceptions of Bishr b. al-Walid and Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī, send them all in bonds to the Commander of the Faithful’s encampment, together with someone who will be responsible for watching over and guarding them on the journey; then bring them to the Commander of the Faithful’s encampment and hand them over to the person to whom their delivery has been entrusted, so that the Commander of the Faithful may require them to give their answer. If they do not then recant and repent of their errors, he will consign them en bloc to the sword, if God wills; and there is no power except in God. The Commander of the Faithful has dispatched this letter by a special courier’s letter bag [kharīṭah bundāriyyah], and has not considered [awaiting] the collection of letters for the regular letter bag service [kutub kharā’iṭiyah], thereby expediting it and seeking to advance in God’s favor through the decree which he has issued, expecting to achieve his purpose and thereby gaining a hoped-for generous reward from God. So put into effect the Commander of the Faithful’s order which comes to you, and hasten to give a reply to him about what you are doing by special courier’s letter bag, sent separately from the rest of the letter bags, so that you may inform the Commander of the Faithful what they are doing, if God wills.

(This) was written in the year 218 (833).

When Išḥāq b. Ibrāhīm put the question to them again, all of the group now confessed that the Qur'ān was created, except for four of them—Ahmād b. Ḥanbal, Sajjādah, al-Qawārīrī and Muḥammad b. Nūḥ al-Madrūb. Accordingly, Išḥāq b. Ibrāhīm ordered these last to be loaded with iron fetters. The next day, he sent for [the four of] them together, and they were thrust
forward in irons. He put them to the test once more, and this time Sajjadah responded that the Qur'ān was indeed created. Ishāq therefore ordered his fetters to be struck off and set him free. The others, however, maintained their original position. On the day after that, he had (the three of) them brought out once more and repeated the question. This time, al-Qawārīrī acknowledged that the Qur'ān was created, so Ishāq ordered his fetters to be struck off and set him free. But Ahmad b. Hanbal and Muḥammad b. Nūh persisted in their original profession and would not recant. Hence they were both loaded with fetters and sent to Tarsus, accompanied by a letter from Ishāq with instructions that they should be sent onwards. He further wrote a separate letter giving an explanation of what the group had finally assented to. The group remained (in Baghdad) for a few days, and then Ishāq summoned them. At this juncture, a letter had just reached him from al-Ma'mūn to the effect that:

The Commander of the Faithful has understood what the group assented to. The postmaster and intelligence agent [ṣāhib al-khabar] Sulaymān b. Ya'qūb has reported that Bishr b. al-Walīd has furnished an interpretation of the verse which God Most High revealed in connection with Ḥāmār b. Yāsīr,680 "... except him who is compelled, while his heart is still at peace in belief,"681 but his interpretation is erroneous; God merely refers in this verse to the person who holds fast [in his heart] to the faith, while outwardly professing polytheism. As for the person who holds fast [in his heart] to polytheism, while outwardly showing the faith, the verse does not refer to him at all. Hence, send them all to Tarsus, where they are to wait until the time when the Commander of the Faithful will leave the Byzantine lands.

Ishāq b. Ibrāhīm took guarantors from the group, that they would meet up at the army camp at Tarsus, and accordingly

680. Companion of the Prophet, famed for his piety and knowledge of traditions; see EI² s.v. [H. Reckendorff], noting that various passages of the Qur'ān were interpreted by anti-Umayyad polemicists as referring to 'Ammār.
sent forward Abū Ḥassān, Bishr b. al-Walid, al-Fadl b. Ghānim, 'Ali b. Abī Muqāṭil, al-Dhayyāl b. al-Haytham, Yahyā b. 'Abd al-Raḥmān al-‘Umarī, 'Ali b. al-Ja‘d, Abū al-‘Awwām, Sajjādah, al-Qawāriri, Ibn al-Ḥasan b. 'Ali b. ‘Āṣim, Ishāq b. Abī Isrā‘īl, al-Nadr b. Shumayl, Abū Naṣr al-Tammār, Sa‘dawayh al-Wāsiṭī, Muḥammad b. Ḥātim b. Maymūn, Abū Ma‘mar, Ibn al-Hirsh, Ibn al-Farrukhān, Ahmad b. Shujā‘ and Abū Hārūn b. al-Bakkā‘. When they approached Raqqah, the news of al-Ma‘mūn’s death reached them, and the governor of Raqqah, 'Anbasah b. Ishāq, ordered them to enter the town; but then he sent them back to Ishāq b. Ibrāhim at the City of Peace in the company of the envoy who had been charged with escorting them to the Commander of the Faithful. The envoy delivered them to Ishāq, who instructed them to remain in their houses. He subsequently relented towards them and allowed them to go out. However, Bishr b. al-Walid, al-Dhayyāl, Abū al-‘Awwām and 'Ali b. Abī Muqāṭil set out (from Raqqah) without having obtained permission, and reached Baghdad. As a penalty for that, they received punishment from Ishāq b. Ibrāhim. The rest of the group arrived with Ishāq b. Ibrāhim’s envoy, and he then set them free.\[1133\]

In this year, letters from al-Ma‘mūn were dispatched to his governors in the provinces, (with the heading,) “From the slave of God ‘AbdALLāh, the Imām al-Ma‘mūn, Commander of the Faithful, and his brother, the Caliph in succession to him, Abū Ishāq, son of the Commander of the Faithful al-Rashīd.”\[682\] It is also said that al-Ma‘mūn did not have it written just like that, and that it was only set down in a period of lucidity which al-Ma‘mūn regained from the general state of unconsciousness which came over him during his illness at Budandūn,\[684\] on al-Ma‘mūn’s instructions to al-‘Abbās b. al-Ma‘mūn, to Ishāq (b. Ibrāhīm al-Muṣ’abī) and to ‘AbdALLāh b. Ṭāhir, to the effect that, if death should supervene during this illness of his, then

---

683. ‘Uyun, 377.
684. A river and place in Cilicia to the north of Tarsus, Greek Podandos; see Honigmann, 44–5, 82.
the next Caliph in succession to him should be Abū Isḥāq, son of the Commander of the Faithful al-Rashid. Muḥammad b. Dāwūd wrote that out, sealed the letters and dispatched them.

Abū Isḥāq wrote to his governors, [with the heading] "From Abū Isḥāq, brother of the Commander of the Faithful and Caliph after the Commander of the Faithful." Then there arrived a letter from Abū Isḥāq Muḥammad b. Hārūn al-Rashid to Isḥāq b. Yaḥyā b. Muʿādh, his governor over the jund of Damascus, on Sunday, the thirteenth of Rajab (August 4, 833). Its heading was: "From the slave of God 'Abdallāh, the Imam al-Maʾmūn, Commander of the Faithful, and the Caliph in succession to the Commander of the Faithful [al-Maʾmūn], Abū Isḥāq, son of the Commander of the Faithful al-Rashid," (and its text was as follows,) "The Commander of the Faithful has commanded in the letter to you that you should instruct your [subordinate] governors ['ummāl] that they should conduct themselves well, lighten the financial burdens and avoid harming the people within your administrative district. So instruct your governors concerning this in the strongest possible terms, and write to the officials charged with levying and collecting the land-tax ['ummāl al-kharāj] in the same vein." He wrote a similar letter to all his governors in the various junds of Syria—those of Ḥims, Urdunn and Filastīn—and then when Friday, the nineteenth of Rajab (August 10, 833), came round, Isḥāq b. Yaḥyā b. Muʿādh led the Friday worship in the mosque at Damascus and proclaimed in his khutbah, after prayers for the Commander of the Faithful, "O God, grant righteousness to the Amir, the brother of the Commander of the Faithful Abū Isḥāq, son of the Commander of the Faithful al-Rashīd."

In this year, al-Maʾmūn died.

---

685. Here with the meaning of the administrative region around Damascus, originally settled in the conquest period by an Arab army group (jund); see El s.v. Dijund (Sourdel).
686. Actually a Monday.
687. Actually a Sunday.
The Cause of al-Ma'mūn's Fatal Illness

It is mentioned from Saʻi'd al-ʻAllāf the Qurʼān reciter, who related: Al-Ma'mūn sent for me, at the time when he was in the Byzantine lands, having entered them from Tarsus on Wednesday, the sixteenth of Jumādā II (July 9, 833). I was brought to him at Budandūn. He used often to ask me to recite, and one day he summoned me. I found him sitting on the bank [of the river] of Budandūn with Abū Ishāq al-Mu'taṣim seated at his right hand. He bade me, and I sat down near him, and behold, at that moment, he and Abū Ishāq were dangling their feet in the water [of the river] of Budandūn. He said to me, “O Saʻi'd, dangle your feet in this water too, and taste it; have you ever seen water more cool, more sweet and more clear than this?” I did [as he instructed], and replied, “O Commander of the Faithful, I have never seen its like.” He said, “What comestible would go well with this water, to follow it?” I replied, “The Commander of the Faithful knows best.” He said, “Fresh green dates of the āzādh variety!”

At the very moment when he was uttering these words, the clinking noise of the bridles of the mounts of the postal and intelligence service [barid] could be heard. He turned round and looked, and behold, there were some of the mules of the postal and intelligence service with panniers over their hindquarters in which were gifts. He said to one of his servants, “Go and see if there are any fresh dates amongst these gifts, and if there are in fact any fresh dates, see whether there are any of the āzādh variety and bring them here.” The servant came hurrying back with two baskets of fresh āzādh dates, as if they had been gathered from the palm tree that very moment. He vouchsafed thanks to God Most High, and we were most astonished at all this. Al-Ma'mūn said, “Come forward and eat some!” He and
Abū Ishaq ate some, and I ate with them, and we all drank some of that water; but by the time we got up, each one of us had contracted a fever. That illness proved fatal for al-Ma'mūn; al-Mu'tasim continued to be ill till he reached Iraq; but I myself remained ill only for a short while.⁶⁹⁰

When al-Ma'mūn's illness grew worse, he sent for his son al-'Abbās, although he imagined that he would not arrive (in time). But al-'Abbās came to him, by which time al-Ma'mūn was extremely ill, with mind impaired; the letters containing his instructions regarding Abū Ishaq b. al-Rashid had already been sent off. Al-'Abbās stayed with his father for some days, al-Ma'mūn having already made his last testament, concerning the succession, to his brother Abū Ishaq previously to that. Others say that he did not make this testament until al-'Abbās, the judges, the faqihs, the army commanders and the secretaries were all present.

(1136) [The text of] his last testament was as follows:

This is what 'Abdallāh b. Hārūn, the Commander of the Faithful, asks witness to be borne to, in the presence of those who have gathered round him. He asks all of them to bear witness to himself, that he and those present testify that God is one, that He has no associate in His power and no controller sharing His authority except Himself, and that He is the creator, and everything else apart from Him is created, so that the Qur'ān must be a thing which can have a likeness, whereas there is nothing resembling God. Also, that death, the physical resurrection and the final reckoning are realities, and that the reward of him who does good will be Paradise but the punishment of him who does evil will be hell fire. Also, that Muḥammad has delivered from his Lord the prescriptions of His religion and has conveyed His wise counsels to His community, until the

time when God took him to Himself—may God bless him with the finest of blessings which He has ever given to those angels of His brought near to His presence and the prophets whom He has sent as messengers. Also, that I confess freely my sinfulness, and I both hope [for forgiveness] and fear [the divine punishment], except that when I mention God's forgiveness, I am filled with hope.

When I die, turn my face [towards God], close my eyes, perform the lesser ablution and the rites of purification over me, and see that I am properly shrouded. Then give repeated promises to God for the Islamic faith and for the knowledge of His necessary beneficence to you concerning Muhammad, when he made us part of his community, meriting God's mercy. Then lay me on my side in my litter and hasten along with me, and when you set me down for the worship, let the one among you who is nearest to me in kinship and the eldest in years come forward to lead the worship. Let the leader utter the takbir five times, and on the first occasion begin with the formula, "Praise be to God and eulogies on Him, and blessing upon our master and the master of all the messengers who have been sent," as the opening words. Then should come a prayer for the men and the women believers, those still alive and those now dead; and then a prayer for those who have preceded us in the faith. Then let him utter the takbir for the fourth time, and then let him praise God, proclaim the confession of faith to Him, magnify Him and ask Him to grant peace on the fifth occasion. Then load my corpse on your shoulders and bear me along to my grave; once there, let the one of you nearest in kinship to me and the one who has the deepest feeling of affection go down into the grave. Render profuse praises to God and mentions of His name. Place me on my right side and turn me in the direction of the

692. I.e., for the ṣalāt al-mawt, see El s.v. Ṣalāt. IV (Wensinck).
qiblah. Unwind my shroud from my head and feet, and then wall up the niche with mud bricks and sprinkle earth over me.\textsuperscript{693} [Finally,] depart from me and leave me with my own affair. For indeed, none of you will avail me at all, nor will you be able to keep back from me anything unpleasant which may befall me.

Then all of you together are to stand there, and to say good things [about me], if you know of any, but refrain from mentioning unfavorable things if you have known about any of them, for I [alone] among you shall be held responsible for what you may say and what you may enunciate.\textsuperscript{694} Do not allow any weeping woman to be near me, for the person who is lamented over is thereby troubled. May God have mercy on a man who takes heed of warnings and who reflects on the annihilation which God inevitably brings down on all His creation and the inescapable death which He decrees for them! So praise be to God who has made eternal existence a quality solely for Himself alone and has decreed annihilation for the whole of His creation! Next, let [such a heedful man] consider what my own state once was, with the might of the caliphate—has that been of any avail for me when God’s command has come for me? No, by God! Indeed, I shall have to give a double accounting [at the last day] because of this responsibility. So would that ‘Abdallāh b. Hārūn [that is, himself] had not been created as a human being, yea, would that he had not been created at all! O Abū Ishāq, come close to me and derive a warning from what you see!

Follow your brother’s policy regarding the Qur’ān, and when God invests you with the caliphate, strive in it as one earnestly desiring God’s favor and as one fearing His retribution and punishment. Do not be deluded in regard to God and the respite [from death and judgment] which He grants, for death has already established itself within you. Do not neglect the affairs of the subjects; keep your

\textsuperscript{693} For these burial practices, see T.P. Hughes, A dictionary of Islam, 44–7; \textit{EI}\textsuperscript{2} s.v. Djanāza [Tritton].

\textsuperscript{694} I.e., don’t say anything detrimental to me, which might send me to hell!
subjects and the common people perpetually in mind! For the maintenance of royal power comes only through them and through your continual concern for the Muslims and their welfare. So watch over them and the other Muslims, and do not let any matter which involves any advantage or benefit for the Muslims come along without giving it a priority and preference over any other of your inclinations. Take from the powerful subjects and give to the weak ones. Do not impose any intolerable burden upon them, and ensure that justice is meted out between all individuals with fairness; keep them near to you and treat them in a gentle manner.

Hurry away from me quickly on your journey and head speedily for the seat of your authority in Iraq. Look to these people in whose land you find yourself, and do not neglect them at any time. Launch against the Khurramiyah expeditions led by a commander who is resolute, fierce and firm, and support him with finance, arms and troops, both cavalry and infantry. If they are away campaigning for a long time, concentrate your attention on them and send them reinforcements from the auxiliaries and retainers whom you have around you. In all this, act just like a person putting his whole heart into it, hoping for God's reward in return for it. Know, too, that exhortation, when it becomes prolonged, renders obligatory a demonstrable justification for it on the one who hears it and one the one giving the exhortation. Fear God in all your affairs and do not be seduced [from the path of duty].

Then after a while, when his affliction grew intense and he felt the imminence of God's command (that is, death), al-Ma'mun summoned Abū Ishāq and he said to him:

695. Sourdel, "La politique religieuse du calife 'abbāside al-Ma'mūn," 44-5, has underlined the importance of this wāsiyyah or testament as an exposition of several pro-Shi'i and Mu'tazili attitudes, such as the need to show kindness to the 'Alids, the emphasis on the divine unity (tawḥīd), the use of the Shi'i quintuple takbir during his obsequies, etc.
O Abū Ishaq, take care to observe God's covenant and contractual agreement, and the Messenger of God's protection, in order that you may maintain God's right among His servants and that you may choose obedience to Him in preference to disobedience, since I have conveyed it [the Messenger of God's protection] to you from someone else.

Abū Ishaq replied, "By God, I certainly will." Al-Ma'mūn said:

Also, look to the person whom you have heard me putting forward [giving preferment] in my express words, and increase his prominent position [or, less probably: double the financial reward for him, al-taqdimah], that is, 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir. Confirm him in his governorship and do not disquiet him in any way, for you have recognized what the two of you achieved in the past during my own lifetime and at my court. Endeavor to conciliate him with all your heart and single him out with your benevolence, for you have known well his bravery and his ability to be able to do without your brother [that is, his ability to act independently and his freedom from entanglements]. [In regard to] Ishaq b. Ibrāhim [al-Muṣ'abī], associate him in the above policy also, since he is indeed worthy of it. [In regard to] your own family [the 'Abbāsids], you have well realized that there are no outstanding qualities [bagiyyah] among them, even though an odd one of them retain a regard for personal honor [al-siyānah li-nafsihi]. [In regard to] 'Abd al-Wahhāb, pay particular attention to him among the members of your family; make him their leader, and entrust all matters concerning them to him. [In regard to] Abū 'Abdallāh b. Abī Duwād, make sure that he does not abandon your side, and associate him as an adviser in all

697. Presumably 'Abd al-Wahhāb b. Ibrāhim al-Imām b. Abī 'Abdallāh Muḥammad, nephew of al-Saffāh and governor of Syria in the time of al-Mansūr, although by now he must have been extremely old.
698. The Muʿtazilī scholar, chief judge for al-Muʿtaṣim and head of the mihnah under him, see Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 258-60; El2 s.v. Ahmad b. Abī Duʿād (K.V. Zettersteeën—Pellat).
your affairs, for he is indeed a repository of good advice for you. After I am gone, do not take for yourself any vizier to whom you might impute any fault [who has not got an unimpeachable reputation], for you have known with what troubles Yaḥyā b. Aktham burdened me through his treatment of the people and his infamous conduct, to the point when God made these activities of his clear to me, my own integrity remaining intact [ṣiḥḥah minnī], and I then proceeded to dispense with him, feeling detestation and disapproval towards him for what he had done with the money meant for God and the alms collected on His behalf. May God not reward him with any goodness from Islam! [In regard to] these, your paternal cousins who are the descendants of the Commander of the Faithful 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālīb [the 'Alids], make them welcome in your court circle, overlook the transgressions of those who act wrongfully and welcome those who act honestly. Do not neglect giving them presents each year on the appropriate occasions, for the rights due to them demand recognition on several grounds of consideration. "Fear God, your Lord, with the respect due to Him, and do not die except as Muslims."699 Fear God, and labor on his behalf. Fear God in all your affairs. I commend you, as also myself, to God. I seek pardon from God for what has gone before, and I further seek pardon from Him for what I myself have committed; indeed, He is the all-forgiving one. Of a certainty, He knows the extent of my contrition for my sins; hence I place my confidence in Him from [the effects of] the worst of these sins, and to Him I turn in repentance. There is no strength except in God; God is my sufficiency, and how excellent He is as an advocate! May God grant blessings on Muḥammad the prophet of right guidance and mercifulness!700

In regard to the time of his death, there have been varying reports. Some authorities have said that his term of life expired on Wednesday the eighteenth of Rajab, 218 / 833 after the afternoon worship. Others have denied this, and say that his term of life came to an end on that same day at the time of the midday worship. When he expired, his son al-'Abbas and his brother Abū Isḥāq Muḥammad b. al-Rashid bore him to Tarsus and buried him in a house belonging to Khāqān, al-Rashid's eunuch (khādīm), and his brother Abū Isḥāq al-Muṭaṣīm prayed over him. Then they entrusted the task of watching over him to a guard composed of men from the garrison of Abnā' (Khurasanians) in Tarsus and others, a hundred men all told, each man being allotted ninety dirhams.

His caliphate lasted for twenty years, five months and thirteen days, excluding the two years when he was hailed as ruler in the khutbah of Mecca and while his brother Muḥammad al-Amin b. al-Rashid was being besieged in Baghdad. He was born in the middle of Rabī' I (on the 15th) 170 / 786 and given the patronymic, according to Ibn al-Kalbi, of Abū al-'Abbas. He was of middle stature, pale-complexioned, handsome and with a long beard which had become whitened with advancing age. It has (also) been said that

701. Actually a Saturday.

702. Ya'qūbī, Taʾrikh, II, 573, placing his death on Thursday, the seventeenth of Rajab; Dinawarī, al-Akhbār al-tīwāl, I, 396, placing his death on Wednesday, the eighth of Rajab, aged forty-nine; Masʻūdī, Murūj, VII, 2, 101 = ed. Pellat, §§ 2694, 2783; id., Tanbih, 351, tr. 450 [with date given wrongly here]; 'Uyun, 378, placing his death on the eighth of Rajab, aged forty-eight; Vasiliev, Byzance et les Arabes, I, 123–4.

703. The historian Hishām b. Muḥammad al-Kalbī (died in 204 / 819) or two years later, an important source for Tabarī, or else his son 'Abbās; see Sezgin, GAS, I, 268–71; EI² s.v. al-Kalbī [W. Atallah].

704. Ya'qūbī, Taʾrikh, II, 573–4, states that he died aged forty-eight years, four months, and that his caliphate lasted twenty-two years, with twenty years five, months and twenty-five days since the death of al-Amin; Masʻūdī, Murūj, VII, 1–2 = ed. Pellat, § 2694, that he died at the age of forty-nine.
The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

[1141] he was swarthy-complexioned, but with a yellowish tinge, with a bowed back, with large, dark pupils to his eyes, a long beard with the thinner parts growing white, a narrow forehead and with a black mole on his cheek. He was hailed as Caliph on Wednesday, the twenty-fifth of Muḥarram, [198 [September 25, 813]].

Some of the Stories about al-Ma'mūn and His Conduct

It is mentioned from Muḥammad b. al-Haytham b. ‘Adi that Ibrāhīm b. ‘Īsā b. Burayhah b. al-Maṣūr said: When al-Ma’mūn wanted to set out for Damascus, I prepared a speech to be delivered to him which occupied me for two whole days and part of a third one. When I stood respectfully before him, I said:

May God prolong the days of the Commander of the Faithful in the most enduring state of might and most ample state of nobility, and may he make me his ransom against any evil which may befall him! The person who goes about early and late [literally, in the evening and in the morning, that is, continuously] discovering for himself God’s favor [may He be absurdantly praised!] through the Commander of the Faithful’s [may God strengthen him!] favorable opinion of him and affability towards him, must necessarily seek the prolongation of this favor and ask for an increase in it, with gratitude to God and to the Commander of the Faithful [may God extend his life in that state of fa-

706. Ya’qūbi, Taʾrikh, II, 538-9, with details of the astral conjunctions at this moment.
708. Son of the Kūfī historian, who died in or after 206 [821] and was a prime source for historians like Tabari, Ya’qūbi and Masʿūdī, see Sezgin, GAS, I, 272; EI² s.v. al-Haytham b. ‘Adi [Pellat].
709. A second cousin of al-Ma’mūn’s.
vor! [Such a person] has furthermore earnestly wanted the Commander of the Faithful to know that I do not desire for myself any letting-up or ease of life which might distract me from my service to the Commander of the Faithful, since he takes upon himself the burden of rough travelling conditions and painful journeyings. The most suitable of all persons to share these hardships with him and to devote his life to him is myself, for God has given me knowledge of his state of mind, and has given me a sense of obedience to him and a knowledge of the recognition of his rights which God necessarily requires. Hence, if the Commander of the Faithful [may God make him noble!] sees fit to honor me by taking me into his service as a permanent companion and letting me be with him, let him so ordain!

Al-Ma'mūn answered me, speaking immediately and without pausing to reflect:

The Commander of the Faithful has not yet come to any decision at all in regard to that, but if he chooses anyone from the members of your family as a travelling companion, he will select you in the first place and you will be the person put forward to be at his side for that, above all if you willingly let yourself be set down in the same place as the Commander of the Faithful chooses to place you in relationship to him [that is, if you show yourself as adaptable]. And if he does not fulfill this intention, this will not imply any dissatisfaction with your position and capabilities, but because he has need of you [elsewhere].

Ibrāhīm b. Ḥasan commented, "By God, the Caliph's words delivered on the spur of the moment were more incisive than my carefully-prepared speech."710

It is mentioned from Muḥammad b. Ṭalāḥ al-Sarakhsī, who related: A man thrust himself forward on several occasions before al-Ma'mūn when the latter was in Syria and said to the Caliph, "O Commander of the Faithful, look after the interests of the Arabs of Syria just as you look after the inter-

710. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 261–2, tr. 118–19.
ests of the Persians from the people of Khurasan." Al-
Ma'mūn replied, "O brother from the people of Syria, you have
 reproached me in strong terms! By God, I have never made
Qays dismount from the backs of their horses [that is, dis-
missed them from service] except at times when I saw that
there was not a single dirham left in the public treasury [in
times of great financial stringency]. As for Yaman, I have never
liked them and they have never liked me. As for Qudā'ah, their
chiefs live in the messianic expectation of the Sufyānī and his
appearance, so that they might join his party.\footnote{711} As for Rabi'ā',
they have been angry with God ever since He sent His prophet
from Muḍar,\footnote{712} and there have never been two of them going
out [in rebellion] without one of them being a Khārijite [Shārī].
Now get out, may God wreak [evil] on you!"\footnote{713}

It is mentioned from Sa'id b. Ziyād that when he went into
al-Ma'mūn's presence at Damascus, the Caliph said to him,
"Show me the document which the Messenger of God wrote
out for your family." He related: So I showed it to him. He re-
lated: Al-Ma'mūn said, "I should very much like to know what
this covering is over this seal." He related: Abū Ishāq said to
him, "Untie this knot so that you may know what it is." He
related: But al-Ma'mūn then said, "I do not doubt that the
Prophet tied this knot himself, and I am not the person who is
going to unloose a knot tied by the Messenger of God." Then
he said to [his nephew] al-Wāthiq, "Take it and lay it on your
eye; perhaps God will heal you." He related: Al-Ma'mūn began
to lay it on his eye and to weep.\footnote{714}

It is mentioned from al-'Ayshī, the confidant of Ishāq b.
Ibrāhīm, that he said: I was with al-Ma'mūn at Damascus, at a
time when the amount of money which he had with him had

\footnote{711} Cf. Ṭabarî, III, 830, year 195 [810/11], recording the revolt in Syria in
Dhū al-Hijjah 195 (August–September 811) of the Sufyanī 'Alī b. 'Abdallāh b.
Khalīd b. Yazid b. Mu'āwiyyah, expelling al-Amin's governor Sulaymān b. Abī
Ja'far al-Mansūr from Damascus; Lammens, "Le 'Sofyānī', héros national des

\footnote{712} Quraysh and Kāhnāh were considered as part of the Muḍar branch of
the North Arabs.

\footnote{713} Ibn Abī Tāhir, 266–7, tr. 121; Azdi, 408–9; Ibn al-Athir, \textit{al-Kāmil}, VI,
342–3.

\footnote{714} Ibn Abī Tāhir, 271, tr. 123; Ibn al-Athir, \textit{al-Kāmil}, VI, 433.
become very low, until he found himself in a tight spot. He complained about this to Abū Ishāq al-Mu‘taṣīm, and the latter said to him, "O Commander of the Faithful, you have as good as got money; it will have reached you after Friday." He related: There was brought to him the sum of thirty million [dirhams] from the land-tax for whose collection, on his behalf, Abū Ishāq al-Mu‘taṣīm was responsible. He related: When that sum of money reached him, al-Ma‘mūn said to Yahyā b. Akthām, "Let us go along and look at this wealth." He related: So the two of them set off until they came to an open space and halted to look at it. It had been arranged in the most attractive way possible: the camels carrying the money were adorned with figured silk saddle cloths and caparisons dyed in rich colors, and with woollen streamers draped round their necks. The money bags were made from Chinese silk, red, green and yellow, and their necks were sticking out (from under the cover). He related: Al-Ma‘mūn looked at what was a fine sight and accounted it a splendid amount of wealth. It made a great impression on him, and the people (with him) strained their gaze at it, looking at it and marveling at it. Then al-Ma‘mūn said to Yahyā, "O Abū Muḥammad, are these companions of ours, whom you have seen just a moment ago [wondering at the sight], to go back to their homes disappointed, while we are going back with all this wealth which has come into our possession but to their exclusion? In such circumstances, we would indeed be contemptible persons." He thereupon summoned Muḥammad b. Yazdād and told him, "Set down in the register a million [dirhams] for the family of so-and-so, and the same for the family of so-and-so and for the family of so-and-so." He related: By God, he kept on in this fashion until he had allocated twenty-four million dirhams, while his very foot was in the stirrup. Then he said, "Hand over the remainder to al-Mu‘allā for him to pay our troops." Al-‘Ayshī related: I went along until I stood before his eyes, and I did not take away

715. The Khurasanian official and secretary who was, in effect, the chief executive for al-Ma‘mūn at the time of his death; see Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 214, 232–4.
my gaze from his eyes. He did not notice me till he saw me thus. Then he said, "O Abū Muḥammad, set down in the register for this man fifty thousand dirhams out of the six millions, and then I will not be deprived of my sight!" He related: Before two nights had elapsed, I had received the money."

It is mentioned from Muḥammad b. Ayyūb b. Jaʿfar b. Sulaymān that there lived in Baṣrāh a man from the Banū Tamīm who was a poet and wit, but who used unseemly language and did not enjoy any fame. I was at that time the governor of Baṣrāh, in close contact with him, and I found him pleasant company. I wanted to deceive him and to bring him down a peg or two. So I said to him, "You are a poet and wit, and al-Maʿmūn is more generous than an abundantly-flowing rain cloud and a rain-bearing wind; what then keeps you away from him?" He replied, "I do not possess means to transport me [thither]." I said, "I will give you a sprightly, nobly-bred horse and an ample sum for living expenses, and you can go to him. You have already praised al-Maʿmūn, and if you obtain favor through your encounter with him, you will have attained your desire." He replied, "By God, O Amir, I think you are not far from the truth! So get ready for me what you have promised." He related: I called for a noble, high-spirited horse to be brought for him and told him, "This is yours to do as you like with it, so ride off on it." He replied, "This is just one of the two pieces of bounty [which you promised to me]; what about the other?" So I then called for three hundred dirhams to be brought for him and told him that these were his living expenses. But he complained, "O Amir, you have been stingy over these!" I protested, "No, these are adequate, even though I have stopped short at being extravagant." He replied, "When

---

719. Kāna shāʾīrūn... khabīthūn, presumably in the sense of "foul-mouthed;" cf. ibid., XX, 183, where ʿUmārah b. ʿAqīl is characterised similarly as khabīth al-līsān.
720. Astanzilahu. This seems to give the best sense. Ţabari, Glossarium, p. DX, suggests, less fittingly, "he tried to persuade him," for istanzalahu, presumably with the meaning that he could expect no further bounty from the governor."
721. Mā yuqillūnī, following ibid., p. CDXXXI
do you see extravagance among the great men of the [Banū] Sa’d? You only see that among the lesser of them.” He thereupon took the horse and the money, and then composed a poem in rajaz metre which was not very long and recited it to me, but omitted any mention of me or praise for me and showed himself as discontented. So I told him, “You haven’t composed anything [worthwhile]!” He enquired, “How is that?” I said, “You are going to the Caliph, but you don’t have a word of praise for your Amīr!” He replied, “O Amīr, you wanted to deceive me, but you have found me to be a deceiver [in showing myself discontented and not praising and thanking you adequately]! The proverbial saying ‘He who copulates with a wild ass copulates with one who is a really experienced copulator’ [that is, he meets more than he has bargained for] was coined for an occasion like this. For by God, it wasn’t out of honor for me that you gave me your noble horse as a mount, nor were you generous to me with your money, [a sum] which no one would ever desire unless God had made his rank in society the lowest [totally down-and-out and grateful for anything]. Nevertheless, I will certainly mention you in my poetry and praise you before the Caliph; be certain of this!” I said, “Have you spoken truly?” He replied, “Since you have revealed what was in your mind, I have [now] mentioned your name and praised you.” I said, “Recite to me what you have composed.” He then recited it, and I congratulated him on it. Thereupon he bade me farewell and set off.

He came to Syria, at a time when al-Ma’mūn was at Salaghūs. Muhammad b. Ayyūb related: The poet (subsequently) told me the story, saying: I was joining up with the Qurrah campaign, riding that noble horse of mine and wearing my ordinary garments [muqatṭa’āṭi], and I was heading for the

722. Keller, Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, tr. 124, erroneously sees here sa’d as a common noun; but the Tamīmi poet’s affiliation to the component Banū Sa’d is explicitly mentioned below, 238.

723. Maydānī, Amthāl al-‘Arab, tr., II, 674–5, no. 293.

724. Literally, “Garments sewn together from several pieces,” perhaps here with the denotation of non-military dress. Cf. Ṭabari, Glossarium, p. CDXXIX, “garments which are sewn together like the qamīš, jubbah, sarāwīl;” Dozy, II, 375a, “worn, used clothes.”
army camp, when I suddenly found myself with an elderly man on a high-spirited mule which was too restive to stand still and which could not be overtaken in its swift flight. He related: While I was reciting to myself my rājaz poem, he met me brow-to-brow and face-to-face. He greeted me with the words, "Peace be upon you!" in a loud voice and with an unforced mode of expression. I returned the greeting, "Upon you be peace, and the mercy and blessings of God!" He said, "Halt there, if you please," so I halted. There diffused from him a sweet perfume of amber and pungent-odored musk. He said, "What is your first [genealogical name]?” I replied, "I am a man of Mudar." He said, "We come from Mudar too." Then he said, "And after that, what?" I replied, "I am a man of the Banū Tamīm." He said, "And after Tamīm, what?" I replied, "From the Banū Sa’d." He replied, "Tell me more! What has impelled you to come to this land?" He related: I said, "I have headed for this kingdom, of whose like I have never heard for abundance of sweet odors, wideness of living space, richness in resources of power and extensiveness of hills." He replied, "What have you brought with you to this land?" I said, "Some fine poetry which is pleasant on the lips, which the rhapsodists can repeat and which is sweet in the ears of its hearers." He said, "Recite some of it to me, then." Thereupon I grew angry with him and said, "O ignoble fellow, limited in your mind [yā rakīk]! I have told you that I am making my way towards the Caliph with a poem which I have composed and a eulogy which I have put together with skill, and you ask me to recite it to you?" He related: He gave the appearance, by God, of not having heard my words, and remained with lowered eyes at them, making no answer. Then he said, "What do you hope to gain by means of it?" I replied, "If the state of affairs is as it has been reported to me, then one thousand dinārs." He said, "I will give you one thousand dinārs if I consider the poetry to be good and the speech sweet, and I will spare you the trouble and the continued repetition [of the verses] and the fact that, when you arrive at the Caliph’s presence, [you will find there] ten thousand spearmen and archers between you and him!" I interjected, "Do I have your word that you will do that?" He retorted, "Yes, you do have my word." Then I said, "Do you have the money
with you at this precise moment?” He replied, “This is my
mule, which is worth more than one thousand dinārs; I will
dismount from its back and hand it over to you.” He related: I
grew angry again, and there came over me the hasty temper of
the Banū Sa’d and their quickspiritedness; I told him that this
mule was not equal in value to my noble horse. He replied,
“Leave the mule, then, and I undertake before God as witness
against me on your behalf to give you the one thousand dinārs
immediately.”

He related: So I then recited to him:

O Ma’mūn, bestower of exalted favors
and occupier of the loftiest rank,

Commander of the most numerous military forces,
would you like to hear an elegant rajaz poem?

One more elegantly-constructed than the legal system of Abū
Hanīfah?
Nay, by Him whose deputy [khalīfah] you are,

No weak female person suffers oppression in our land,
and the burdens laid on us by our amīr are light.

He does not exact for himself anything above the official rate of
taxation,

so that the wolf and the ewe can remain under one roof,

And the thief and the merchant can lie down together un-
der one coverlet.

He related: By God, I had hardly finished reciting it when
suddenly a host of around ten thousand cavalrymen filled the
horizon, crying, “Peace and the mercy and blessings of God be
upon you, O Commander of the Faithful!” He related: Terror
gripped me, and he saw me in that state and said, “No harm
will come to you, my brother!” I replied, “O Commander of
the Faithful, may God make me your ransom, do you know the
various modes of speech of the Arabs?” He replied, “Yes, by
God's life." I said, "And those of them who pronounce the kāf in place of qāf?" He replied, "These are the Ḥimyar." I said, "May God curse them and anyone who uses this mode of speech after today!" Al-Ma'mūn laughed at this, and realized what I wanted; he turned to the servant at his side and said, "Give him all that you have with you here." The servant pulled out for me a bag containing three thousand dinārs. Al-Ma'mūn said, "Take it!" Then he said, "Peace be with you," and went on his way; and that was the last contact I ever had with him. 

Abū Saʿīd al-Makhzūmī recited:

Have you seen that the stars were of any use to al-Ma'mūn or to his solidly-based royal power?

[On the contrary,) they left him at the two open spaces of Tarsus, just as they left his father at Ṭūs.

ʿAli b. ʿUbaydah al-Rayḥānī recited:

How inadequate are tears for al-Ma'mūn!

I am not satisfied with anything but blood dripping from my eyelids.

Abū Mūsā Hārūn b. Muḥammad b. Ismāʿīl b. Mūsā al-Hādī has mentioned that ʿAli b. Ṣāliḥ related to him as follows:

One day, al-Ma'mūn said to me, "Obtain for me a man from
the people of Syria who has the ways of polite society [adab] and who can act as my intimate companion and provide conversation for me." So I made enquiries about such a person and found him. I then summoned him and told him, "I am going to bring you into the Commander of the Faithful's presence. You are not to ask him for anything until he has himself taken the initiative in speaking; for indeed, I am very well acquainted with your importunings, O people of Syria!" He replied, "I shall not overstep the bounds which you have commanded me to observe." Then I went in to al-Ma'mūn's presence and informed him, "I have found the required person, O Commander of the Faithful!" He said, "Bring him in!" At that the man entered and gave a greeting. Then al-Ma'mūn invited him to draw near; he was at that moment involved in a drinking session. Then he said to the man, "I would like you to be one of my intimates and to converse with me." The Syrian said, "O Commander of the Faithful, when a boon-companion's clothes are inferior to those of his associate, this gives him a feeling of inferiority." He related: So al-Ma'mūn ordered him to be given a robe of honor. He related: At that, a feeling came over me such as God only knows! He related: When the Syrian had put on the robe of honor and gone back to his place in the circle, he said, "O Commander of the Faithful, since my mind is preoccupied with my family, you will not derive much benefit from conversation with me." Al-Ma'mūn said, "Fifty thousand [dirhams] are to be conveyed to his house!" Then the Syrian said, "O Commander of the Faithful, and a third thing . . . ." Al-Ma'mūn replied, "And what is that?" The Syrian said, "You have introduced something which interposes between a man and his understanding [to rob him of his peace of mind.] If I should have committed any minor fault, please forgive it." Al-Ma'mūn replied, "That also [will be done]." 'Ali said: It was as if this third thing dispelled from my mind what I had been apprehensive about (and I breathed more easily now that nothing further was to be asked for by the Syrian).

Abū Ḥashīshah Muḥammad b. `Alī b. Umayyah b. `Amr733 has

733. A secretary, poet and musician of the third [ninth] century, who had
mentioned: We were at Damascus, before the presence of the Commander of the Faithful, and 'Allawayh sang,

May I renounce the Islamic faith [or alternatively: I will renounce . . . ], if that which my traducers report to you is as they allege;

But when they have seen how swift you are to [reward] me, they have urged each other to slanderous talk and have devised trickery.

Al-Ma'mūn said, "O 'Allawayh, who is this poetry by?" He said, "By the judge." Al-Ma'mūn said, "Which judge, shame on you?" 'Allawayh said, "The judge of Damascus." Al-Ma'mūn said, "O Abū Ishāq [al-Mu'taşîm], dismiss him from office!" Abū Ishāq replied, "I will do this immediately." Al-Ma'mūn said, "Let him be brought in straight away." He related: An old man, short of stature, his hair and beard dyed with henna, was brought in. Al-Ma'mūn said to him, "Who are you?" He replied, "So-and-so, son of so-and-so, with so-and-so nisbah." Al-Ma'mūn said, "Are you a poet?" He replied, "I used to be a poet." Al-Ma'mūn said, "O 'Allawayh, recite the verses to him." So 'Allawayh recited them. Al-Ma'mūn said, "Are these verses by you?" He replied, "Yes, O Commander of the Faithful, but may the poet's wives all be divorced, and may he give all his possessions away for pious purposes, if he has composed any poetry during the last thirty years except on the theme of asceticism or in order gently to reproach a friend." Al-Ma'mūn said, "O Abū Ishāq, dismiss him from his job; I am not going to give power over the necks of the Muslims to a man who begins, in his jesting, to speak about throwing off the Islamic faith." Then he continued, "Give him something to drink," And they brought the poet-judge a beaker of wine. He took it, all the time trembling with fear, but then protested,

the nisbah of al-Ṫūnbūrī; see H.G. Farmer, A history of Arabian music, 158; Sezgin, GAS, II, 608.

734. A musician who flourished at the caliphal courts from al-Rashid's time onwards, and who was originally a mawla of the Umayyads (see below, 243 – 4); see Farmer, 123; EI2 Suppl. s.v. (E. Neubauer).
"O Commander of the Faithful, I have never tasted it before." Al-Ma'mūn said, "Would you perhaps prefer another kind [of wine]?"] The judge said, "I have never touched any of it before." Al-Ma'mūn said, "Is it forbidden, then?" He replied, "Certainly, O Commander of the Faithful!" Al-Ma'mūn said, "Good for you! Through this answer you have escaped [punishment for an infringement of the shari'ah]. Be off with you!"

Then al-Ma'mūn said, "O 'Allawayh, do not say the words, 'May I renounce the Islamic faith . . . ', but say instead:

May I be deprived of the object of my desires in you [that is, of your love; or alternatively: I will be deprived . . . ], if that which

my traducers report to you is as they allege."

He related: We were with al-Ma'mūn at Damascus. He rode off, with the intention of going to Mount Hermon, and passed by a large cistern, one of those constructed by the Umayyads. On its banks stood four cypresses and the water would flow up to them and then flow back. Al-Ma'mūn found the spot pleasing, and called for bazmaward and a ratl [of wine]. He mentioned the Umayyads, and then spoke of them in a deprecatory fashion and belittled them. Then 'Allawayh came forward with his lute ('ūd) and began to sing:

These are my people, after being once powerful and rich,

they have all passed to destruction. Should I not therefore

let my eyes weep, and feel sadness?

At this, al-Ma'mūn lashed out at the food with his foot and sprang up, saying to 'Allawayh, "O son of a whore, was there no other suitable time than this for you to mention your ancient masters [mawālika]?"] 'Allawayh replied, "Your client

735. Isfahānī, Aghānī, X, 124, gives three verses as sung by 'Allawayh.
737. The Arabic Jabal al-Thalj; see Le Strange, Palestine, 79–80, 418–19.
738. Cf. Tabari, Glossarium, p. CXXXIII, defining it as a Persian term (bazmaward, "what is brought away from a feast") denoting a kind of confection of pastry, meat, etc., pace Keller's translation, 128, "eine Flasche Rosenwasser."
244 The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

[mawālikum] Ziryāb739 is at this moment with my masters [mawāliyyat],740 riding with an escort of a hundred slave boys, while I am dying of hunger here with you." Al-Ma'mūn was angry with him for twenty days, but then took him back into favor. The narrator says: Ziryāb was originally the client of al-Mahdī who went first to Syria and then to the Western lands (al-Maghrib) and joined the Umayyads there.741

Abū 'Alī al-Saliṭi has mentioned from 'Umārah b. 'Aqīl,742 who said: I once recited to al-Ma'mūn an ode containing an eulogy of him and comprising a hundred verses. I began with the first hemistich, but he quickly forestalled me [in adding the remaining hemistich of each verse] right up to the rhyme letter, exactly as I myself had completed the rhyme. I accordingly commented, "By God, O Commander of the Faithful, no one has ever heard this ode from me before." He replied, "It must nevertheless be thus." Then he came up to me and said, "Have you not heard that 'Umar b. Abī Rabi'ah743 recited to 'Abdallāh b. al-'Abbās his ode in which he said:

In the morning, the encampment of our neighbours will be far away

[1152] and Ibn al-'Abbās continued (and completed the verse),

... and the day after that it will be even further away

until 'Umar had recited to Ibn al-'Abbās the whole ode, with the latter completing each second hemistich." Then al-Ma'mūn remarked, "I am the successor [literally: the son] of that one [Ibn al-'Abbās]."744

739. The famed musician who, during al-Ma'mūn's reign, entered the service of the Umayyad amirs of Spain; see Farmer, 128–30, El' Suppl. s.v. [id].
740. I.e., the Spanish Umayyads.
742. A tribal poet of northeastern Arabia, the great-grandson of Jarir, who also frequented the courts of al-Ma'mūn and his successors; see Iṣfahānī, Aghānī, XX, 183–8; Sezgin, GAS, II, 559–60.
743. The famed lyric poet of Mecca and Madinah in the Umayyad period; see ibid., II, 415–17; El' s.v. 'Omar b. Abī Rabi'ā (I. Kratschkowsky).
744. Ibn Abī Ṭahir, 289–90, tr. 131; Ibn al-'Athir, al-Kāmil, VI, 436. Al-Ma'mūn was of course the direct physical descendant of Ibn al-'Abbās as well as being, as he claimed, the inheritor of this feel for poetry.
It is mentioned from Abū Marwān Kāriz\textsuperscript{45} b. Hārūn that Al-Maʿmūn once recited:

I sent to you, out of passion, so that you had the good fortune to gain a glance,
and then you neglected me, until I acquired a bad opinion of you.

Then you were in intimate contact with the one whom I love,
while I was far away;
so would that I knew what would relieve me of wanting you near!

I see a clear trace of him in your eyes;
your eyes have indeed taken beauty from his eye!

Abū Marwān related: In expressing this meaning in his verses, al-Maʿmūn relied upon (that is, was alluding to) the poem of al-ʿAbbās b. Aḥnaf,\textsuperscript{46} who produced the following:

If my eye is afflicted because of her, the eye of my messenger has become happy,
and I have experienced good fortune from his news.

Whenever the messenger from her comes to me,
I deliberately direct my gaze again and again at his glance.

Her beauties are revealed in his face;
they have left on it the most beautiful of impressions.

O messenger, take freely my eye's orb,
look with it and give judgement with my glance!\textsuperscript{47}

Abū al-ʿAtāhiyah related: Al-Maʿmūn sent for me one day. I went along to him, and found him with bowed head and sunk

\textsuperscript{45} Following the correct reading of Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 290, \textit{pace} the text's Kāzīr.

\textsuperscript{46} A court poet of al-Rashīd; see Sezgin, \textit{GAS}, II, 513–14; \textit{El} \textit{II} s.v. (Bla-chère).

\textsuperscript{47} Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 290–1, tr. 131–2; Ibn al-ʿAthīr, \textit{al-Ḥāmil}, VI, 436–7.
in thought. I accordingly refrained from approaching him while he was in that state. Then he raised his head, looked at me and beckoned me with his hand to come near; so I drew near. He remained downcast for a considerable while, and then raised his head and said, "O Abū Ishāq, the natural state of the soul is a feeling of tedium and a love of something strange and new; it comes to find solitude congenial just as it does sociability." I replied, "Assuredly, O Commander of the Faithful, and I have composed a verse on this theme." He said, "What is that?" I then recited:

When the soul is disquieted, the only remedy for it
is changing from one state of mind to another.⁷⁴⁸

It is mentioned from the poet Abū Nizār al-Ḍarīr,⁷⁴⁹ that he said: 'Ali b. Jabalah⁷⁵⁰ told me: I once said to Ḥumayd b. 'Abd al-Ḥamid, "O Abū Ghānim, I have praised the Commander of the Faithful with a eulogy so fine that no one on the whole earth could produce its like; so mention my name to the Commander of the Faithful." Ḥumayd said, "Recite it to me!" So I recited it to him. Ḥumayd exclaimed, "I bear witness that you are speaking the truth!" So he took the panegyric and presented it to al-Ma'mūn. Al-Ma'mūn said, "O Abū Ghānim, the answer to all this is clear. If he wishes, we will pardon him and consider this as a reward for his panegyric. But if he wishes otherwise, we will bring together for comparison his poetry on you and on Abū Dulaf al-Qāsim b. Ḥisā [al-'Ijli].⁷⁵¹ If what he has written on you and on Abū Dulaf is finer than his eulogy on us, we will flog him on his back and prolong his imprisonment. But if what he has written is finer, I will reward him with a thousand dirhams for every verse of his panegyric, and if he

---

⁷⁴⁸ Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 293, tr. 133; Maṣ'ūdī, Murūj, VII, 31–2 = ed. Pellat, § 2720.
⁷⁴⁹ This blind poet is mentioned in conjunction with 'Ali b. Jabalah in Isfahānī, Aghānī, XVIII, 105.
⁷⁵⁰ A poet of the time of al-Rashid and al-Ma'mūn, known as al-'Akawwak; see Sezgin, GAS, II, 572–3; E² s.v. al-'Akawwak (Blachère).
⁷⁵¹ Famed contemporary military leader, poet and patron of the arts; see Sezgin, GAS, II, 632–3; E² s.v. al-Kāsim b. Ḥisā (J.E. Bencheikh).
wishes, we will let him go free." I replied, "O my master, who are Abū Dulaf and myself, that he should eulogize us in finer words than those in your praise?" Al-Ma'mūn said, "These words are no answer at all to the question; lay my propositions before the man." ‘Ali b. Jabalah related: Ḥumayd said to me, "What do you think about it?" I replied, "In my estimation, being pardoned is better." This was reported to al-Ma'mūn, and he commented, "He knows best [what he is doing!]." Ḥumayd related: I said to ‘Ali b. Jabalah, "What words was the Caliph thinking of in your eulogies of Abū Dulaf and of myself?" He replied, "About my words on Abū Dulaf,

The present world is nothing but Abū Dulaf,
   [in the time which is] between his coming into the world naked and his being at the point of death.

So when Abū Dulaf turns his back [on life],
   the world turns its back [on life] also, following in his track.

and about my words on you,

If it were not for Ḥumayd,
   no outstanding merit or noble lineage could be enumerated.

O unique one of the Arabs,
   through whose greatness the Arabs have become great!"

‘Ali b. Jabalah related: Ḥumayd remained with bowed head for a while, and then said, "O Abū al-Ḥasan, the Commander of the Faithful has already allotted a sum of money for you, and has ordered me [to give you] ten thousand dirhams, a beast for bearing these presents, a robe of honor and a slave." Abū Dulaf

752. Wa-in shā’ā, aqalnāhu. This translation gives good parallelism with the phrase in shā’ā, ‘afawnā ‘anhu, "if he wishes, he will pardon him," a few lines further up. Keller’s translation of Ibn Abi Tahir’s parallel text, 133, "Will er dies, so lasse er uns wissen," seems to take aqāla here as form IV of root q-w-l and not of q-y-l and seems less plausible.
heard about this, and doubled the gift to me. Both of them did this in secret, and no one has ever known about it, O Abū Nizār, until I have told you about this.

Abū Nizār related: I imagined that al-Maʾmūn viewed ‘Ali b. Jabalah with disfavor753 because of this verse on Abū Dulaf:

The water of liberality flowed down from Adam's loins,754
and then the Merciful One fixed it in the loins of [Abū Dulaf al-] Qāsim.755

It is mentioned from Sulaymān b. Razin al-Khuzāʾī,756 the nephew of Diʾbil,757 as follows. He said: Diʾbil once satirized al-Maʾmūn, saying:

Al-Maʾmūn is imposing on me the office of diviner,
did he not see only yesterday the head of Muḥammad [al-Amin, his brother]?

He looks down on the skulls of the caliphs758 just as the mountains look down on the low-lying hills,

And he lurks in the refuge-places of every inaccessible spot,
until he brings low a lofty mountain, which has never before been ascended.

The one who seeks revenge is kept awake at nights and is sleepless;
so keep your spittle away from the spittle of the black one [the venomous viper]!759

753. See for this sense of taʾaqqada, Tabari, Glossarium, p. CCCLXX
757. The Shiʿi poet and satirist, hence generally hostile to the ʿAbbāsids and Tāhirs; see Bosworth, “The Tāhirs and Arabic culture,” 52–4; Sezgin, GAS, II, 529–33; Ell s.v. [L. Zolondek].
758. The Diwān of Diʾbil, 145, has the inferior reading khalāʾiq, “creatures,” for the khalāʾif of Ibn Abī Ṭāhir and Tabari.
759. Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 296, tr. 134; Diʾbil, Dīwān, 144–5 [fragment of seven verses]; Iṣfahānī, Aghānī, XVIII, 55 [the first verse only].
The Events of the Year 218

Someone said to al-Ma'āmun, “Di'bil has satirized you.” Al-Ma'āmun replied, “[No,] he is satirizing Abū 'Abbād [Thābit b. Yaḥyā],760 and not me,” alluding to Abū 'Abbād's passionate temper. Whenever Abū 'Abbād went into al-Ma'āmun's presence, the latter would frequently laugh and say to him, “What did Di'bil really mean regarding you when he was saying:

It is as if he had escaped from the Dayr Hizqīl,761
a deranged and violent one, who still drags along the chains of his fetters.”762

Al-Ma'āmun used to say to Ibrāhīm b. Shaklāh (Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī)763 when the latter came into his presence, “Di'bil has caused you pain when he says,

If Ibrāhīm is able to bear the burden of it [the caliphate],
then it will certainly be suitable for al-Mukhārīq after him,

And it will certainly be suitable after that one for Zulzul,
and likewise after Zulzul for al-Māriqī.764

How can it be? Nay, it cannot be and it never has been possible for an evildoer [fāsiq] to take over from [another, previous] evildoer.”765

Muḥammad b. Haytham al-Ṭā'ī has mentioned that al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad al-Ṭayfūrī related to him saying: (Abū Mu-

---

760. Al-Ma'āmun's secretary; see ibid., XVIII, 39; Sourdel, Vizirat, I, 214, 231–2.
761. The principal madhouse in Baghdad; see Yāqūt, Mu'jam, II, 540–1; A. Mez, Abulkāsim, ein bagdader Sittenbild, p. XLVIII and the references there.
762. Di'bil, Dīwān, 148; Ḥisābī, Aghānī, XVIII, 30.
763. Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī is frequently referred to pejoratively in the sources as the son of his black slave mother Shaklāh, from whom he acquired his swarthy visage; see Ibn Khallikān Wafayāt al-a'yān, I, 39, tr. de Slane, I, 17.
764. The text here and Ibn Khallikān have al-Māriqī, but Ibn Abī Ṭāhir and Ḥisābī, Aghānī, VI, 20–1, XIII, 31, have the apparently more correct al-Māriqī. For the singers and musicians mentioned here, see Farmer, 118–19, 121.
765. Ibn Abī Ṭāhir, 296–7, tr. 134, with the first three of the latter verses also at 194, tr. 88, with a variant third verse; Ḥisābī, Aghānī, XVIII, 58, with verses one and three; Ibn Khallikān, I, 40, tr. 18, with all four of these verses.
hammad al-Yazidi complained to al-Ma'mûn about a financial loss which he had suffered and about some debt which he was now required to settle. Al-Ma'mûn said, "We do not have by us at this moment a sum which, if we handed it over to you, would be sufficient for your needs." Al-Yazidi replied, "O Commander of the Faithful, I am in straitened circumstances just now, and my creditors are pressing me hard." Al-Ma'mûn said, "Suggest a way out for yourself, from which you might derive advantage." He replied, "Among your boon-companions is one from whom, if I move him to respond, I will get what I desire, so give me free rein to devise a stratagem with them." Al-Ma'mûn said, "Say what you have in mind." He replied, "When both they and I are present [in the Caliph's palace], order your servant so-and-so to bring you my petition, and when you have read it, send back to me the message 'Your entry at this moment [into the Caliph's circle of boon-companions] is not possible, but choose for yourself [as a companion] whomsoever you like.'" He related: When Abû Muḥammad al-Yazidi knew that al-Ma'mûn was holding a convivial session, with his boon-companions gathered round him, and when he was certain that they were befuddled from their wine drinking, he came to the door and handed over to that servant a petition which he had written out. The servant conveyed it to the Caliph on his behalf, and the Caliph read it out, and behold, it contained the words,

O best of my brothers and companions,
this intruder at the feast is at the door!

He has been told that the members of the circle are all in a state of enjoyment,
in which every comer yearns to share.

So make me one of your number,
or else let one of my equals come out to me!

766. Presumably Yahyâ b. al-Mubârak, a poet from this well-known family; see Sezgin, GAS, II, 610; M. Fleischhammer, in ZDMG, CXII (1962), 299–308.
He related: Al-Ma'mūn read these words out to those assembled round him, and they said, "It is not fitting that this parasite should come in under the present circumstances." So Al-Ma'mūn sent back to him, "Your entry at this moment is not possible; but choose for yourself whomsoever you would like to make your companion." He said, "I don't consider that there is anyone whom I would like to choose except 'Abdallah b. Tāhir." Al-Ma'mūn said to 'Abdallāh b. Tāhir, "His choice has fallen on you, so off you go to him!" 'Abdallāh protested, "O Commander of the Faithful, must I be the parasite's companion?" Al-Ma'mūn replied, "Abū Muḥammad cannot be refused both of his requests. If you wish to go out [and join him, well and good]; but if not, then purchase your freedom [from this commitment]." He related: 'Abdallāh said, "O Commander of the Faithful, I will pay him ten thousand dirhams." Al-Ma'mūn replied, "I don't think that that sum from you will satisfy his claim on you, nor compensate for companionship with you." He related: 'Abdallāh kept on increasing the sum offered by ten thousand dirhams at a time, with Al-Ma'mūn telling him each time, "I am not satisfied with that for him." Finally, he reached the figure of a hundred thousand (dirhams). He related: Al-Ma'mūn then told him, "Hand it over to him immediately!" He related: He thereupon wrote out for him an order to his financial intendant for the money, and sent a messenger along with him. Al-Ma'mūn wrote a message to al-Yazidi, "In your present circumstances, getting this sum of money is better to you than enjoying the companionship of him in his kind of position, and has a more useful end-product!"767

It is mentioned from Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh, the master of the caliphal stables and conveyances (ṣāhib al-marākib), that he said: My father related to me from Šāliḥ b. al-Rashid, who said: I once went into Al-Ma’mūn’s presence, having with me two verses by al-Ḥusayn b. al-Ḍāḥfāk.768 I said, "O Commander

767. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 303—5, tr. 137—8; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 467—8.
768. Court poet of various 'Abbāsid caliphs of the time, who was called al-Khali', "The Debauched One"; see Sezgin, GAS, II, 518—19; El² s.v. (Pellat).
of the Faithful, I should like you to hear from me two verses.” He said, “Recite them.” He related: Ṣāliḥ then recited to him:

We praise God, O Commander of the Faithful,
out of thankfulness, since He has bestowed on us your help.

You are truly the representative [khalīfa] of the Merciful One, and have united in yourself generosity and religion.

Al-Ma’mūn found them to be good, and asked, “O Ṣāliḥ, who is the author of these two verses?” I replied, “Your servant, O Commander of the Faithful, al-Ḥusayn b. al-Ḍahḥāk.” He said, “He has done well.” I replied, “But he has written even better poetry than this, O Commander of the Faithful!” He said, “Such as?” So I recited to him:

Can the one whose goodness is unique, and whose [noble] characteristics are unique, be miserly towards me, when I have devoted to him exclusively a unique love?

God has seen that ‘Abdallāh [al-Ma’mūn] is the best of His servants, hence has given him kingly power—and God is the most knowing one about His servant.769

It is mentioned from ‘Umarah b. ‘Aqil that he related: ‘Abdallāh b. Abī al-Simṭ770 said to me, “Did you know that al-Ma’mūn has little taste for poetry?” He related: I replied, “But who is there, nevertheless, who is more knowledgeable about poetry than him? By God, you shall see us recite the first part of a verse to him, and he will complete its latter part before we ourselves can.” He said, “I once recited a verse to him, which I had composed very well, but I could not detect any re-

769. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 312, tr. 141; Isfahānī, Aghānī, VI, 72 (where, however, it is stated that these verses did not counterbalance, in al-Ma’mūn’s eyes, the poet’s previous eulogies of his brother al-Amin and satires on himself).
770. Apparently a member of the famous Abū Ḥafṣah poetic family; see Sezgin, GAS, II, 583.
action to it on his part.” He related: I said, “What was it you recited to him?” He said, “I recited to him,

The Imām of right guidance, al-Ma’mūn, has become fully occupied

with religion, whereas the people devote themselves to the affairs of the present world.”

He related: I said to him, “By God, what you have composed is worthless! Have you added anything [to his status] in making him [like] an old woman in her prayer niche, with her rosary in her hand? Who can be responsible for the affairs of the world, when he has been invested [by God] with its direction, if he is unconcerned about it? Why didn’t you say of him like your forebear [literally: your paternal uncle] Jarir⁷¹ said of ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. al-Walid,⁷²

He does not let his share in this present world go to waste,

yet on the other hand, the concerns of this world do not deflect him from religion.

He commented: At that moment, I realized that I had made an error.⁷³

It is mentioned from Muhammad b. Ibrāhīm al-Sabārī⁷⁴ that he said: When (Kulthūm b. ‘Amr) al-‘Attābī⁷⁵ came to al-Ma’mūn in the City of Peace, he was given permission to enter. So he went into the Caliph’s presence, the latter having with him at that time Isḥāq b. Ibrāhīm al-Mawsīlī.⁷⁶ Al-‘Attābī was at this time a highly-respected elderly man. He greeted the Caliph, who returned the greeting and ordered al-‘Attābī to approach him, and brought him near until he was close to him. Al-‘Attābī kissed his hand. The Caliph then ordered him to

---

771. See above, 244 and n. 742.
772. The Umayyad prince, son of al-Walid I.
773. Ibn Abī Tāhir, 313, tr. 141–2; Ibn al-Athīr, al-Kāmil, VI, 438.
774. The correct reading for this nisbah is unclear; al-Sayyārī would be possible, whilst Isfahānī, Aghānī, XII, 3, has al-Yāsārī. Sam’ānī (Hyderabad), VII, 22, connects al-Sabārī with a village of the Bukhara oasis.
775. The secretary and poet, eulogist of al-Rashīd and al-Ma’mūn; see Sezgin, GAS, II, 540–1; Ef² s.v. al-‘Attābī (Blachère).
776. The great musician, singer and poet, and favorite of al-Ma’mūn; see Farmer, 134–6; Sezgin, GAS, II, 578; Ef² s.v. (Fück).
be seated, so he sat down, and then the Caliph came up to al-`Attabi and questioned him about his present circumstances. Al-`Attabi began to answer him in an eloquent voice, which al-Ma`mun found pleasing, and he came up to al-`Attabi, making jests and pleasantries. The old man thought that al-Ma`mun was mocking him, and exclaimed, “O Commander of the Faithful, does assembling beasts for milking come before making yourself familiar to them?” He related: Al-Ma`mun did not comprehend the allusion to “assembling beasts for milking” (al-ibsas), he looked at Ishaq b. Ibrahim, and then said, “Yes! O slave boy, [bring] one thousand dinars!” The sum was brought and then poured out in front of al-`Attabi.

They then began to talk together and tell stories. Ishaq b. Ibrahim made a surreptitious sign with his eye to al-Ma`mun. He would not allow al-`Attabi to embark on any topic without starting to dispute with him over the greater part of it. Al-`Attabi was left mystified by this, but then said, “O Commander of the Faithful, give me permission to ask this old man what his name is!” Al-Ma`mun answered, “Certainly, do ask him.” Al-`Attabi said, “O old man, who are you, and what is your name?” Ishaq replied, “I am a human being and my name is Kul baisal.” Al-`Attabi said, “As for the name of attribution [nisbah], that is known, but with regard to the name proper [ism], that is still unknown [to me]; Kul baisal is not a recognized name.” Ishaq answered him, “You are quite unjust here! Is not Kul thum a recognized name, then? Onions are pleasanter than garlic!” Al-`Attabi said, “What an excellent fellow you are! How persuasively you have argued! O Commander of the Faithful, I have never before seen an old man like this one! Would you permit me to make him a gift of what the Commander of the Faithful bestowed on me [earlier]? For by God, he has got the better of me!” Al-Ma`mun retorted, “Nay, you shall keep the whole of it, and I shall order him to be given an equivalent sum.” Ishaq then said to al-`Attabi, “Since

777. An allusion to the proverb, “Make yourself known to beasts before milking them,” cf. Maydani, tr. I, 94.
778. Kul baisal, literally, “eat onions!” —al-`Attabi’s ism being interpretable as kul thum “eat garlic!”
you have acknowledged this [superiority of mine in debate], make a guess about me, and you will find me out!" He said, "By God, you must be none other than the shaykh, concerning whom reports reach us from Iraq and who is known as Ibn al-Mawsili." Ishāq replied, "I am that person, just as you imagined." He then went up to him to give him the greetings of long life and of peace. Al-Ma'mūn commented, after the conversation between the two shaykhs had gone on for a considerable time, "Since the two of you have come to a peaceful and amicable understanding, arise, and go off together as boon-companions!" So al-'Attābi went off to Ishāq's house and stayed there with him.79

It is mentioned from Muḥammad b. Abdallāh b. Jasham al-Rib'i that 'Umarah b. 'Aqil said: One day, when I was drinking with him, al-Ma'mūn said to me, "What poor company you are, O bedouin!" He related: I protested, "That is not the case, 0 Commander of the Faithful, but my heart is troubled." He enquired, "How is that?" I replied:

Mufaddāt said, when she saw that I was sleepless
and that the phantom of care was visiting me repeatedly,
as an obsession,

You have dissipated your wealth on acts of favor to people both near
and far, to the point that indigence now encompasses you.

Seek out these people, and you will see what a fine state you once enjoyed;
you shower them with gifts, so that they have now already got whole herds of camels!

But I replied, Away with your reproaches! You have blamed me too much;
neither Ḥātim nor Harim died from extreme poverty.

Al-Ma’mūn said to me, “What are you thinking of, setting yourself up in comparison with Harim b. Sinān, the lord of the Arabs, and Ḥātim al-Ṭāʾi? They did so-and-so and so-and-so,” and he began to overwhelm me with a heap of examples of their generosity. He related: I replied, however, “O Commander of the Faithful, I am better than both of them, because I am a Muslim and they were infidels, and I am an Arab as well.”

It is mentioned from Muhammad b. Zakariyyāʾ b. Maymūn al-Farghānī that he said: Al-Ma’mūn said to Muḥammad b. al-Jahm,” “Recite to me three verses of poetry which are on the respective themes of eulogy, satire and elegy, and I will give you a tract of land for each verse.” So he recited to him as an example of eulogy:

He yields up his life, when even the [ordinary] generous person is tenacious of it;
giving up one’s life is the highest point of generosity.

He recited to him as an example of satire:

Their external appearance is hateful, but when you get to know them,
their external appearance appears beautiful because of the extreme hatefulness of their inner character.

He recited to him as an example of elegy:

They wished to conceal his grave,
but the sweet odor of the grave’s earth indicated the way to the tomb.

It is mentioned from al-’Abbās b. Aḥmad b. Abān b. al-Qāsim al-Kātib, who said, al-Ḥusayn b. al-Ḍahḥāk related to me,
The Events of the Year 218

saying: 'Allawayh said to me, I will tell you about an episode that once happened to me when I would have despaired of continuing in al-Ma'mūn's favor had it not been for his nobility of character. He summoned us, and when the effects of the wine had got a hold of him, he said, "Sing to me!" Mukhāriq proceeded me, and started off by singing a melody by Ibn Surayj785 to a poem by Jarir,

When I recalled to mind the two monasteries,

where the noise of the domestic fowls and the beating of the wooden clappers kept me awake,

I said to the party of riders, at a time when we were weary from the journey

"How far is Yabrin786 from the gates of the gardens of paradise!"

He related: I was given the instruction to start singing at that moment, when al-Ma'mūn had in fact just had the idea of setting out for Damascus with the intention of proceeding to the (Byzantine) frontier region,

The moment of time has urged [us] on to Damascus, even though

Damascus is no fitting place for our people.787

He thereupon dashed his drinking-cup to the ground and exclaimed, "What's the matter with you? May God's curse be upon you!" Then he said, "O slave boy, give Mukhāriq three thousand dirhams!" I was taken by the hand and set down in my place, whilst his eyes were overflowing with tears and he was saying to al-Mu'taṣim, "This is, by God, my last expedition and I don't think that I shall ever see Iraq again." He related: By God, it was indeed his last contact with Iraq, at the time of this expedition, just as he said.788

[1163]

785. Famed singer in the Hijaz during the Umayyad period; see Farmer, 79–80, EI² s.v. [Fück].
786. According to Yāqūt, Mu'jam, V, 427, a sand dune region of eastern Arabia.
788. Ibn Abi Ṭāhir, 320–1, tr. 145.
(I. Primary Sources: Texts and Translations)


Ibn Khaldūn, Wali al-Dīn Abū Zayd ʿAbd al-ʿRaḥmān b. Muḥammad. al-Muqaddimah. Translated by F. Rosenthal under the title The


Maqātil al-Ṭâlibiyîn. Edited by Ahmad Šaqr. Cairo, 1368 [1949].


al-'Arab. 3 vols. Translated by G.W. Freytag under the title Arabum proverba. Bonn, 1838–43.


Qurni, Ḥasan b. Muḥammad. Taʾrīkh-i Qum. Edited by Jalāl al-Dīn Tihrānī. Tehran, 1353 {1313 sh. [1934/5]}.


al-Zabīdī, Abū al-Fayḍ Muḥammad Murtaḍā b. Muḥammad. Tāj
Bibliography


(II. Secondary Sources and Reference Works)


———. "Recruitment, muster and review in medieval Islamic ar-


Hughes, T. P. *A dictionary of Islam, being a cyclopaedia of the doctrines, rites, ceremonies, and customs, together with the technical and theological terms, of the Muhammadan religion*. London, 1885.


264 The Caliphate of al-Ma'mun

Lammens, H. La Meque à la veille de l'hégire. Beirut, 1924.
Le Strange, G. Palestine under the Moslems, a description of Syria and the Holy Land from A.D. 650 to 1500. London, 1890.
——. Baghdad under the Abbasid Caliphate from contemporary Arabic and Persian sources. Oxford, 1900.
——. The lands of the Eastern Caliphate, Mesopotamia, Persia, and Central Asia from the Moslem conquest to the time of Timur. Cambridge, 1905.
——. The social structure of Islam. Cambridge, 1957.
Marin, E. See under Primary sources, s.v. al-Ṭabarī.
Bibliography of Works Consulted

Marquet, Y. “Le Shi'isme au IXe siècle à travers l’histoire de Ya‘qūbī.” 


———. See under _Primary sources_, s.v. al-Ṭabārī.


Patton, W.M. _Ahmed ibn Ḥanbal and the Miḥna_. A biography of the Imam including an account of the Muḥammedan inquisition _called the Miḥna_. 218–234 A.H. Leiden, 1897.

Pellat, Ch. _Le milieu bašri en la formation de Ġāḥiẓ_. Paris, 1953.


Scarcia Amoretti, B. “Sects and heresies.” In _The Cambridge history_
The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

of Iran. Vol. IV. From the Arab invasion to the Saljuqs, 481–519.
The index contains all proper names of persons, places, tribal and other groups, as well as topographical data, occurring in the introduction, the text, and the footnotes, together with some technical terms. However, as far as the footnotes are concerned, only those names that belong to the medieval or earlier periods are listed.

The definite article, the abbreviation b. (for ibn, son) and bt. (for bint, daughter), and everything in parentheses are disregarded for the purposes of alphabetization. Where a name occurs in both the text and the footnotes on the same page, only the page number is given.

A
al-'Abbās, officer of 'Īsā b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid 87-8
'Abbās, mawla of al-Ma'mūn 214
al-'Abbās, qaṭī'ah or fief of 108
al-'Abbās b. Aḥnaf, poet 245
al-'Abbās b. al-Haytham al-Dinawari 80
al-'Abbās b. Ja'far al-Khuzā'ī 43
al-'Abbās b. al-Ma'mūn 134, 153-4, 174, 182, 185-6, 198-9, 222, 231
al-'Abbās b. Mūsā al-Hādī 67
al-'Abbās b. Mūsā b. 'Īsā, 'Abbāsid 11
al-'Abbās b. Mūsā b. Ja'far, 'Alid 71-4
'Abbāsah bt. al-Fāḍl b. Sahl 154
'Abbāsids [see also Hashimites] 45, 57, 72, 74, 77, 85, 95

'Abdallāh b. al-'Abbās 244
'Abdallāh b. Abī al-Simṭ, poet 252-3
'Abdallāh b. Aḥmad b. Yūsuf, rāwī 172
'Abdallāh b. Aḥmad b. Zayd al-Dimashqī, judge 225
'Abdallāh b. 'Ali b. 'Īsā b. Māhān 47
'Abdallāh b. Jalis al-Hilālī, rebel in Egypt 178, 182
'Abdallāh b. Khurram al-Dinawari 64
'Abdallāh b. Lāhī'ah, rāwī 165
'Abdallāh b. Sa'īd al-Ḥarashi 16
'Abdallāh b. 'Ubaydallāh b. al-'Abbās, 'Abbāsid 177, 180, 186, 190
'Abdallāh b. Wahh, rāwī 165
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Abd al-'Azīz b. 'Imrān</td>
<td>78, 81</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abd al-'Azīz b. al-Walid, Umayyad</td>
<td>253</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Ḥassān al-Ziyādī</td>
<td>104-5, 158, 210-12, 217, 222</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abd al-Mun'im b. Idrīs b. Bint Wahb b. Munabbih</td>
<td>213</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Ibrāhīm b. Ghassān, see Ghassān b. Abī al-Farāj, Abū Ibrāhīm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū 'Isā b. Hārūn al-Rashīd</td>
<td>135</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Laylā, king of Daylam</td>
<td>64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Ma'mar al-Qaṭī'i</td>
<td>210, 218, 222</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Marwān Kāriz b. Hārūn, ṭāwi</td>
<td>245</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Maryām, slave of Sa'id al-Jawhari</td>
<td>102</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Misnār, Baghdad mobster</td>
<td>148</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Mūsā al-Ash'āri</td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Muslim, mustamli of Yazid b. Hārūn</td>
<td>204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Naṣr al-Tammār</td>
<td>210, 217, 222</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Nizār al-Ḍarīr, poet</td>
<td>246, 248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Quaraysh, village</td>
<td>48-9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū al-Shaddākh, poet</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū al-Shawk</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Sufyān b. Hārīb</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adana</td>
<td>188, 192</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Adhal, slave girl of Humayy d. 'Abd al-Ḥamīd al-Tūsī</td>
<td>158</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Ali b. Abdallāh, 'Alīd | 130-1 | |
| Abū al-Saraya, al-Sarā'ī b. Mansūr, al-Asfar | 1, 13, 14-19, 23-7, 29, 40 | |
| Abū al-Shawk | 25 | |
| Abū al-Tāhīyāh, poet | 175, 245-6 | |
| Abū al-Tafsīr al-Ṭālīb | 216, 222 | |
| Abū Ḥanīfah, legist | 239 | |
| Abū Ḥārūn b. al-Bakkā' | 212-13, 222 | |
| Abū al-Tāfiṣ al-Ṭalīb | 278, 279-80, 281-2 | |
| Abū al-Tāhīyah, poet | 175, 245-6 | |
| Abū al-Tafsīr al-Ṭalīb | 216, 222 | |
| Abū Ḥanīfah, legist | 239 | |
| Abū Ḥārūn b. al-Bakkā' | 212-13, 222 | |
| Abū Ḥassān al-Ziyādī | 104-5, 158, 210-12, 217, 222 | |
| Abū Ibrāhīm b. Ghassān, see Ghassān b. Abī al-Farāj, Abū Ibrāhīm | | |
| Abū 'Isā b. Hārūn al-Rashīd | 135 | |
| Abū Laylā, king of Daylam | 64 | |
| Abū Ma'mar al-Qaṭī'i | 210, 218, 222 | |
| Abū Marwān Kāriz b. Hārūn, ṭāwi | 245 | |
| Abū Maryām, slave of Sa'id al-Jawhari | 102 | |
| Abū Misnār, Baghdad mobster | 148 | |
| Abū Mūsā al-Ash'āri | 124 | |
| Abū Muslim, mustamli of Yazid b. Hārūn | 204 | |
| Abū Naṣr al-Tammār | 210, 217, 222 | |
| Abū Nizār al-Ḍarīr, poet | 246, 248 | |
| Abū Quaraysh, village | 48-9 | |
| Abū al-Shaddākh, poet | 54 | |
| Abū al-Shawk | 25 | |
| Abū Sufyān b. Hārīb | 217 | |
| Adana | 188, 192 | |
| 'Adhal, slave girl of Humayy d. 'Abd al-Ḥamīd al-Tūsī | 158 | |
Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>afdal</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Afshin, Haydar</td>
<td>135, 182, 188-9, 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahl al-Bayt (see also 'Alids, Tālibids)</td>
<td>26, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Adi Duwād</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Abī Khālid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Aḥwal</td>
<td>96-7, 103-4, 105, 133, 135, 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Abī Ṭāhir</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tayfūr</td>
<td>3, 7-8, 95n., 116n., 117n., 118n., 119n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Ḥafṣ b. 'Umar, ṭawī</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Ḥanbal</td>
<td>210, 212-13, 217, 220-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. al-Ḥasan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Sahil, ṭawī</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Hishām</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. ibrahīm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Dawraqī</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. al-Junayyd</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Iskāfī</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Muḥammad b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makhlad</td>
<td>7, 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Muḥammad al-‘Umarī, rebel in Yemen</td>
<td>176, 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Muḥammad b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Walīd al-Radmī</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Naṣr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Khuza‘ī</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Shujā‘</td>
<td>210, 218, 222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Yaḥyā b. Mu‘ādh</td>
<td>109, 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Yūsuf</td>
<td>3, 179-80, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahwāz</td>
<td>10, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-‘Akawwak, see 'Ali b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jabalah al-‘Akawwak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Akk, Banū</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexandria</td>
<td>164-5, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. 'Abbālāh b. Khālid b. Yazīd, Sufyānīd rebel</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. 'Abd al-'Azīz al-Jarwī</td>
<td>164-5, 182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. Abī Muqātīl</td>
<td>210-11, 216, 222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. Abī Sa‘īd, Dhū al-Qalamayn</td>
<td>10, 18, 23, 26, 27, 39, 44, 78-9, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib, caliph</td>
<td>177, 230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. Hārūn, ṭawī</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. al-Haytham</td>
<td>100-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. 'Īsā al-Qummī</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. Jabalah al-'Akawwak, poet and ṭawī</td>
<td>246-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. al-Ja‘d</td>
<td>210, 222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. Muḥammad b. Ja‘far, ‘Ālid</td>
<td>31-3, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. Mūsā al-Ridā, Eighth Imām of the Shī‘ah</td>
<td>2, 39, 45, 60-3, 69, 71, 78, 80, 82, 84-5, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. Muṣ‘ab b. Ruzayq</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. Rayṭah</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. Ṣāliḥ, poet and ṭawī</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. 'Ubaydah, al-Rayḥānī, poet</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali b. Yaḥyā</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Alids (see also Ahl al-Bayt, Tālibīdīs)</td>
<td>67, 72, 230</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

`Allawayh, musician 242-3, 257
al`Alth 182
al-Amin, Muḥammad, Caliph 9, 10, 36, 49, 79, 103, 192, 231, 248
Ammār, Baghdad mobster 148
Ammār b. Yāsir 221
`Amr b. Mas`adah al-Šu`lī 96, 140
Anbār 216
Anbār Road district of Baghdad 56-7
Andalusians, in Egypt 164-5
Anṭīgūf 188
`Aqarqūf 39
Aqīdā al-Ḥarūfī 68
al`.Aqīli, descendant of `Aqīl b. Abī Ṭālib 37-9
al-A`rābī, `.r.kū 51
`Arafah 21-2
Armenia 106, 144, 182, 193
Asad b. Abī al-Asad 42
Aṣfar, Banū al- 29
Ashinās, Abū Ja`far 68, 186
`Aṣim b. Bahdalah al-Asadi 219
`Aṣim b. `Umar b. Qatādah 219
`Askar al-Mahdi quarter of Baghdad 42-3, 47, 59, 87, 136
`Aṭā`, šāhib al-mazālim, rāwī 169
al-`Attābī, see Kūlthūm b.
`Amr al-`Attābī
al-`Ayshī, rāwī 234-5
`aYYārūn 55
āzādī dates 224
Aṣd, Banū 144
Azerbaijan 106, 144, 176, 182, 183, 193
Azhar b. Zuhayr b. al-Musayyab 12
`Azīz mawla of `Abdallāh b. Ṭāhir 182
B
Bāb al-Jisr, gate of Baghdad 86, 92
Bāb al-Karkh, gate of Baghdad 43
Bāb Khurāsān, gate of Baghdad 89
Bāb al-Kūfah, gate of Baghdad 51
Bāb al-Muḥawwal, gate of Baghdad 43
Bāb al-Shām, gate of Baghdad 51, 76, 86
Bābak al-Khurramī (see also Khurramiyyah) 65, 98, 106, 108, 134, 144, 176, 181, 182, 192
Badhdh 65
Baghdad, Madinat al-Salām or City of Peace 10, 19, 26, 41-4, 46-7, 51-2, 55-60, 68, 75-7, 80-1, 85, 92, 95-7, 99, 135, 144-6, 158, 159, 182, 184, 189, 190, 192, 199, 205, 221, 231, 253
Bahrayn 108
baqiyyah 161
Baradān 39, 184
barīd 132, 224
Barmakīs 256
Barqah 188, 192
Bāsalāmā 47
Baṣrah 10, 16, 17, 23, 25, 26-7, 44, 83, 98, 108, 135, 158, 236
Bayt al-Ḥikmah 158n.
Index

bazmāward 243
Bilāl al-Ḍabābī, Khārijite rebel 182
Bilbays 159
Bimā 191
Bi'r Maymūn 32, 33-4
Bishr b. Dāwūd al-Muhallabī 106, 175, 179, 189
Bishr b. Ghiyāth al-Mārisī 100-1, 103-4
Bishr b. al-Walīd al-Kindī, judge 137, 210-11, 215-16, 220-2
Budandūn 222, 224
Bughā al-Kabīr 158
Būrān bt. al-Ḥasan b. Sahl 3, 82, 153-8
al-Butayn b. Umayyah al-Bajālī al-Ḥimsī, poet 163-4
Bustān Ibn 'Amīr or Bustān Ibn Ma'mar 21, 38
Buzurjshābūr 67
Byzantium, Byzantines (see also Rūm) 45, 144, 184-5, 187-8, 194-7, 198-9, 224, 257
C
Cappadocia 185n.
Crete 165

D
Damascus 161, 186, 188, 190, 192, 199, 223, 232, 234, 242, 243, 257
dār khālīṣah 30
dār al-qawārīr 38
Dāwūd b. Banījur 108
Dāwūd b. 'Īsā b. Mūsā, 'Abbāsid 19-21, 28, 32
Dāwūd b. Yazīd

al-Muhallabī 106
Daylam 64
Dayr al-'Āqūl 48-9, 59
Dayr al-A'war 72
Dayr Hizqił, in Baghdad 249
al-Dhayyāl b. al-Haytham 210-11, 216, 222
Dhubyan, Banū 256n.
Di'īl b. 'Āli al-Khuzā'i, poet 248-9
Dinār b. 'Abdallāh 85, 130-1, 154
Dinawar 134, 182
Diyār Mudār 10, 110
Diyār Rabī'ah 110
Dujayl 43
Dunbāwand 135

E
Egypt 106, 159-61, 164-5, 168-9, 178, 182, 188, 191, 192, 199

F
al-Fadl b. al-Farrukhān 210, 217-18, 222
al-Fadl b. Ghānim 210, 217, 222
al-Fadl b. Kāwūs b. Khārakhuruh 135
al-Fadl b. Muhammad b. al-Ṣabbaḥ al-Kindī al-Kūfi 70, 74
al-Fadl b. al-Rabī' 48-9, 59, 91, 110, 137, 139-40
al-Fadl b. Sahl, Ḍū' al-Rhāṣatayn 2, 13-14, 35, 40-1, 59, 62, 69, 78-81, 105, 156, 179
Fam al-Ṣarāt 51
Fam al-Ṣilḥ 3, 49-50, 153, 156-8
The Caliphate of al-Ma'mūn

Faraj al-Baghwārī 145, 148
Faraj al-Daylami 80
Faraj al-Turki 148
Faraj b. Ziyād al-Rukkhaji 107
Fārs 10
Fatḥ al-Khādīm 101-2
Fihr, Banū 31, 67
Filastīn 199, 223
Fīrās 145, 148
Fīrās b. Ziyād al-Rukkhaji 13
Harūn b. 'Abdallāh 41
Harbiyyah quarter of Baghdad and its troops 41-4, 47-8, 55, 57-9, 77
Harim b. Sinān 255-6
Harthamah b. A'yan 11, 12, 17-19, 23-4, 39-42, 44, 72, 79
Harūn b. Jābghūyah 103
Harūn b. Muḥammad b. Abī Khalīd 16, 26, 49, 51, 87, 182
Harūn b. Muḥammad b. Ismā'il b. Mūsā al-Ḥādī, rāwi 240
Harūn b. al-Musayyab 27, 35
Harūn al-Rashīd, caliph 36, 84
al-Ḥasan al-Hirsh 9, 12
al-Ḥasan b. 'Ali al-Bādhghisī al-Ma'mūnī 25
al-Ḥasan b. Ḥamīdād 210, 218-19, 220-2
al-Ḥasan b. al-Ḥusayn b. Muṣʿab 136
al-Ḥasan b. Sahl 2, 3, 9-10, 12, 13-14, 15, 17, 26-7, 37, 38, 39, 42-3, 47-54, 59, 61-3, 69-71, 75, 78-9, 81, 82, 83, 85, 105-6, 147, 153-8
al-Ḥasan b. Yāḥyā al-Fihrī, rāwi 163
Ḥāshimites (see also 'Abbāsids) 2, 13, 50, 52-3, 61, 66, 80, 91, 95
Hashtādsar 181
Ḥāṭim al-Tāʾī 255-6
ḥawāʾit, sing. ḥāʾit 20

G
Ghālib al-Masʿūdī al-Aswād 80
al-Ghāliyah 72
Ghassān b. 'Abbād 53, 104-5, 156, 179-80, 189-90
Ghassān b. Abī al-Faraj, Abū Ibrahim, or Abū Ibrahim b. Ghassān 24-5, 53, 69, 74

H
Ḥājib b. Ṣalīḥ 175
al-Ḥakīm al-Ḥārithī 71
Hamadhān 93
Ḥamdawayh b. 'Ali b. Ḥisā b. Māhān 27, 38, 83
Ḥamdūnāh bt. Harūn al-Rashīd and Ghaḍīd 154, 156
Ḥamamād al-Kundughush 26
Ḥamamād b. al-Ḥasan, rāwi 100
Ḥamzah b. Ādhark, Khārijite rebel 105
Ḥānī b. Qabīṣah
al-Shaybānī 13

al-Ḥasan b. Yahyā
al-Fihrī, rāwi 163
Ḥāshimites (see also 'Abbāsids) 2, 13, 50, 52-3, 61, 66, 80, 91, 95
Hashtādsar 181
Ḥāṭim al-Tāʾī 255-6
ḥawāʾit, sing. ḥāʾit 20
Ibn al-Bakkā' al-Asghar, see Abū Hārūn b. al-Bakkā' al-Asghar
Ibn Dhi al-Qalamayn 'Ali b. Abī Sa'id 160
Ibn al-Hirsh 210, 222
Ibn al-Jalīl 192
Ibn al-Kalbī, see Hishām b. Muḥammad al-Kalbī
Ibn al-Nadim 7
Ibn al-Sarı, see 'Ubaydallāh b. al-Sarı b. al-Ḥakam
Ibn al-Sarı, rebel in Syria 175
Ibn Surayj, singer 257
Ibn Ṭabāṭaba, Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm b. Ismā'il, 'Alid 12-15, 170
Ibn Ukht al-Dārī, rebel in Syria 198
Ibn 'Ulayyah al-Akbar 210, 213
Ibrāhīm b. al-'Abbās, secretary to Abī Khalīd 135
Ibrāhīm b. al-'Abbās al-Ṣūlī al-Kātib 96
Ibrāhīm b. Abī Ja'far al-Ḥimyārī, rebel in Yemen 181
Ibrāhīm b. 'Īsā b. Burayyah, 'Abbāsid 232-3
Ibrāhīm b. al-Layth al-Tujībī (?) 144
Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī, Ibn Shaklah, al-Mubarāk 2, 7, 62-3, 66-9, 73, 74, 75-8, 81, 85-92, 146-9, 153, 155, 216, 220, 249

Ibn Abī al-Jamal, rebel in Syria 175
Ibn Abī Khalīd, see Muḥammad b. Abī Khālid al-Marwarrūdī
Ibn Abī al-Ṣaqr, rebel in Syria 175
Ibn al-ʿAḥmar 213

Ibn Abī al-Bakr, see Abū Hārūn b. al-Bakkā' al-Asghar
Ibn al-Hirsh 210, 222
Ibn al-Jalīl 192
Ibn al-Kalbī, see Hishām b. Muḥammad al-Kalbī
Ibn al-Nadim 7
Ibn al-Sarı, see 'Ubaydallāh b. al-Sarı b. al-Ḥakam
Ibn al-Sarı, rebel in Syria 175
Ibn Surayj, singer 257
Ibn Ṭabāṭaba, Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm b. Ismā'il, 'Alid 12-15, 170
Ibn Ukht al-Dārī, rebel in Syria 198
Ibn 'Ulayyah al-Akbar 210, 213
Ibrāhīm b. al-'Abbās, secretary to Abī Khalīd 135
Ibrāhīm b. al-'Abbās al-Ṣūlī al-Kātib 96
Ibrāhīm b. Abī Ja'far al-Ḥimyārī, rebel in Yemen 181
Ibrāhīm b. 'Īsā b. Burayyah, 'Abbāsid 232-3
Ibrāhīm b. al-Layth al-Tujībī (?) 144
Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī, Ibn Shaklah, al-Mubarāk 2, 7, 62-3, 66-9, 73, 74, 75-8, 81, 85-92, 146-9, 153, 155, 216, 220, 249
Ibrahim b. Musa b. Ja'far
al-Jazzar, 'Ali 28-9, 37-8, 83
Imami Shi'ah 100
Imran b. Musa al-Barmaki
al-Jazzar, 189
Isa b. Khaliid al-Makhzumi,
Abu Sa'id, poet 240
Isa b. Mansur al-Rafi'i
194
Isa b. Muhammad b. Abi
Khaliid 12, 48, 51, 52,
54-5, 58-63, 70-6, 81, 82,
86-9, 106, 108, 139
Isa b. Yazid al-Juludi 27, 33,
35-7, 38-9, 49, 83
Isabadh 91
Isfahani 65, 183
Ishaq b. al-'Abbasi b.
Muhammad, 'Abbasi'd
53, 183
Ishaq b. Abu Rib'i 161
Ishaq b. Ibrahim
al-Mawsili, poet and
singer 253-5
Ishaq b. Ibrahim
al-Mus'abi 3, 129, 135,
182, 184, 189, 199, 204-5,
210-14, 220-2, 229, 234
Ishaq b. Ibrahim al-Rafiqi
161-2
Ishaq b. Muhammad,
judge of Mecca 32, 34
Ishaq b. Musa b. Isa,
'Abbasi'd 28, 33-4, 65
Ishaq b. Musa al-Hadi b.
al-Mahdi 42-3, 63, 67, 72,
77
Ishaq b. Yahya b.
Mu'adh 223
Iskaf Banu al-Junayd 48
Ismail b. Abi Mas'ud 205
Ismail b. Dawud 205
Ismail b. Hammad b.
Abi Hanifa, judge 136

J
Jabul 50, 52, 58
Ja'far al-Khayyat 186
Ja'far b. Dawud al-Qummi
182, 190, 197
Ja'far b. Isa al-Islami
209, 214, 218
Ja'far b. Muhammad b.
Abi Khaliid 49, 50
Ja'far b. Muhammad
al-'Amiri, rawi 138
Ja'far b. Muhammad,
al-Sadiq, Sixth Imam
of the Shi'ah 31
Jalula 26
Jami' (ayn) (= al-Hillah)
16
al-Jarawi, see 'Ali b. 'Abd
al-'Aziz al-Jarawi
Jarir, poet 244, 253, 257
Jarjaraya 47, 49, 50
Jawidhan b. Sahl 65
Jawidhiniyayah 65
al-Jazirah 10, 19, 25, 106,
109, 169, 192, 199
al-Jibal, al-Jabal 10, 19, 104,
183, 192, 193
Juddah 34
Juhaynah, Banu 35
Juhaftah 34
Jukha 48
Jurjan, Gurgan 37, 94

K
Ka'bah 29-30, 32, 36, 38
Kafar 'Azun 138-9
Kalwadh 18, 53, 70
Karkh quarter of Baghdad 43,
Index

51, 55, 76, 87
Kaskar 108
Kawthar Mosque, Baghdad 92
Kāwīs b. Khārākhuruh, ruler of Ushrūsānah 135
Kaysūm 144, 188
khādīm = khasī 101
Khalaf al-Misrī 79, 81
Khālid al-Daryūsh 2, 55, 57-8
Khālid b. Yazīd b. Mazyad 147
Khalil b. Hāshim al-Bāwardī, Garden of 104
Khāqān al-Khādīm 231
Khārijites, Ḥārūriyyah, Muḥakkimah, Shurāt 67-8, 76, 105, 234
khāriṭah 133, 220
al-Khayzurān bt. ‘Ātā’ al-Jurashiyyah, wife of al-Mahdi and mother of Hārūn al-Rashīd 47
al-Khayzurān, Cemetery of 148
Khayzurāniyyah quarter of Baghdad 47, 95
khifārah 58
Khuld Palace, in Baghdad 86
Khurāsān 17, 19, 27, 65, 97, 100, 104-6, 133-5, 136, 166, 182, 192, 234
Khurrāmiyyah (see also Bābak) 193
Khuza‘īm b. Khāzīm al-Tamīmī 47-8, 50, 53, 59, 81, 82
al-Khwārazmī, see Muhammad b. Mūsā al-Khwārazmī
Kirmān 175
Kūfah 10, 14, 17, 19, 23, 24, 39, 49, 53, 60, 67, 68, 70-4, 135
Kulthūm b. ‘Amr al-‘Attābī 253-5
Kulthūm b. Thābit b. Abī Sa‘īd, ṭāʿī 132
al-Kunāsah quarter of Kūfah 73-4
Kūthā Rabba 16, 54

L
Lāriz, ? Lārijān 64
Leo V the Armenian, Byzantine Emperor 45, 144n.
Lulu’āh 194

M
ma‘āwīn, sing. ma‘ūnāh 99
Ma‘bad b. al-‘Abbās 86
Ma‘bādi bridge, in Baghdad 86, 90
Madā‘īn 17, 18, 23, 51, 53, 59, 67, 70, 77, 81-2, 90
al-Madīnah 19, 22, 98, 185
al-Maghribīb 10, 244
Mahdi b. ‘Alwān al-Dihqān al-Ḥarūrī 67-8
Mājidah 185
Makhzūm, Banū 31
Malaṭīyāh 185
Mālik b. Shāhī al-Niffārī 145-6, 148
The Caliphate of al-Ma'mun

169-71, 175, 176, 184-6,
187-90, 191-7, 198-209,
220-21, 231-2, 232-57
Manbij 185
al-Mansūr b. al-Mahdī 2,
18, 23-4, 46-8, 52-3, 58-9,
62, 66, 73, 81, 82
Manuel, Byzantine patricius
186
maqām ibrāhīm, in Mecca
29, 36
al-Māriqī 249
Marw 37, 39, 41, 78, 80
Marwah 22
Masrūr al-Kabīr al-Khādīm
20-1
Maṣṣīsah 187
al-Masʿūdi 7
maṭmūrah, pl.
maṭmūrī 188
Mayzār b. Qārin 64, 166-7
Mecca 19-22, 28-39, 83, 98,
144, 185, 231
Michael II the Stammerer,
Byzantine Emperor 45, 144
mīḥnah 3, 47, 199-223,
229
Mills of ʿAbdallāh b. Mālik,
near Baghdad 90, 92
Mills of the Patricius, near
Baghdad 43n.
Minā 20-1, 22, 32, 35
minbar 101n.
Minge 66
Mosul 208
Mosul 10, 176, 185, 186
Muʿādī b. ʿAbdallāh 70
al-Muʿallā b. Ayyūb,
secretary 235
Muʿawiyah, Caliph 175, 217
Mubārak, village 50, 51, 52,
69
Muḍar 108, 110, 234, 238
Mufaddāt 255
al-Muhallab b. Abī
Ṣufrāh 179
Muḥammad al-Rawwāʾi
77
Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh,
ṣaḥīb al-marākib
251
Muḥammad b.
ʿAbdallāh b. Jasham
al-Ribʿī, rāwī 255
Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh
al-Ḥammād, Abū
al-Rāzi 176, 181
Muḥammad b. ʿAbd
al-Rahmān
al-Makhzūmī, judge 21,
136-7
Muḥammad b. Abī
al-ʿAbbās al-Ṭūsī 100-3
Muḥammad b. Abī
Khālid al-Marwarrūdhī
42-4, 47-52
Muḥammad b. Abī Rajā,
faqīh 89
Muḥammad b. ʿAli b.
Mūsā al-Imām 82, 185
Muḥammad b. ʿAli b.
Ṣāliḥ al-Sarakhsi,
rāwī 233
Muḥammad b. ʿAli
al-Ṭūnburī, poet,
musician and rāwī 241
Muḥammad b. Ayyūb b.
Jaʿfar b. Sulaymān, rāwī
236
Muḥammad b. Dāwūd b.
ʿĪsā, ʿAbbāsid 20-1
Muḥammad b.
Ḥakim b. Marwān,
mawla of the ʿAbbāsids 34
Muḥammad b. b. Ḥārūn, secretary of al-Maʾmūn 103
Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan 219
Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan b. ʿAlī b. ʿĀṣim 210, 219, 222
Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan b. Sahl 154
Muḥammad b. Ḥātim b. Maymūn 211, 218, 222
Muḥammad b. al-Haytham b. ʿAdī al-Ṭāʾī, ṭawī 232, 249
Muḥammad b. Ḥumayd al-Ṭūṣi 176, 181
Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm al-Ifrīqi 51, 69, 75, 145, 148
Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm al-Sabārī, ṭawī 253
Muḥammad b. ʿImrān al-Fūtaqi 132
Muḥammad b. ʿĪsā b. Yazid al-Julūdī 37
Muḥammad b. Jaʿfar b. Muḥammad b. ʿAlī, al-Dībājah, ʿAlīd 31-7, 45, 49
Muḥammad b. al-Jahm al-Barmaki 256
Muḥammad b. Maslamah 30
Muḥammad b. Muḥammad al-Maʿbad, ʿAbbāsid 86
Muḥammad b. Muḥammad b. Zayd b. ʿAlī, ʿAlīd 15, 25, 27, 64
Muḥammad b. Mūsā al-Khwārazmī 158
Muḥammad b. Mūsā b. Ḥāfs 175
Muḥammad b. Nūḥ al-Madrūb 210, 218, 220-1
Muḥammad b. Saʿd, secretary of al-Wāqīdī 204
Muḥammad b. Samāʿah, judge 136
Muḥammad b. Sulaymān b. Dāwūd, ʿAlīd 19, 22
Muḥammad b. Yaqṭīn b. Mūsā 54
Muḥammad b. Yazdād, secretary 235
Muḥammad b. Yūsuf b. Hishām al-Marwāzī 192
Muḥammad b. Yūsuf al-Kh.ḥ.b.q.w.ṣ 166
Muḥammad b. Zakariyyāʾ b. Maymūn al-Farghānī, ṭawī 256
Muḥawwal 43
Mukhāriq, singer 257
mukāṣamat 97
Mūsā, ʿAbbāsid commander 78, 81
Mūsā garden, Baghdad 96
Mūsā b. Ḥāfs 135, 175
Mūsā b. Muḥammad al-Amin 137
Mūsā b. Yahyā al-Barmaki 189
Muṣʿab b. Ruzayq al-Khuţāʾī 131, 163
muṣallā (see also Šāliḥ, sāhib al-muṣallā) 17, 66
Musawwidah 27, 30
Mushāḥshāḥ 20, 21, 28, 33
Muṭahhar b. Tāhir b. al-Ḥusayn 131
Muṭasim, Abū al-Muṭasim, Abū
Ishaq b. Harun
al-Rashid, subsequently
Caliph 3, 37, 45, 68, 148,
171, 174, 181-2, 186, 188,
197, 199, 222-5, 227-9,
231, 235, 242, 257
Mu'talib b. 'Abdallah
b. Malik al-Khuzai 47,
59-60, 66, 68, 81, 82, 89-92,
217
mutawwi'ah 55
Muwaffaq al-Saqlabi 80
al-Muqaffar b. Murajja
213
Muzdalifah 22

N
Nabati 100n.
nabidh 102
al-Na'dr b. Shumayl 210,
222
Nahr Bin 92
Nahr Buq 67
Nahr Diyala 82, 91
Nahr 'Isa 18, 86
Nahr al-Malik 16
Nahr Sharfar 18, 39,
43, 44, 53, 54, 88
Nahrawan 40, 81, 94, 95
Na'sr b. Hamzah b.
Malik al-Khuzai 47
Na'sr b. Shabath al-'Uqayli
2, 3, 10, 105, 106, 108, 110,
129, 134, 138-44, 145-6,
159
Naysabur 105-6
Nil 9, 49-54, 70-2, 75, 81
Nu'a'm b. Khazim 69, 75
Nuqan 84
Nu'sayr al-Wasif 66

Q
qadi al-jama'ah 21
Qadisiyyah 24-5
qafiz 98, 135
Qantarah, Qantarat
al-Kufah, al-Qanatir 72
Qaryat al-Arab 70
Qaryat Shahi 14, 23, 72
al-Qasim b. Ibrahim b.
Tabata al-Rassi
170
al-Qasim b. Muhammadi
al-Tayfur 249
Qasr Ibn Hubayrah 15,
16, 17, 18, 53, 54, 60, 69,
70, 71
Qasr
al-Waddah,
palace in Baghdad 43
Qatrabbul 56
Qays 178, 234
Qinnasrin 199
Qu'dah 234
Qumm 166, 183, 190
Qurrah 185, 237
Qustan'in al-Rumi 80
Qutaybah b. Sa'id 210, 213
Quzah 22

R
Rabadiyyun 164n.
Rabi'ah 234
Rahbanayn 67
radm 21n.
Radm Banji Jumah 21n.
Rafi' b. Layth 104
Rafidah 72
Rafiqa 198
Raja' b. Abi
al-Dahhak 35,
37, 44
Index

Ramlah 261
Raqqah 48, 79, 95, 106, 108-9, 129, 134, 140, 159, 198, 199, 205, 210, 222
Ra's al-'Ayn 25, 166
Rayy 65, 85, 94, 166
Round City [Madinat Abi Ja'far] of Baghdad 145-6, 168
Rûm [see also Byzantium, Byzantines] 165
Rusifah quarter of Baghdad 86, 87, 90, 95-6, 136, 189
Rûyân 135
Ruzayq, mawlî of Ta'lhâh b. 'Abdallâh al-Khuza'i 164

S
sâbiqah 140
Sa'd, Banû, of Tamîm 238-9
Sadaqah b. 'Ali b.
Sadaqah 144
Sa'dawayh al-Wâsiî 210, 218, 222
Sa'fâ' 22, 32
al-Saffâh, Caliph 216
al-Safinyyin, al-Safinatayn 18
Sahl b. Salâmâh
al-Ansârî 2, 55, 57-60, 75-8, 90, 92
Sa'id al-Allâf al-Qârî', râwî 224
Sa'id b. al-'Ash 101
Sa'id b. al-Hasan b.
Qahtabah
al-Tâ'i 47
Sa'id b. Sâjûr al-Kûti 49, 51, 68-75, 81, 91-2
Sa'id b. Ziyâd, râwî 234
Sajjâdah, see al-Hasan b. Hâmmâd Sajjâdah
Salaghûs 197, 198, 237
Salamiyyah 163
Şâlih, şâhib
al-muşallâ 17, 66
Şâlih b. al-'Abbâs b. Muhammed, 'Abbâsid 144, 167, 175
Şâlih b. Hârûn al-Rashid 98, 137, 251-2
Sallâm al-Abrash al-Khâdim 134
Salm al-Khâsir, poet 64
Şan'a' 28
Şa' nabâ 14
Sarakhs 80-1, 84
Şarât, Şarât Canal, Şarât Bridge, of Baghdad 43, 70, 90
al-Sarî b. al-Ḥakam 106
sârir 17
Sarûj 139
Sawâd 59, 67, 70, 98, 99, 108, 161, 184
Shahriyâr b. Sharwin, Bâwandin ruler 64, 166
Shajarah 35
Shammâsiyyah quarter of Baghdad 184
Shirriz 64
Shubayl, şâhib
al-sîl.bah 68
shurât, sing, shurtah 99
shuţtâr 55
Simmar 69
Sind, India 106, 175, 179, 189
al-Sindî b. Yaḥyâ b.
Sa'id al-Ḥarashi 17, 66, 214
Sīraj al-Khādīm 39
Ṣiyādah, ? Ṣayyādah 75
ṣūdān ahl al-miyyāh 33
Sulaymān b. ʿAbdallāh b.
Sulaymān, ʿAbbāsid 93,
190, 197
Sulaymān b. Abī Jaʿfar
al-Manṣūr 14, 234
Sulaymān b. Razin
al-Khuzaʿī, rāwī 248
Sulaymān b. Yaʿqūb,
ṣāhib al-khabar 221
Sundus 186
Sūra 70
Sūs, Susa 25
Syria 10, 134, 169, 175, 191,
192, 233-4, 237, 241

T
Ṭabaristān 64, 135, 136,
167, 175
Ṭāhir b. al-Husayn 3,
10, 13, 48, 79, 95-6,
99-106, 110, 128, 131-5,
163
Ṭāhir b. al-Husayn,
Mosque of 58, 77
Ṭāhir b. Khālid b. Nizār
al-Ghassānī, rāwī 169
Takrit 184
Ṭalḥah b. Ṭāhir b.
al-Husayn 133-5
Ṭalibids (see also Ahl
al-Bayt, ʿAlids) 19-21, 24,
26-7, 31, 34, 131, 169
Tamīm, Banū 237-8
Ṭarnāyā 75, 81
Tarsus 3, 185, 187, 221, 224,
231, 240
al-Taymī, ʿAbdallāh b.

Ayyūb, poet 27
Ṭayyīr, Banū 256n.
Thābit b. Yahyā,
secretary 249
Theophilus, Byzantine
Emperor 3, 144, 187-8,
194-5, 224
Thumāmah b. Ashras
al-Numayrī 100, 138
Toghuz-Oghuz 107
Ṭūs 84-5, 240
Ṭuwānah, Tyana 188,
198-9

U
ʿUbaydallāh b. al-ʿAbbās b.
Muḥammad, ʿAbbāsid
66
ʿUbaydallāh b. al-Ḥasan b.
ʿUbaydallāh b.al-ʿAbbās 98,
107, 129
ʿUbaydallāh b. al-Sarī b.
al-Ḥakam 3, 7, 159-60,
164, 171-3
ʿUbaydallāh b. ʿUmar
al-Qawārīrī 210, 219,
220-2
ʿUjayf b. ʿAnbāsah 166, 182,
186, 189, 192-4
ʿUmar b. Abī Rabīʿah, poet
244
ʿUmar b. Ḥafs
al-Ballūṭī 165
ʿUmar b. al-Khaṭṭāb,
Caliph 124, 210, 213, 219
ʿUmārah b. ʿAqīl, poet 244,
252, 255
al-ʿUmārī, judge of Raqqah
210, 213
ʿUmayr b. al-Walīd
al-Bādhghīsī 181
Umayyads 140, 155, 243-4
Index

Umm al-Fadl bt.
- al-Ma’mūn 82, 185
Umm Ḥabib bt.
- al-Ma’mūn 82
Umm Ja’far, see Zubaydah
Umm Ja’far, qaṭī’ah or fief of, in Baghdad 108
‘Uqayl, Banū 10
Urdu'n 199, 223
‘Uṣfān 34
Ushrūsānāh 107, 135

W
Wahb b. Sa‘īd al-Kātib 52
al-Walid b. ‘Uqbah 101
Warqā’ b. Jamīl 27, 33-4
Wāsīt 16, 17, 23, 25, 46-9, 51, 74-6, 81, 147
al-Wāṭhiq, Caliph 234

Y
Yabrīn 257
Yahyā b. ‘Abdallāh,
cousin of al-Ḥasan b. Sahl 59
Yahyā b. ‘Abd al-Raḥmān al-‘Umarī 210, 219, 222
Yahyā b. Aktham 134, 182, 188, 230, 235
Yahyā b. ‘Ali b. ʿĪsā b. Māḥan 53
Yahyā b. ‘Amir
al-Ḥārithī 45
Yahyā b. al-Ḥasan b.
‘Abd al-Khāliq, rāwī 109
Yahyā b. ‘Imrān 166
Yahyā b. Mu‘adh 78, 98, 106, 109
Yahyā b. ʿUmar b.
Yahyā, ʿAlīd 7

Ya‘lā b. Murrah, rebel in
Azerbaijan 176
Yamāmah 108
Yaman, tribal group 178, 234
Yāsir, slave of al-Ma’mūn 102
Yāsirīyyah 18, 88-9
Yazīd b. Muḥammad
al-Maḥzūmī 39
al-Yazīdī, Abū
Muḥammad Yaḥyā
b. al-Mubārak 250-1
Yazīdī Shirwān-Shāhs 147n.
Yemen 10, 28-9, 37-9, 130, 176, 180, 190
Yūnūs b. ʿAbd al-A’lā, rāwī 165
Yūsuf b. Abī Yūsuf 219

Z
Zamzam 30
Zandaward 81
Zawāqīl 10
Zayd b. ‘Ali, Zayn al-ʿAbidīn,
Fourth Imām of the Shi’ah 15
Zayd b. Mūsā b. Ja’far, Zayd
al-Nār, ʿAlīd 26-8, 44
Zaydī Shī’ah 15n., 100
Ziryāb, mawla of al-Mahdī and musician 244
Ziyād b. Abīhi 217
Zubaydah bt. al-Manṣūr,
Umm Ja’far 154-7, 189
Zufaytā 159
Zuhayr b. Ḥarb, Abū
Khaythamah 204
Zuhayr b. al-Musayyab
al-Ḍabī 14-15, 23, 43-4, 47-9, 50-1
Zuṭṭ 106, 108, 140